GS2200-24

Intelligent Layer 2 GbE Switch

User's Guide

Default Login Details

IP Address	http://192.168.1.1
User Name	admin
Password	1234

Firmware Version 3.90
Edition 1, 6/2009

ZyXEL

www.zyxel.com

Copyright © 2009
ZyXEL Communications Corporation

About This User's Guide

Intended Audience

This manual is intended for people who want to configure the Switch using the web configurator.

Related Documentation

- Command Line Interface (CLI) Reference Guide

  The Command Reference Guide explains how to use the Command-Line Interface (CLI) and CLI commands to configure the Switch.

- Web Configurator Online Help

  The embedded Web Help contains descriptions of individual screens and supplementary information.

Note: It is recommended you use the web configurator to configure the Switch.

- Support Disc

  Refer to the included CD for support documents.

Documentation Feedback

Send your comments, questions or suggestions to: techwriters@zyxel.com.tw

Thank you!

The Technical Writing Team, ZyXEL Communications Corp.,
6 Innovation Road II, Science-Based Industrial Park, Hsinchu, 30099, Taiwan.

Need More Help?

More help is available at www.zyxel.com.

- Download Library

  Search for the latest product updates and documentation from this link. Read the Tech Doc Overview to find out how to efficiently use the User Guide, Quick Start Guide and Command Line Interface Reference Guide in order to better understand how to use your product.

- Knowledge Base

  If you have a specific question about your product, the answer may be here. This is a collection of answers to previously asked questions about ZyXEL products.

- Forum

  This contains discussions on ZyXEL products. Learn from others who use ZyXEL products and share your experiences as well.

Customer Support

Should problems arise that cannot be solved by the methods listed above, you should contact your vendor. If you cannot contact your vendor, then contact a ZyXEL office for the region in which you bought the device.

See http://www.zyxel.com/web/contact_us.php for contact information. Please have the following information ready when you contact an office.

- Product model and serial number.
- Warranty Information.
- Date that you received your device.
- Brief description of the problem and the steps you took to solve it.

Document Conventions

Warnings and Notes

These are how warnings and notes are shown in this User's Guide.

> **Warnings tell you about things that could harm you or your device.**

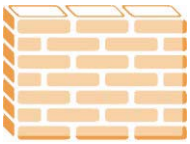
Note: Notes tell you other important information (for example, other things you may need to configure or helpful tips) or recommendations.

Syntax Conventions

- The GS2200-24 may be referred to as the "Switch", the "device", the "system" or the "product" in this User's Guide.
- Product labels, screen names, field labels and field choices are all in **bold** font.
- A key stroke is denoted by square brackets and uppercase text, for example, [ENTER] means the "enter" or "return" key on your keyboard.
- "Enter" means for you to type one or more characters and then press the [ENTER] key. "Select" or "choose" means for you to use one of the predefined choices.
- A right angle bracket (>) within a screen name denotes a mouse click. For example, **Maintenance > Log > Log Setting** means you first click **Maintenance** in the navigation panel, then the **Log** sub menu and finally the **Log Setting** tab to get to that screen.
- Units of measurement may denote the "metric" value or the "scientific" value. For example, "k" for kilo may denote "1000" or "1024", "M" for mega may denote "1000000" or "1048576" and so on.
- "e.g.," is a shorthand for "for instance", and "i.e.," means "that is" or "in other words".

Icons Used in Figures

Figures in this User's Guide may use the following generic icons. The Switch icon is not an exact representation of your device.

The Switch	Computer	Notebook computer
Server	DSLAM	Firewall 
Telephone	Router	

Safety Warnings

- Do NOT use this product near water, for example, in a wet basement or near a swimming pool.
- Do NOT expose your device to dampness, dust or corrosive liquids.
- Do NOT store things on the device.
- Do NOT install, use, or service this device during a thunderstorm. There is a remote risk of electric shock from lightning.
- Do not obstruct the device ventillation slots as insufficient airflow may harm your device.
- Connect ONLY suitable accessories to the device.
- Do NOT open the device or unit. Opening or removing covers can expose you to dangerous high voltage points or other risks. ONLY qualified service personnel should service or disassemble this device. Please contact your vendor for further information.
- Make sure to connect the cables to the correct ports.
- Place connecting cables carefully so that no one will step on them or stumble over them.
- Always disconnect all cables from this device before servicing or disassembling.
- Use ONLY an appropriate power adaptor or cord for your device. Connect it to the right supply voltage (for example, 110V AC in North America or 230V AC in Europe).
- Use ONLY power wires of the appropriate wire gauge (see Chapter 41 on page 329 for details) for your device. Connect it to a power supply of the correct voltage (see Chapter 41 on page 329 for details).
- Do NOT allow anything to rest on the power adaptor or cord and do NOT place the product where anyone can walk on the power adaptor or cord.
- Do NOT use the device if the power adaptor or cord is damaged as it might cause electrocution.
- If the power adaptor or cord is damaged, remove it from the device and the power source.
- Do NOT attempt to repair the power adaptor or cord. Contact your local vendor to order a new one.
- Fuse Warning! Replace a fuse only with a fuse of the same type and rating.
- The length of exposed (bare) power wire should not exceed 7 mm.

Your product is marked with this symbol, which is known as the WEEE mark. WEEE stands for Waste Electronics and Electrical Equipment. It means that used electrical and electronic products should not be mixed with general waste. Used electrical and electronic equipment should be treated separately.

Contents Overview

Introduction and Hardware 23

Getting to Know Your Switch 25
Hardware Installation and Connection 31
Hardware Panels 35

Basic Configuration 41

The Web Configurator 43
Initial Setup Example 51
Tutorials 55
System Status and Port Statistics 65
Basic Setting 71

Advanced 85

VLAN 87
Static MAC Forward Setup 107
Static Multicast Forward Setup 111
Filtering 115
Spanning Tree Protocol 117
Bandwidth Control 139
Broadcast Storm Control 143
Mirroring 147
Link Aggregation 151
Port Authentication 161
Port Security 165
Classifier 169
Policy Rule 175
Queuing Method 181
VLAN Stacking 185
Multicast 193
AAA 201
IP Source Guard 215
Loop Guard 241
Layer 2 Protocol Tunneling 245

IP Application 251

Static Route 253
Differentiated Services 257

DHCP 261

Management 269

Maintenance 271
Access Control 279
Diagnostic 301
Syslog 303
Cluster Management 307
MAC Table 315
ARP Table 319
Configure Clone 321

Troubleshooting & Product Specifications 323

Troubleshooting 325
Product Specifications 329

Appendices and Index 337

Table of Contents

About This User's Guide **3**

Document Conventions **5**

Safety Warnings **7**

Contents Overview **9**

Table of Contents **11**

Part I: Introduction and Hardware **23**

Chapter 1
Getting to Know Your Switch **25**

1.1 Introduction 25
1.1.1 Backbone Application 25
1.1.2 Bridging Example 26
1.1.3 High Performance Switching Example 27
1.1.4 IEEE 802.1Q VLAN Application Examples 27
1.2 Ways to Manage the Switch 28
1.3 Good Habits for Managing the Switch 28

Chapter 2
Hardware Installation and Connection **31**

2.1 Installation Scenarios 31
2.2 Desktop Installation Procedure 31
2.3 Mounting the Switch on a Rack 31
2.3.1 Rack-mounted Installation Requirements 32
2.3.2 Attaching the Mounting Brackets to the Switch 32
2.3.3 Mounting the Switch on a Rack 33

Chapter 3
Hardware Panels **35**

3.1 Overview 35
3.2 Front Panel 35
3.2.1 Console Port 36
3.2.2 Gigabit Ethernet Ports 36
3.2.3 Mini-GBIC Slots 37

3.2.4 Power Connector 39
3.3 LEDs 40

Part II: Basic Configuration 41

Chapter 4
The Web Configurator 43

4.1 Overview 43
4.2 System Login 43
4.3 The Status Screen 44
4.3.1 Change Your Password 48
4.4 Saving Your Configuration 48
4.5 Switch Lockout 49
4.6 Resetting the Switch 49
4.6.1 Reload the Configuration File 49
4.7 Logging Out of the Web Configurator 50
4.8 Help 50

Chapter 5
Initial Setup Example 51

5.1 Overview 51
5.1.1 Creating a VLAN 51
5.1.2 Setting Port VID 53
5.2 Configuring Switch Management IP Address 54

Chapter 6
Tutorials 55

6.1 Overview 55
6.2 How to Use DHCP Snooping on the Switch 55
6.3 How to Use DHCP Relay on the Switch 59
6.3.1 DHCP Relay Tutorial Introduction 59
6.3.2 Creating a VLAN 60
6.3.3 Configuring DHCP Relay 63
6.3.4 Troubleshooting 63

Chapter 7
System Status and Port Statistics 65

7.1 Overview 65
7.2 What You Can Do 65
7.3 Port Status Summary 66
7.3.1 Status: Port Details 67

Chapter 8
Basic Setting 71

8.1 Overview 71
8.2 What You Can Do 71
8.3 System Information 72
8.4 General Setup 74
8.5 Introduction to VLANs 76
8.6 Switch Setup Screen 77
8.7 IP Setup 78
8.7.1 Management IP Addresses 79
8.8 Port Setup 81

Part III: Advanced 85

Chapter 9
VLAN 87

9.1 Overview 87
9.2 What You Can Do 87
9.3 What You Need to Know 87
9.3.1 IEEE 802.1Q Tagged VLANs 87
9.3.2 Forwarding Tagged and Untagged Frames 88
9.3.3 Automatic VLAN Registration 88
9.3.4 GARP 88
9.3.5 GVRP 89
9.3.6 Port VLAN Trunking 90
9.3.7 Select the VLAN Type 90
9.3.8 Static VLAN 90
9.4 VLAN Status 91
9.4.1 VLAN Details 92
9.5 Configure a Static VLAN 93
9.6 Configure VLAN Port Settings 95
9.7 Subnet Based VLANs 96
9.7.1 Configuring Subnet Based VLAN 97
9.8 Protocol Based VLANs 99
9.8.1 Configuring Protocol Based VLAN 100
9.9 Port-based VLAN Setup 102
9.9.1 Configure a Port-based VLAN 103
9.10 Technical Reference 105
9.10.1 Create an IP-based VLAN Example 105

Chapter 10
Static MAC Forward Setup 107

10.1 Overview 107
10.2 What You Can Do 107
10.3 Configuring Static MAC Forwarding 107

Chapter 11
Static Multicast Forward Setup 111

11.1 Overview 111
11.2 What You Can Do 111
11.3 What You Need To Know 111
11.4 Configuring Static Multicast Forwarding 112

Chapter 12
Filtering 115

12.1 Overview 115
12.2 What You Can Do 115
12.3 Configure a Filtering Rule 115

Chapter 13
Spanning Tree Protocol 117

13.1 Overview 117
13.2 What You Can Do 117
13.3 What You Need to Know 118
13.3.1 STP Terminology 118
13.3.2 How STP Works 119
13.3.3 STP Port States 119
13.3.4 Multiple RSTP 119
13.3.5 Multiple STP 120
13.4 Spanning Tree Protocol Status Screen 121
13.5 Spanning Tree Configuration 121
13.6 Configure Rapid Spanning Tree Protocol 122
13.7 Rapid Spanning Tree Protocol Status 124
13.8 Configure Multiple Rapid Spanning Tree Protocol 126
13.9 Multiple Rapid Spanning Tree Protocol Status 128
13.10 Configure Multiple Spanning Tree Protocol 130
13.11 Multiple Spanning Tree Protocol Status 133
13.12 Technical Reference 135
13.12.1 MSTP Network Example 135
13.12.2 MST Region 136
13.12.3 MST Instance 136
13.12.4 Common and Internal Spanning Tree (CIST) 137

Chapter 14
Bandwidth Control 139

14.1 Bandwidth Control Overview 139
14.2 What You Can Do 139
14.3 Bandwidth Control Setup 140

Chapter 15
Broadcast Storm Control 143

15.1 Overview 143
15.2 What You Can Do 143
15.3 Broadcast Storm Control Setup 144

Chapter 16
Mirroring 147

16.1 Overview 147
16.2 What You Can Do 147
16.3 Port Mirroring Setup 148

Chapter 17
Link Aggregation 151

17.1 Overview 151
17.2 What You Can Do 151
17.3 What You Need to Know 151
17.3.1 Dynamic Link Aggregation 152
17.3.2 Link Aggregation ID 152
17.4 Link Aggregation Status 153
17.5 Link Aggregation Setting 155
17.6 Link Aggregation Control Protocol 157
17.7 Technical Reference 158
17.7.1 Static Trunking Example 158

Chapter 18
Port Authentication 161

18.1 Overview 161
18.2 What You Can Do 161
18.3 What You Need to Know 161
18.3.1 IEEE 802.1x Authentication 161
18.4 Port Authentication Configuration 162
18.5 Activate IEEE 802.1x Security 163

Chapter 19
Port Security 165

19.1 Overview 165
19.2 What You Can Do 165
19.3 Port Security Setup 166

Chapter 20
Classifier 169

20.1 Overview 169
20.2 What You Can Do 169
20.3 What You Need to Know 169
20.4 Configuring the Classifier 170
20.4.1 Viewing and Editing Classifier Configuration 172
20.5 Classifier Example 174

Chapter 21
Policy Rule 175

21.1 Policy Rules Overview 175
21.2 What You Can Do 175
21.3 Configuring Policy Rules 175
21.3.1 Viewing and Editing Policy Configuration 178
21.4 Policy Example 179

Chapter 22
Queuing Method 181

22.1 Overview 181
22.2 What You Can Do 181
22.3 What You Need to Know 181
22.3.1 Strictly Priority Queuing 181
22.3.2 Weighted Fair Queuing 182
22.3.3 Weighted Round Robin Scheduling (WRR) 182
22.4 Configuring Queuing 183

Chapter 23
VLAN Stacking 185

23.1 Overview 185
23.2 What You Can Do 185
23.3 What You Need to Know 185
23.4 Configuring VLAN Stacking 186
23.5 Configuring SVLAN 187
23.6 Technical Reference 188
23.6.1 VLAN Stacking Example 188
23.6.2 VLAN Stacking Port Roles 189
23.6.3 VLAN Tag Format 190
23.6.4 Frame Format 190

Chapter 24
Multicast 193

24.1 Overview 193

24.2 What You Can Do 193
24.3 What You Need to Know 193
24.3.1 IP Multicast Addresses 194
24.3.2 IGMP Snooping 194
24.3.3 IGMP Snooping and VLANs 194
24.4 Multicast Status 195
24.5 Multicast Setting 196
24.6 IGMP Snooping VLAN 198

Chapter 25
AAA 201

25.1 Overview 201
25.2 What You Can Do 201
25.3 What You Need to Know 202
25.3.1 Local User Accounts 202
25.3.2 RADIUS and TACACS+ 202
25.4 AAA Screens 203
25.5 RADIUS Server Setup 203
25.6 TACACS+ Server Setup 206
25.7 AAA Setup 208
25.8 Technical Reference 210
25.8.1 Vendor Specific Attribute 210
25.8.2 Supported RADIUS Attributes 212
25.8.3 Attributes Used for Authentication 212

Chapter 26
IP Source Guard 215

26.1 Overview 215
26.2 What You Can Do 215
26.3 What You Need to Know 216
26.4 IP Source Guard 216
26.5 IP Source Guard Static Binding 217
26.6 DHCP Snooping 219
26.7 DHCP Snooping Configure 222
26.7.1 DHCP Snooping Port Configure 224
26.7.2 DHCP Snooping VLAN Configure 225
26.8 ARP Inspection Status 227
26.9 ARP Inspection VLAN Status 228
26.10 ARP Inspection Log Status 229
26.11 ARP Inspection Configure 230
26.11.1 ARP Inspection Port Configure 232
26.11.2 ARP Inspection VLAN Configure 234
26.12 Technical Reference 235

26.12.1 DHCP Snooping Overview 235
26.12.2 ARP Inspection Overview 238

Chapter 27
Loop Guard 241

27.1 Overview 241
27.2 What You Can Do 241
27.3 What You Need to Know 242
27.4 Loop Guard Setup 243

Chapter 28
Layer 2 Protocol Tunneling 245

28.1 Overview 245
28.2 What You Can Do 245
28.3 What You Need to Know 245
28.3.1 Layer 2 Protocol Tunneling Mode 246
28.4 Configuring Layer 2 Protocol Tunneling 247

Part IV: IP Application 251

Chapter 29
Static Route 253

29.1 Overview 253
29.2 What You Can Do 254
29.3 Configuring Static Routing 254

Chapter 30
Differentiated Services 257

30.1 Overview 257
30.2 What You Can Do 257
30.3 What You Need to Know 257
30.3.1 DSCP and Per-Hop Behavior 258
30.3.2 DiffServ Network Example 258
30.4 Activating DiffServ 259
30.5 DSCP-to-IEEE 802.1p Priority Settings 260
30.5.1 Configuring DSCP Settings 260

Chapter 31
DHCP 261

31.1 DHCP Overview 261
31.2 What You Can Do 261

31.3 What You Need to Know 261
31.3.1 DHCP Modes 261
31.3.2 DHCP Configuration Options 262
31.3.3 DHCP Relay 262
31.3.4 DHCP Relay Agent Information 262
31.4 DHCP Status 263
31.5 Configuring DHCP Global Relay 264
31.5.1 Global DHCP Relay Configuration Example 265
31.6 Configuring DHCP VLAN Settings 265
31.6.1 Example: DHCP Relay for Two VLANs 267

Part V: Management 269

Chapter 32
Maintenance 271

32.1 Overview 271
32.2 What You Can Do 271
32.3 The Maintenance Screen 271
32.3.1 Load Factory Default 272
32.3.2 Save Configuration 273
32.3.3 Reboot System 273
32.4 Firmware Upgrade 274
32.5 Restore a Configuration File 274
32.6 Backup a Configuration File 275
32.7 Technical Reference 276
32.7.1 FTP Command Line 276
32.7.2 Filename Conventions 276
32.7.3 FTP Command Line Procedure 277
32.7.4 GUI-based FTP Clients 277
32.7.5 FTP Restrictions 278

Chapter 33
Access Control 279

33.1 Overview 279
33.2 What You Can Do 279
33.3 The Access Control Main Screen 280
33.4 Configuring SNMP 280
33.5 Configuring SNMP Trap Group 283
33.6 Setting Up Login Accounts 284
33.7 Service Port Access Control 285
33.8 Remote Management 286

33.9 Technical Reference 287
33.9.1 About SNMP 288
33.9.2 SSH Overview 293
33.9.3 Introduction to HTTPS 295

Chapter 34
Diagnostic 301

34.1 Overview 301
34.2 Diagnostic 301

Chapter 35
Syslog 303

35.1 Overview 303
35.2 What You Can Do 303
35.3 Syslog Setup 304
35.4 Syslog Server Setup 305

Chapter 36
Cluster Management 307

36.1 Overview 307
36.2 What You Can Do 308
36.3 Cluster Management Status 308
36.4 Clustering Management Configuration 310
36.5 Technical Reference 312
36.5.1 Cluster Member Switch Management 312

Chapter 37
MAC Table 315

37.1 Overview 315
37.2 What You Can Do 315
37.3 What You Need to Know 315
37.4 Viewing the MAC Table 316

Chapter 38
ARP Table 319

38.1 Overview 319
38.2 What You Can Do 319
38.2.1 How ARP Works 319
38.3 Viewing the ARP Table 320

Chapter 39
Configure Clone 321

39.1 Overview 321

39.2 Configure Clone 321

Part VI: Troubleshooting & Product Specifications 323

Chapter 40
Troubleshooting 325

40.1 Power, Hardware Connections, and LEDs 325
40.2 Switch Access and Login 326
40.3 Switch Configuration 328

Chapter 41
Product Specifications 329

Part VII: Appendices and Index 337

Appendix A Changing a Fuse 339

Appendix B Common Services 341

Appendix C Legal Information 345

Index 349

PART I
Introduction and Hardware

Getting to Know Your Switch (25)

Hardware Installation and Connection (31)

Hardware Panels (35)

1

Getting to Know Your Switch

1.1 Introduction

This chapter introduces the main features and applications of the Switch.

The Switch is a layer-2 standalone Ethernet switch with additional layer-2, layer-3, and layer-4 features suitable for Ethernets. The Switch has twenty-four 10/100/1000 Mbps Ethernet ports. It also has four GbE dual personality interfaces with each interface comprising one mini-GBIC slot and one 100/1000 Mbps RJ-45 port, with either port or slot active at a time.

With its built-in web configurator, managing and configuring the Switch is easy. In addition, the Switch can also be managed via Telnet, any terminal emulator program on the console port, or third-party SNMP management.

See Chapter 41 on page 329 for a full list of software features available on the Switch.

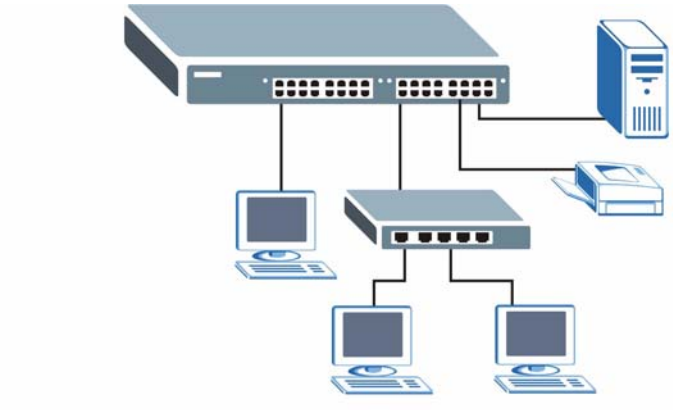
This section shows a few examples of using the Switch in various network environments.

1.1.1 Backbone Application

The Switch is an ideal solution for small networks where rapid growth can be expected in the near future. The Switch can be used standalone for a group of heavy traffic users. You can connect computers and servers directly to the Switch's port or connect other switches to the Switch.

In this example, all computers can share high-speed applications on the server. To expand the network, simply add more networking devices such as switches, routers, computers, print servers etc.

Figure 1 Backbone Application

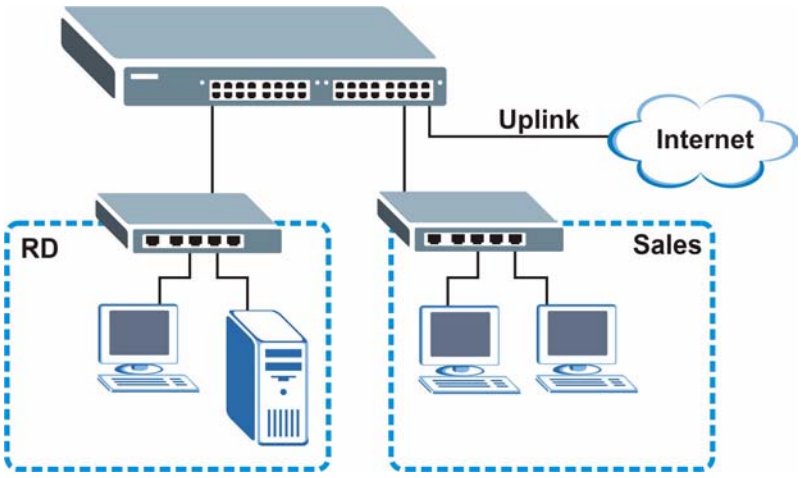


1.1.2 Bridging Example

In this example, the Switch connects different company departments (**RD** and **Sales**) to the corporate backbone. It can alleviate bandwidth contention and eliminate server and network bottlenecks. All users that need high bandwidth can connect to high-speed department servers via the Switch. You can provide a super-fast uplink connection by using a Gigabit Ethernet/mini-GBIC port on the Switch.

Moreover, the Switch eases supervision and maintenance by allowing network managers to centralize multiple servers at a single location.

Figure 2 Bridging Application

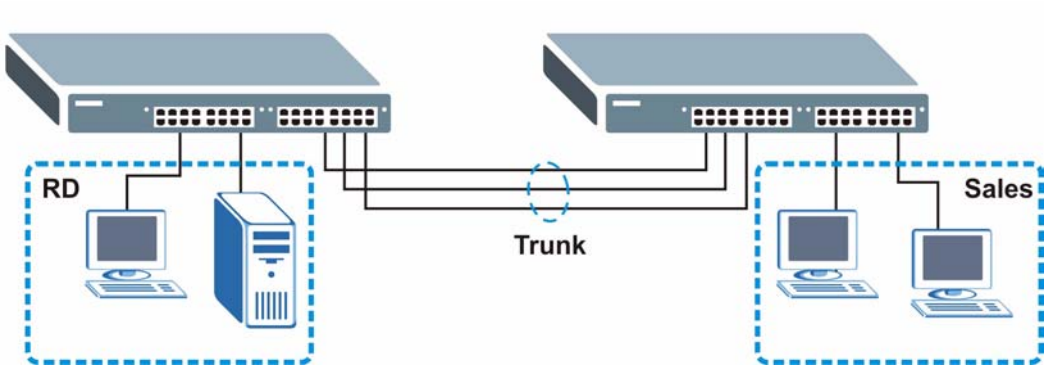


1.1.3 High Performance Switching Example

The Switch is ideal for connecting two networks that need high bandwidth. In the following example, use trunking to connect these two networks.

Switching to higher-speed LANs such as ATM (Asynchronous Transmission Mode) is not feasible for most people due to the expense of replacing all existing Ethernet cables and adapter cards, restructuring your network and complex maintenance. The Switch can provide the same bandwidth as ATM at much lower cost while still being able to use existing adapters and switches. Moreover, the current LAN structure can be retained as all ports can freely communicate with each other.

Figure 3 High Performance Switched Workgroup Application



1.1.4 IEEE 802.1Q VLAN Application Examples

A VLAN (Virtual Local Area Network) allows a physical network to be partitioned into multiple logical networks. Stations on a logical network belong to one group. A station can belong to more than one group. With VLAN, a station cannot directly talk to or hear from stations that are not in the same group(s) unless such traffic first goes through a router.

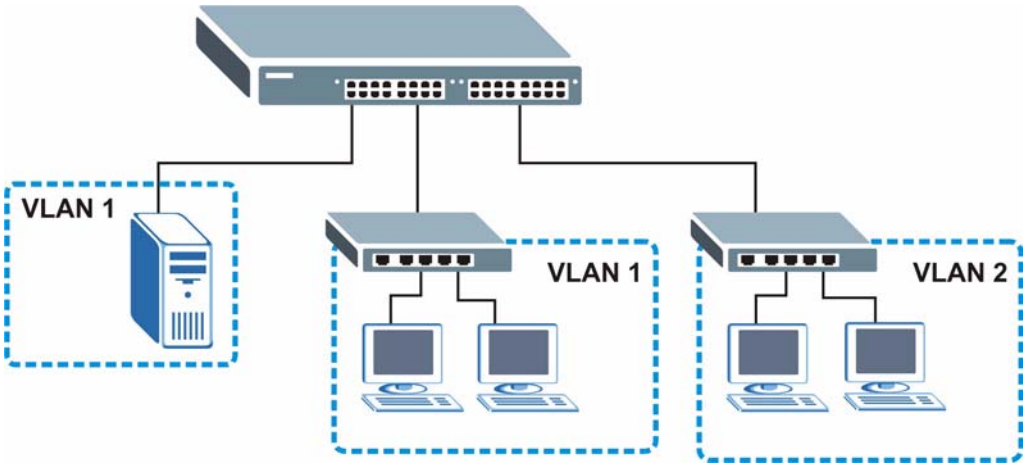
For more information on VLANs, refer to Chapter 9 on page 87.

1.1.4.1 Tag-based VLAN Example

Ports in the same VLAN group share the same frame broadcast domain thus increase network performance through reduced broadcast traffic. VLAN groups can be modified at any time by adding, moving or changing ports without any re-cabling.

Shared resources such as a server can be used by all ports in the same VLAN as the server. In the following figure only ports that need access to the server need to be part of VLAN 1. Ports can belong to other VLAN groups too.

Figure 4 Shared Server Using VLAN Example



1.2 Ways to Manage the Switch

Use any of the following methods to manage the Switch.

- Web Configurator. This is recommended for everyday management of the Switch using a (supported) web browser. See Chapter 4 on page 43.
- Command Line Interface. Line commands offer an alternative to the web configurator and in some cases are necessary to configure advanced features. See the CLI Reference Guide.
- FTP. Use FTP for firmware upgrades and configuration backup/restore. See Section 32.7.1 on page 276.
- SNMP. The Switch can be monitored by an SNMP manager. See Section 33.9.1 on page 288.
- Cluster Management. Cluster Management allows you to manage multiple switches through one switch, called the cluster manager. See Chapter 36 on page 307.

1.3 Good Habits for Managing the Switch

Do the following things regularly to make the Switch more secure and to manage the Switch more effectively.

- Change the password. Use a password that's not easy to guess and that consists of different types of characters, such as numbers and letters.

- Write down the password and put it in a safe place.
- Back up the configuration (and make sure you know how to restore it). Restoring an earlier working configuration may be useful if the device becomes unstable or even crashes. If you forget your password, you will have to reset the Switch to its factory default settings. If you backed up an earlier configuration file, you would not have to totally re-configure the Switch. You could simply restore your last configuration.

2

Hardware Installation and Connection

2.1 Installation Scenarios

This chapter shows you how to install and connect the Switch.

The Switch can be placed on a desktop or rack-mounted on a standard EIA rack. Use the rubber feet in a desktop installation and the brackets in a rack-mounted installation.

Note: For proper ventilation, allow at least 4 inches (10 cm) of clearance at the front and 3.4 inches (8 cm) at the back of the Switch. This is especially important for enclosed rack installations.

2.2 Desktop Installation Procedure

1. Make sure the Switch is clean and dry.
2. Set the Switch on a smooth, level surface strong enough to support the weight of the Switch and the connected cables. Make sure there is a power outlet nearby.
3. Make sure there is enough clearance around the Switch to allow air circulation and the attachment of cables and the power cord.

2.3 Mounting the Switch on a Rack

The Switch can be mounted on an EIA standard size, 19-inch rack or in a wiring closet with other equipment. Follow the steps below to mount your Switch on a standard EIA rack using a rack-mounting kit.

2.3.1 Rack-mounted Installation Requirements

- Two mounting brackets.
- Eight M3 flat head screws and a #2 Philips screwdriver.
- Four M5 flat head screws and a #2 Philips screwdriver.

Failure to use the proper screws may damage the unit.

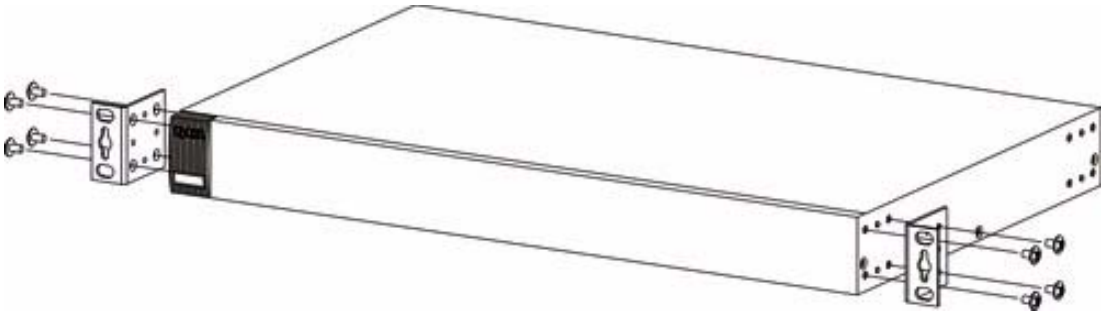
2.3.1.1 Precautions

- Make sure the rack will safely support the combined weight of all the equipment it contains.
- Make sure the position of the Switch does not make the rack unstable or top-heavy. Take all necessary precautions to anchor the rack securely before installing the unit.

2.3.2 Attaching the Mounting Brackets to the Switch

1 Position a mounting bracket on one side of the Switch, lining up the four screw holes on the bracket with the screw holes on the side of the Switch.

Figure 5 Attaching the Mounting Brackets



2 Using a #2 Philips screwdriver, install the M3 flat head screws through the mounting bracket holes into the Switch.

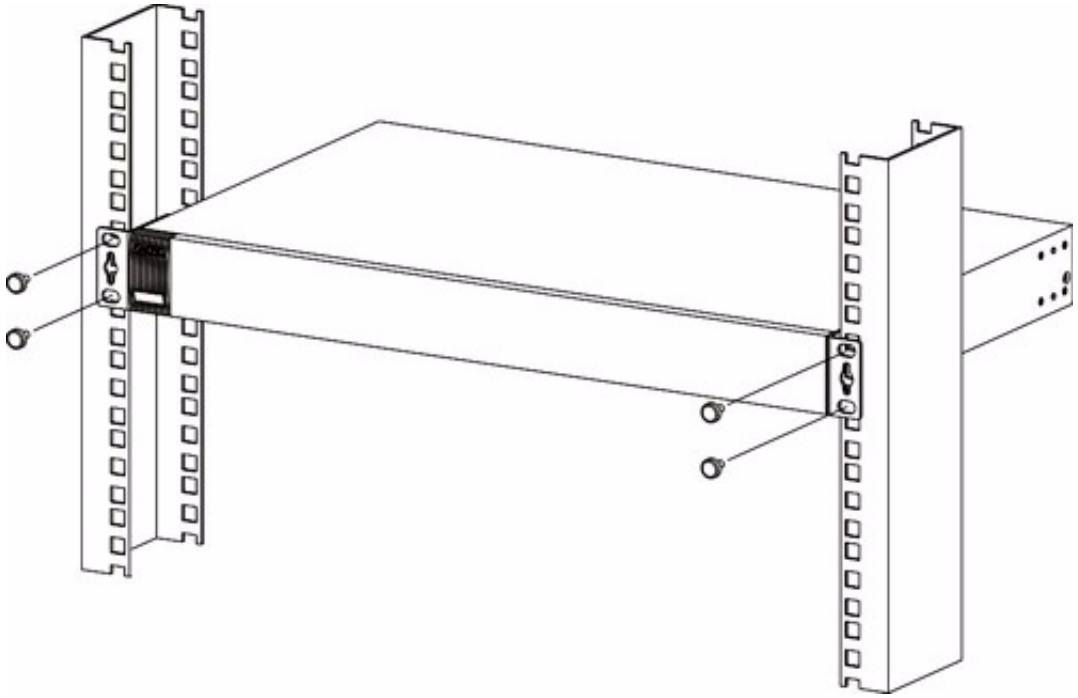
3 Repeat steps 1 and 2 to install the second mounting bracket on the other side of the Switch.

4 You may now mount the Switch on a rack. Proceed to the next section.

2.3.3 Mounting the Switch on a Rack

1 Position a mounting bracket (that is already attached to the Switch) on one side of the rack, lining up the two screw holes on the bracket with the screw holes on the side of the rack.

Figure 6 Mounting the Switch on a Rack



2 Using a #2 Philips screwdriver, install the M5 flat head screws through the mounting bracket holes into the rack.

3 Repeat steps 1 and 2 to attach the second mounting bracket on the other side of the rack.

3

Hardware Panels

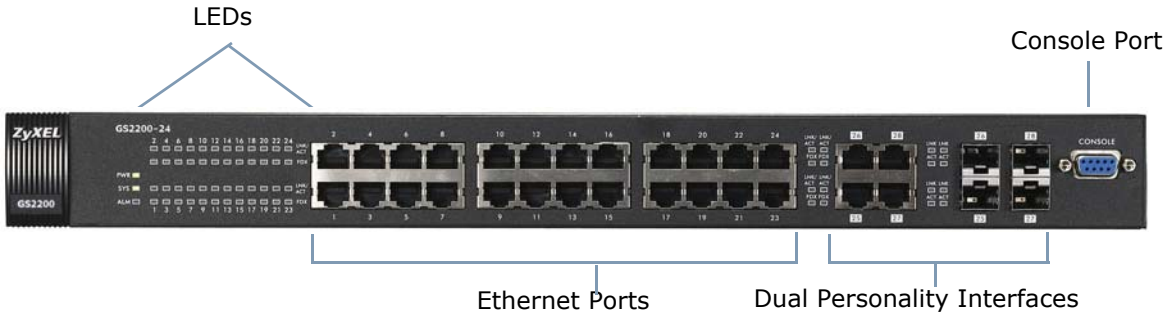
3.1 Overview

This chapter describes the front panel and rear panel of the Switch and shows you how to make the hardware connections.

3.2 Front Panel

The following figure shows the front panel of the Switch.

Figure 7 Front Panel



The following table describes the port labels on the front panel.

Table 1 Front Panel Connections

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
24 10/100/1000 RJ-45 Ethernet Ports	Connect these ports to a computer, a hub, an Ethernet switch or router.

Table 1 Front Panel Connections (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Four Dual Personality Interfaces	Each interface has one 1000BASE-T RJ-45 port and one Small Form-Factor Pluggable (SFP) slot (also called a mini-GBIC slot), with one port or transceiver active at a time.
	• Four 100/1000 Mbps RJ-45 Ports: Connect these ports to high-bandwidth backbone network Ethernet switches using 1000BASE-T compatible Category 5/5e/6 copper cables.
	• Four Mini-GBIC Slots: Use mini-GBIC transceivers in these slots for connections to backbone Ethernet switches.
Console Port	The console port is for local configuration of the Switch.

3.2.1 Console Port

For local management, you can use a computer with terminal emulation software configured to the following parameters:

- VT100
- Terminal emulation
- 9600 bps
- No parity, 8 data bits, 1 stop bit
- No flow control

Connect the male 9-pin end of the console cable to the console port of the Switch. Connect the female end to a serial port (COM1, COM2 or other COM port) of your computer.

3.2.2 Gigabit Ethernet Ports

The Switch has 1000Base-T auto-negotiating, auto-crossover Ethernet ports. In 10/100/1000 Mbps Gigabit, the speed can be 10 Mbps, 100 Mbps or 1000 Mbps and the duplex mode can be half duplex or full duplex.

An auto-negotiating port can detect and adjust to the optimum Ethernet speed (10/100/1000 Mbps) and duplex mode (full duplex or half duplex) of the connected device.

An auto-crossover (auto-MDI/MDI-X) port automatically works with a straight-through or crossover Ethernet cable.

Four 1000Base-T Ethernet ports are paired with a mini-GBIC slot to create a dual personality interface. The Switch uses up to one connection for each mini-GBIC and 1000Base-T Ethernet pair. The mini-GBIC slots have priority over the Gigabit

ports. This means that if a mini-GBIC slot and the corresponding GbE port are connected at the same time, the GbE port will be disabled.

When auto-negotiation is turned on, an Ethernet port negotiates with the peer automatically to determine the connection speed and duplex mode. If the peer Ethernet port does not support auto-negotiation or turns off this feature, the Switch determines the connection speed by detecting the signal on the cable and using half duplex mode. When the Switch's auto-negotiation is turned off, an Ethernet port uses the pre-configured speed and duplex mode when making a connection, thus requiring you to make sure that the settings of the peer Ethernet port are the same in order to connect.

3.2.2.1 Default Ethernet Negotiation Settings

The factory default negotiation settings for the Gigabit ports on the Switch are:

- Speed: Auto
- Duplex: Auto
- Flow control: Off
- Link Aggregation: Disabled

3.2.2.2 Auto-crossover

All ports are auto-crossover, that is auto-MDIX ports (Media Dependent Interface Crossover), so you may use either a straight-through Ethernet cable or crossover Ethernet cable for all Gigabit port connections. Auto-crossover ports automatically sense whether they need to function as crossover or straight ports, so crossover cables can connect both computers and switches/hubs.

3.2.3 Mini-GBIC Slots

These are slots for mini-GBIC (Gigabit Interface Converter) transceivers. A transceiver is a single unit that houses a transmitter and a receiver. The Switch does not come with transceivers. You must use transceivers that comply with the Small Form-factor Pluggable (SFP) Transceiver MultiSource Agreement (MSA). See the SFF committee's INF-8074i specification Rev 1.0 for details.

You can change transceivers while the Switch is operating. You can use different transceivers to connect to Ethernet switches with different types of fiber-optic or even copper cable connectors.

To avoid possible eye injury, do not look into an operating fiber-optic module's connectors.

- Type: SFP connection interface

- Connection speed: 1 Gigabit per second (Gbps)

3.2.3.1 Transceiver Installation

Use the following steps to install a mini-GBIC transceiver (SFP module).

1. Insert the transceiver into the slot with the exposed section of PCB board facing down.
2. Press the transceiver firmly until it clicks into place.
3. The Switch automatically detects the installed transceiver. Check the LEDs to verify that it is functioning properly.
4. Close the transceiver's latch (latch styles vary).
5. Connect the fiber optic cables to the transceiver.

Figure 8 Transceiver Installation Example

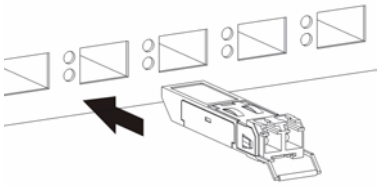
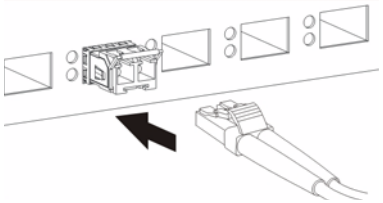


Figure 9 Connecting the Fiber Optic Cables



3.2.3.2 Transceiver Removal

Use the following steps to remove a mini-GBIC transceiver (SFP module).

1. Remove the fiber optic cables from the transceiver.
2. Open the transceiver's latch (latch styles vary).

3 Pull the transceiver out of the slot.

Figure 10 Removing the Fiber Optic Cables

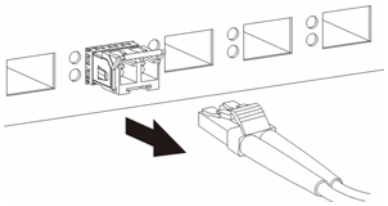


Figure 11 Opening the Transceiver's Latch Example

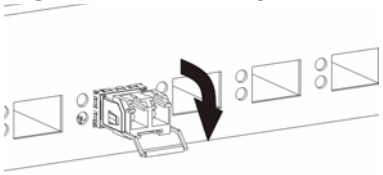
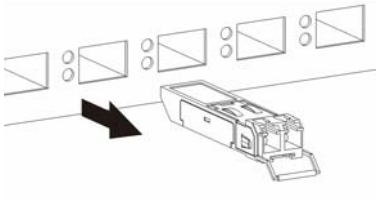


Figure 12 Transceiver Removal Example



3.2.4 Power Connector

Note: Make sure you are using the correct power source as shown on the panel.

To connect power to the Switch, insert the female end of the power cord to the AC power receptacle on the front panel. Connect the other end of the supplied power cord to a power outlet. Make sure that no objects obstruct the airflow of the fans (located on the side of the unit).

See Chapter 41 on page 329 for information on the Switch's power supply requirements.

3.3 LEDs

After you connect the power to the Switch, view the LEDs to ensure proper functioning of the Switch and as an aid in troubleshooting.

Table 2 LED Descriptions

LED	COLOR	STATUS	DESCRIPTION
PWR	Green	On	The system is turned on.
		Off	The system is off or has failed.
SYS	Green	On	The system is on and functioning properly.
		Blinking	The system is rebooting and performing self-diagnostic tests.
		Off	The power is off or the system is not ready/ malfunctioning.
ALM	Red	On	A hardware failure is detected.
		Off	The system is functioning normally.
Ethernet Ports			
LNK/ACT	Green	Blinking	The system is transmitting/receiving to/from a 10 Mbps or a 1000 Mbps Ethernet network.
		On	The link to a 10 Mbps or a 1000 Mbps Ethernet network is up.
	Amber	Blinking	The system is transmitting/receiving to/from a 100 Mbps Ethernet network.
		On	The link to a 100 Mbps Ethernet network is up.
		Off	The link to an Ethernet network is down.
FDX	Amber	On	The Gigabit port is negotiating in full-duplex mode.
		Off	The Gigabit port is negotiating in half-duplex mode.
Mini-GBIC Slots			
LNK	Green	On	The link to this port is up.
		Off	The link to this port is not connected.
ACT	Green	Blinking	This port is receiving or transmitting data.

PART II
Basic Configuration

The Web Configurator (43)

Initial Setup Example (51)

System Status and Port Statistics (65)

Basic Setting (71)

4

The Web Configurator

4.1 Overview

This section introduces the configuration and functions of the web configurator.

The web configurator is an HTML-based management interface that allows easy Switch setup and management via Internet browser. Use Internet Explorer 6.0 and later or Netscape Navigator 7.0 and later versions. The recommended screen resolution is 1024 by 768 pixels.

In order to use the web configurator you need to allow:

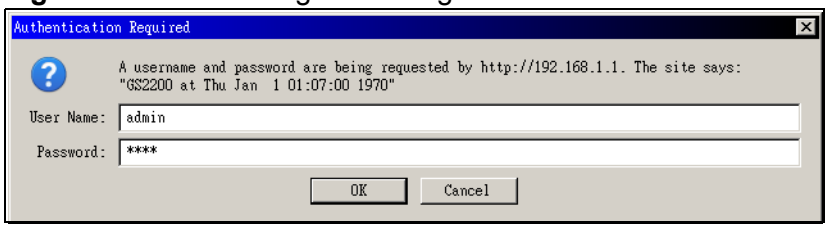
- Web browser pop-up windows from your device. Web pop-up blocking is enabled by default in Windows XP SP (Service Pack) 2.
- JavaScript (enabled by default).
- Java permissions (enabled by default).

4.2 System Login

1. Start your web browser.
2. Type "http://" and the IP address of the Switch (for example, the default management IP address is 192.168.1.1) in the **Location** or **Address** field. Press [ENTER].

3 The login screen appears. The default username is **admin** and associated default password is **1234**. The date and time display as shown if you have not configured a time server nor manually entered a time and date in the **General Setup** screen.

Figure 13 Web Configurator: Login



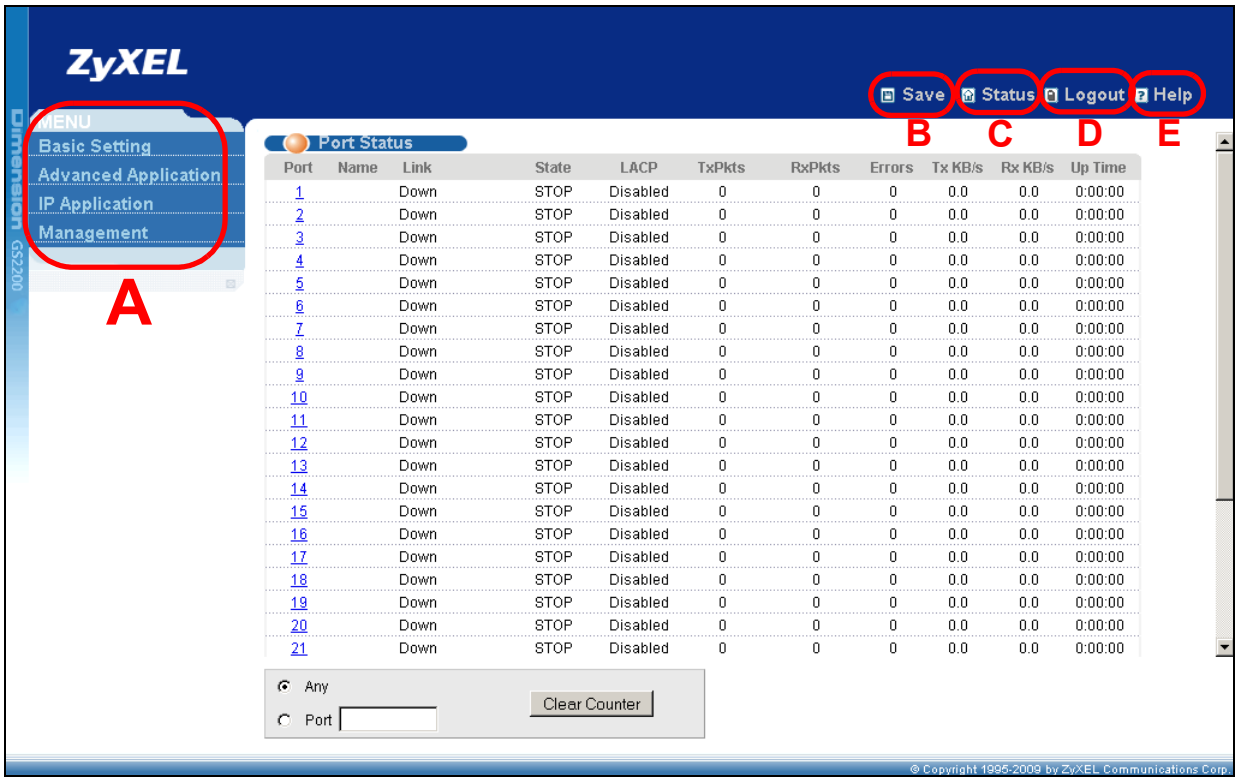
4 Click **OK** to view the first web configurator screen.

4.3 The Status Screen

The **Status** screen is the first screen that displays when you access the web configurator.

The following figure shows the navigating components of a web configurator screen.

Figure 14 Web Configurator Home Screen (Status)



A - Click the menu items to open submenu links, and then click on a submenu link to open the screen in the main window.

B, **C**, **D**, **E** - These are quick links which allow you to perform certain tasks no matter which screen you are currently working in.

B - Click this link to save your configuration into the Switch's nonvolatile memory. Nonvolatile memory is the configuration of your Switch that stays the same even if the Switch's power is turned off.

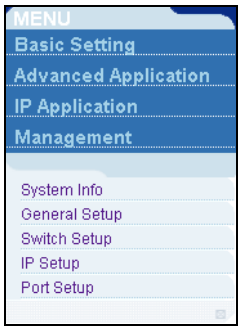
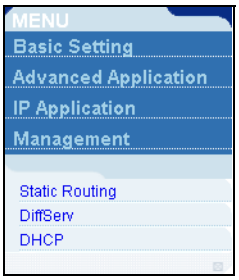
C - Click this link to go to the status page of the Switch.

D - Click this link to logout of the web configurator.

E - Click this link to display web help pages. The help pages provide descriptions for all of the configuration screens.

In the navigation panel, click a main link to reveal a list of submenu links.

Table 3 Navigation Panel Sub-links Overview

BASIC SETTING	ADVANCED APPLICATION	IP APPLICATION	MANAGEMENT
			

The following table describes the links in the navigation panel.

Table 4 Navigation Panel Links

LINK	DESCRIPTION
Basic Settings	
System Info	This link takes you to a screen that displays general system information.
General Setup	This link takes you to a screen where you can configure general identification information about the Switch.
Switch Setup	This link takes you to a screen where you can set up global Switch parameters such as VLAN type, GARP and priority queues.
IP Setup	This link takes you to a screen where you can configure the IP address, subnet mask (necessary for Switch management) and DNS (domain name server) and set up to 64 IP routing domains.
Port Setup	This link takes you to a screen where you can configure settings for individual Switch ports.
Advanced Application	
VLAN	This link takes you to screens where you can configure port-based or 802.1Q VLAN (depending on what you configured in the Switch Setup menu). You can also configure a protocol based VLAN or a subnet based VLAN in these screens.
Static MAC Forwarding	This link takes you to a screen where you can configure static MAC addresses for a port. These static MAC addresses do not age out.
Static Multicast Forwarding	This link takes you to a screen where you can configure static multicast MAC addresses for port(s). These static multicast MAC addresses do not age out.
Filtering	This link takes you to a screen to set up filtering rules.
Spanning Tree Protocol	This link takes you to screens where you can configure the RSTP/MRSTP/MSTP to prevent network loops.
Bandwidth Control	This link takes you to a screen where you can configure bandwidth limits on the Switch.
Broadcast Storm Control	This link takes you to a screen to set up broadcast filters.
Mirroring	This link takes you to screens where you can copy traffic from one port or ports to another port in order that you can examine the traffic from the first port without interference.
Link Aggregation	This link takes you to screens where you can logically aggregate physical links to form one logical, higher-bandwidth link.
Port Authentication	This link takes you to a screen where you can configure IEEE 802.1x port authentication for clients communicating via the Switch.
Port Security	This link takes you to screens where you can activate MAC address learning and set the maximum number of MAC addresses to learn on a port.
Classifier	This link takes you to a screen where you can configure the Switch to group packets based on the specified criteria.
Policy Rule	This link takes you to a screen where you can configure the Switch to perform special treatment on the grouped packets.
Queuing Method	This link takes you to a screen where you can configure queuing with associated queue weights for each port.

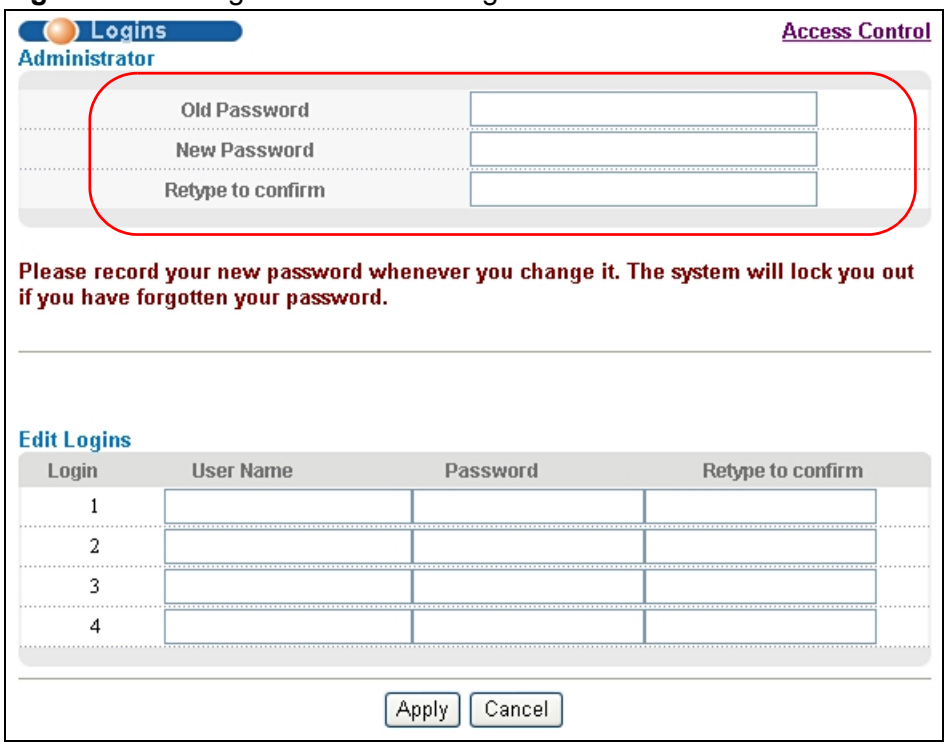
Table 4 Navigation Panel Links (continued)

LINK	DESCRIPTION
VLAN Stacking	This link takes you to screens where you can configure VLAN stacking.
Multicast	This link takes you to screens where you can configure various multicast features, IGMP snooping and create multicast VLANs.
AAA	This link takes you to a screen where you can configure authentication, authorization services via external servers. The external servers can be either RADIUS (Remote Authentication Dial-In User Service) or TACACS+ (Terminal Access Controller Access-Control System Plus).
IP Source Guard	This link takes you to screens where you can configure filtering of unauthorized DHCP and ARP packets in your network.
Loop Guard	This link takes you to a screen where you can configure protection against network loops that occur on the edge of your network.
Layer 2 Protocol Tunneling	This link takes you to a screen where you can configure L2PT (Layer 2 Protocol Tunneling) settings on the Switch.
IP Application	
Static Routing	This link takes you to a screen where you can configure static routes. A static route defines how the Switch should forward traffic by configuring the TCP/IP parameters manually.
DiffServ	This link takes you to screens where you can enable DiffServ, configure marking rules and set DSCP-to-IEEE802.1p mappings.
DHCP	This link takes you to screens where you can configure the DHCP settings.
Management	
Maintenance	This link takes you to screens where you can perform firmware and configuration file maintenance as well as reboot the system.
Access Control	This link takes you to screens where you can change the system login password and configure SNMP and remote management.
Diagnostic	This link takes you to a screen where you can view system logs and test port(s).
Syslog	This link takes you to screens where you can setup system logs and a system log server.
Cluster Management	This link takes you to screens where you can configure clustering management and view its status.
MAC Table	This link takes you to a screen where you can view the MAC addresses (and types) of devices attached to what ports and VLAN IDs.
ARP Table	This link takes you to a screen where you can view the MAC addresses – IP address resolution table.
Configure Clone	This link takes you to a screen where you can copy attributes of one port to other ports.

4.3.1 Change Your Password

After you log in for the first time, it is recommended you change the default administrator password. Click **Management** > **Access Control** > **Logins** to display the next screen.

Figure 15 Change Administrator Login Password



4.4 Saving Your Configuration

When you are done modifying the settings in a screen, click **Apply** to save your changes back to the run-time memory. Settings in the run-time memory are lost when the Switch's power is turned off.

Click the **Save** link in the upper right hand corner of the web configurator to save your configuration to nonvolatile memory. Nonvolatile memory refers to the Switch's storage that remains even if the Switch's power is turned off.

Note: Use the **Save** link when you are done with a configuration session.

4.5 Switch Lockout

You could block yourself (and all others) from managing the Switch if you do one of the following:

1. Delete the management VLAN (default is VLAN 1).
2. Delete all port-based VLANs with the CPU port as a member. The "CPU port" is the management port of the Switch.
3. Filter all traffic to the CPU port.
4. Disable all ports.
5. Misconfigure the text configuration file.
6. Forget the password and/or IP address.
7. Prevent all services from accessing the Switch.
8. Change a service port number but forget it.

Note: Be careful not to lock yourself and others out of the Switch.

4.6 Resetting the Switch

If you lock yourself (and others) from the Switch or forget the administrator password, you will need to reload the factory-default configuration file or reset the Switch back to the factory defaults.

4.6.1 Reload the Configuration File

Uploading the factory-default configuration file replaces the current configuration file with the factory-default configuration file. This means that you will lose all previous configurations and the speed of the console port will be reset to the default of 9600 bps with 8 data bits, no parity, one stop bit and flow control set to none. The password will also be reset to "1234" and the IP address to 192.168.1.1.

To upload the configuration file, do the following:

1. Connect to the console port using a computer with terminal emulation software.

2 Disconnect and reconnect the Switch's power to begin a session. When you reconnect the Switch's power, you will see the initial screen.

3 When you see the message "`Press any key to enter Debug Mode within 3 seconds ...`" press any key to enter debug mode.

4 Type `atlc` after the "`Enter Debug Mode`" message.

5 Wait for the "`Starting XMODEM upload`" message before activating XMODEM upload on your terminal.

6 After a configuration file upload, type `atgo` to restart the Switch.

The Switch is now reinitialized with a default configuration file including the default password of "1234".

4.7 Logging Out of the Web Configurator

Click **Logout** in a screen to exit the web configurator. You have to log in with your password again after you log out. This is recommended after you finish a management session for security reasons.

Figure 16 Web Configurator: Logout Screen

4.8 Help

The web configurator's online help has descriptions of individual screens and some supplementary information.

Click the **Help** link from a web configurator screen to view an online help description of that screen.

5

Initial Setup Example

5.1 Overview

This chapter shows how to set up the Switch for an example network.

The following lists the configuration steps for the initial setup:

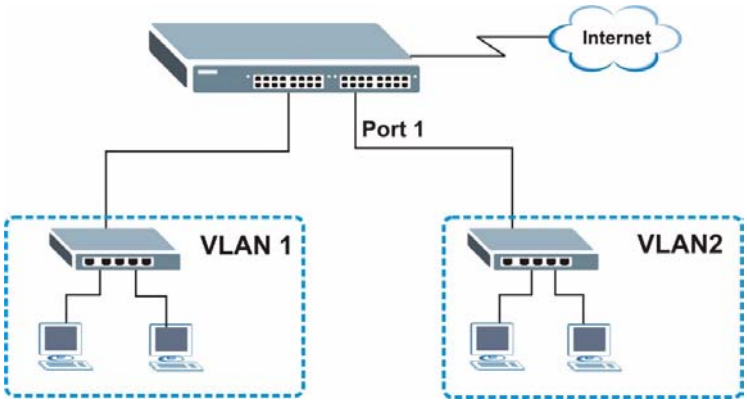
- Create a VLAN
- Set port VLAN ID
- Configure the Switch IP management address

5.1.1 Creating a VLAN

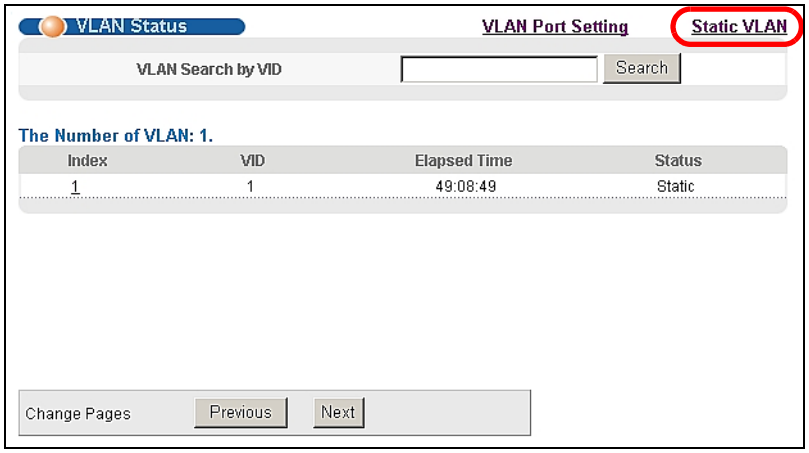
VLANs confine broadcast frames to the VLAN group in which the port(s) belongs. You can do this with port-based VLAN or tagged static VLAN with fixed port members.

In this example, you want to configure port 1 as a member of VLAN 2.

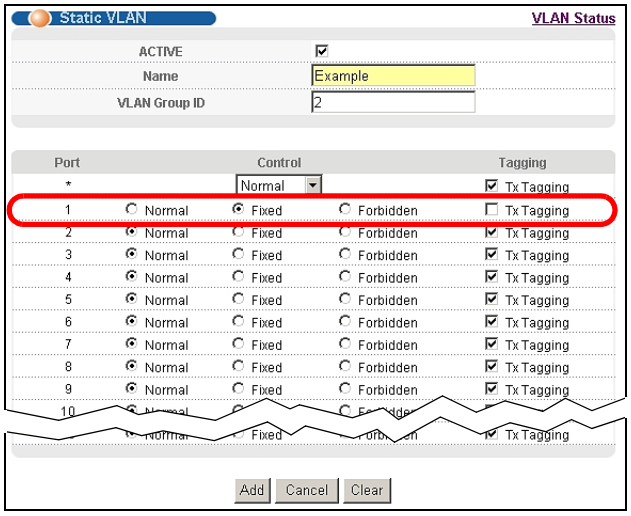
Figure 17 Initial Setup Network Example: VLAN



1 Click **Advanced Application** > **VLAN** in the navigation panel and click the **Static VLAN** link.



2 In the **Static VLAN** screen, select **ACTIVE**, enter a descriptive name in the **Name** field and enter 2 in the **VLAN Group ID** field for the **VLAN2** network.



Note: The **VLAN Group ID** field in this screen and the **VID** field in the **IP Setup** screen refer to the same VLAN ID.

3 Since the **VLAN2** network is connected to port 1 on the Switch, select **Fixed** to configure port 1 to be a permanent member of the VLAN only.

4 To ensure that VLAN-unaware devices (such as computers and hubs) can receive frames properly, clear the **TX Tagging** check box to set the Switch to remove VLAN tags before sending.

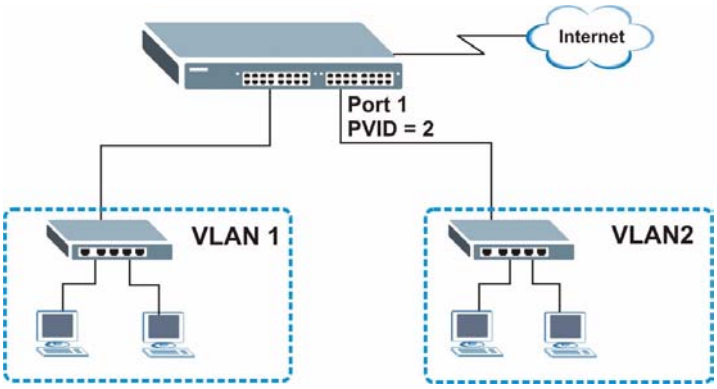
5 Click **Add** to save the settings to the run-time memory. Settings in the run-time memory are lost when the Switch's power is turned off.

5.1.2 Setting Port VID

Use PVID to add a tag to incoming untagged frames received on that port so that the frames are forwarded to the VLAN group that the tag defines.

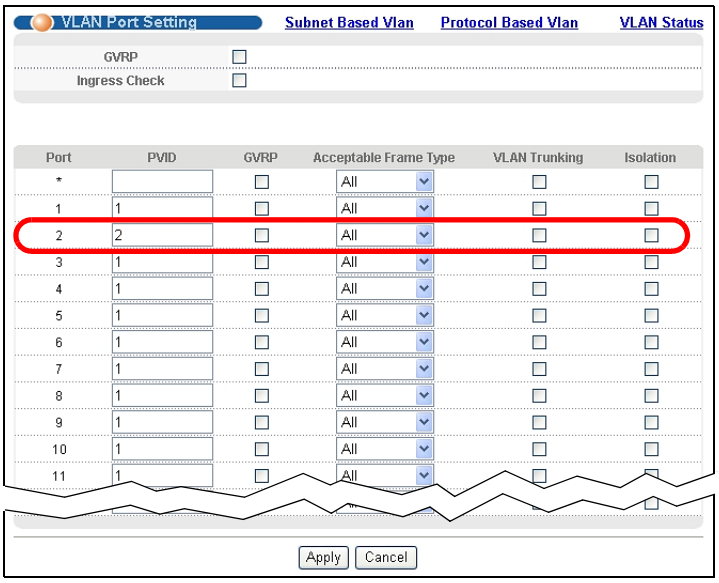
In the example network, configure 2 as the port VID on port 1 so that any untagged frames received on that port get sent to VLAN 2.

Figure 18 Initial Setup Network Example: Port VID



1 Click **Advanced Applications** > **VLAN** in the navigation panel. Then click the **VLAN Port Setting** link.

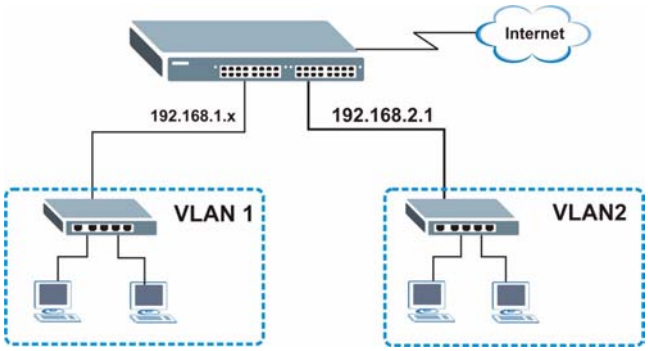
2 Enter 2 in the **PVID** field for port 1 and click **Apply** to save your changes back to the run-time memory. Settings in the run-time memory are lost when the Switch's power is turned off.



5.2 Configuring Switch Management IP Address

The default management IP address of the Switch is 192.168.1.1. You can configure another IP address in a different subnet for management purposes. The following figure shows an example.

Figure 19 Initial Setup Example: Management IP Address



1 Connect your computer to any Ethernet port on the Switch. Make sure your computer is in the same subnet as the Switch.

2 Open your web browser and enter 192.168.1.1 (the default IP address) in the address bar to access the web configurator. See Section 4.2 on page 43 for more information.

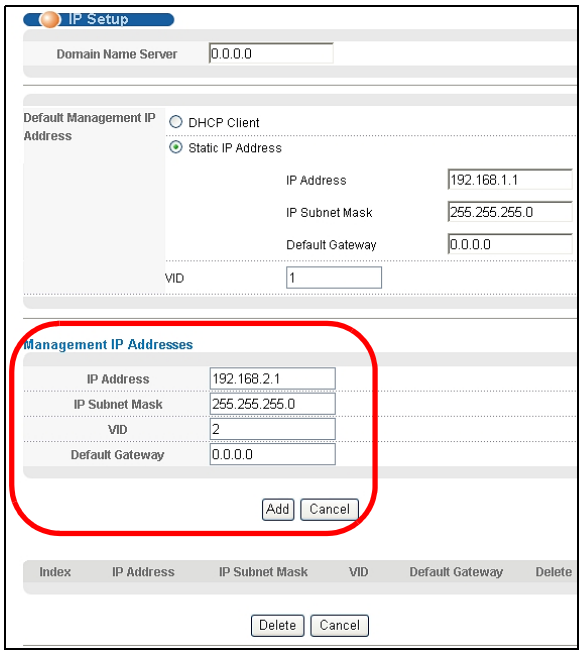
3 Click **Basic Setting** > **IP Setup** in the navigation panel.

4 Configure the related fields in the **IP Setup** screen.

5 For the **VLAN2** network, enter 192.168.2.1 as the IP address and 255.255.255.0 as the subnet mask.

6 In the **VID** field, enter the ID of the VLAN group to which you want this management IP address to belong. This is the same as the VLAN ID you configure in the **Static VLAN** screen.

7 Click **Add** to save your changes back to the run-time memory. Settings in the run-time memory are lost when the Switch's power is turned off.



6

Tutorials

6.1 Overview

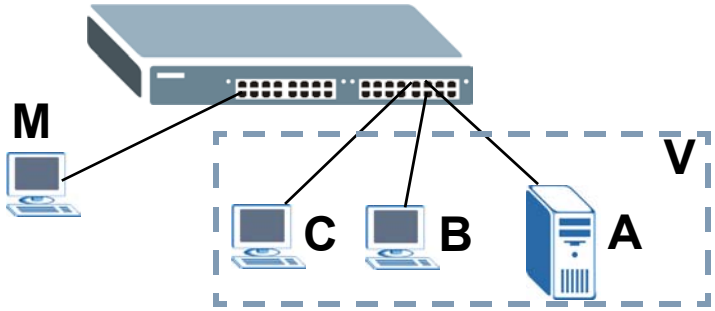
This chapter provides some examples of using the web configurator to set up and use the Switch. The tutorials include:

- How to Use DHCP Snooping on the Switch
- How to Use DHCP Relay on the Switch

6.2 How to Use DHCP Snooping on the Switch

You only want DHCP server **A** connected to port 5 to assign IP addresses to all devices in VLAN network (**V**). Create a VLAN containing ports 5, 6 and 7. Connect a computer **M** to the Switch for management.

Figure 20 Tutorial: DHCP Snooping Tutorial Overview



Note: For related information about DHCP snooping, see Section 26.1 on page 215.

The settings in this tutorial are as the following.

Table 5 Tutorial: Settings in this Tutorial

HOST	PORT CONNECTED	VLAN	PVID	DHCP SNOOPING PORT TRUSTED
DHCP Server (**A**)	5	1 and 100	100	Yes

Table 5 Tutorial: Settings in this Tutorial

HOST	PORT CONNECTED	VLAN	PVID	DHCP SNOOPING PORT TRUSTED
DHCP Client (**B**)	6	1 and 100	100	No
DHCP Client (**C**)	7	1 and 100	100	No

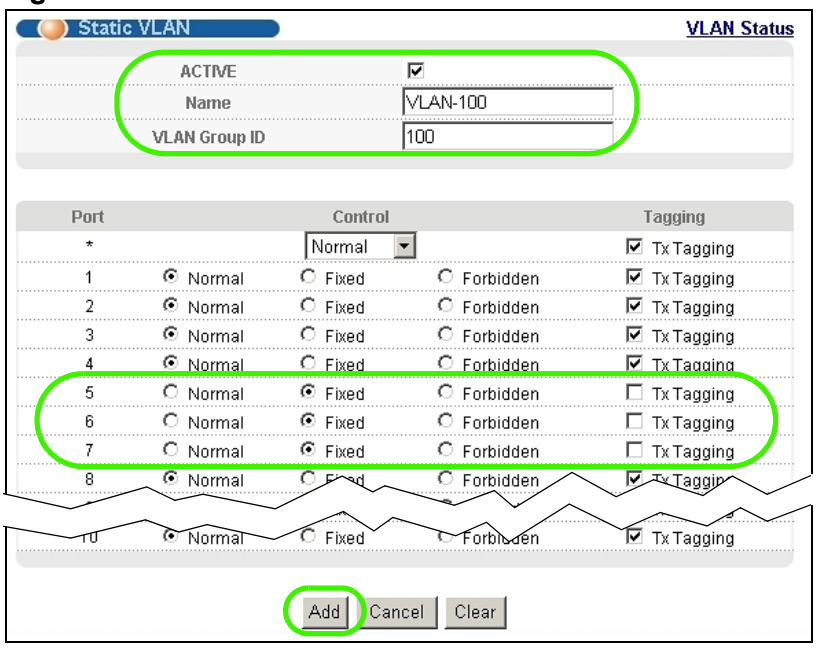
1 Access the Switch through **http://192.168.1.1** by default. Log into the Switch by entering the username (default: **admin**) and password (default: **1234**).

2 Go to **Advanced Application** > **VLAN** > **Static VLAN**, and create a VLAN with ID of 100. Add ports 5, 6 and 7 in the VLAN by selecting **Fixed** in the **Control** field as shown.

Deselect **Tx Tagging** because you don't want outgoing traffic to contain this VLAN tag.

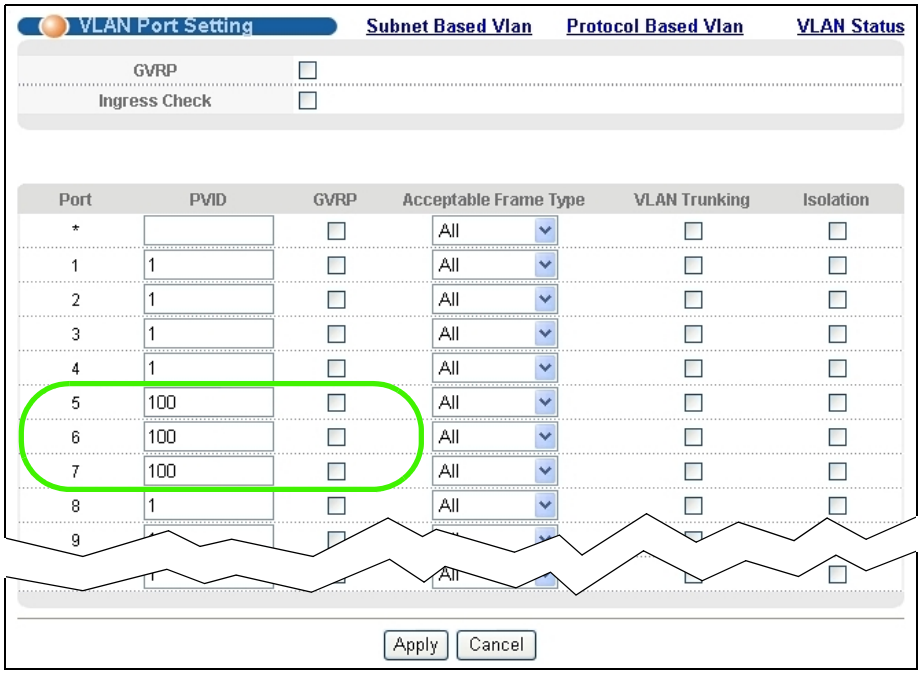
Click **Add**.

Figure 21 Tutorial: Create a VLAN and Add Ports to It



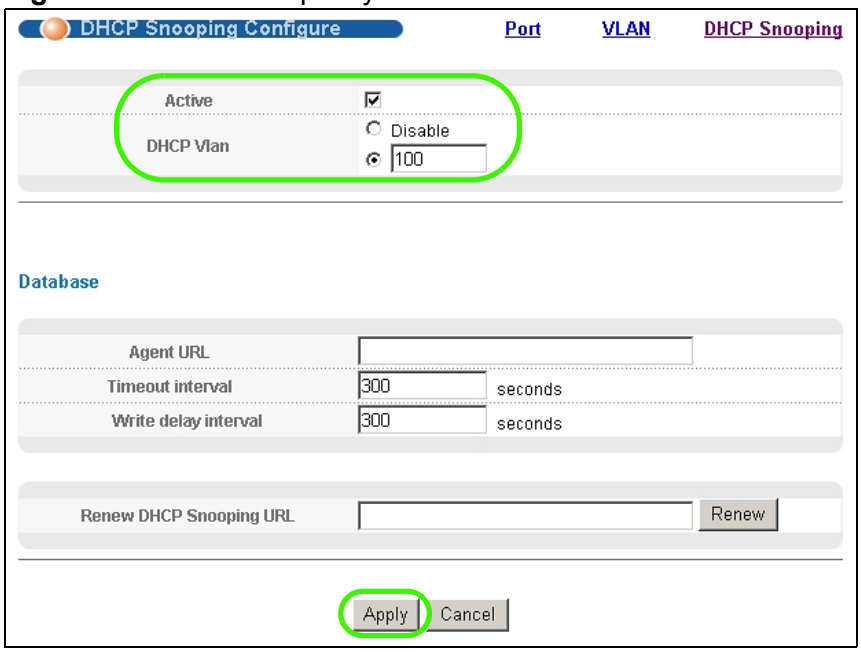
3 Go to **Advanced Application** > **VLAN** > **VLAN Port Setting**, and set the PVID of the ports 5, 6 and 7 to 100. This tags untagged incoming frames on ports 5, 6 and 7 with the tag 100.

Figure 22 Tutorial: Tag Untagged Frames



4 Go to **Advanced Application** > **IP Source Guard** > **DHCP snooping** > **Configure**, activate and specify VLAN 100 as the DHCP VLAN as shown. Click **Apply**.

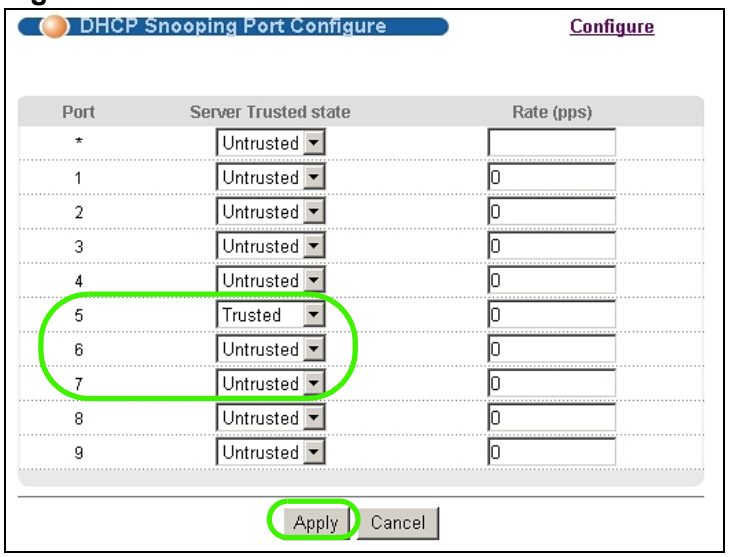
Figure 23 Tutorial: Specify DHCP VLAN



5 Click the **Port** link at the top right corner.

6 The **DHCP Snooping Port Configure** screen appears. Select **Trusted** in the **Server Trusted state** field for port 5 because the DHCP server is connected to port 5. Keep ports 6 and 7 **Untrusted** because they are connected to DHCP clients. Click **Apply**.

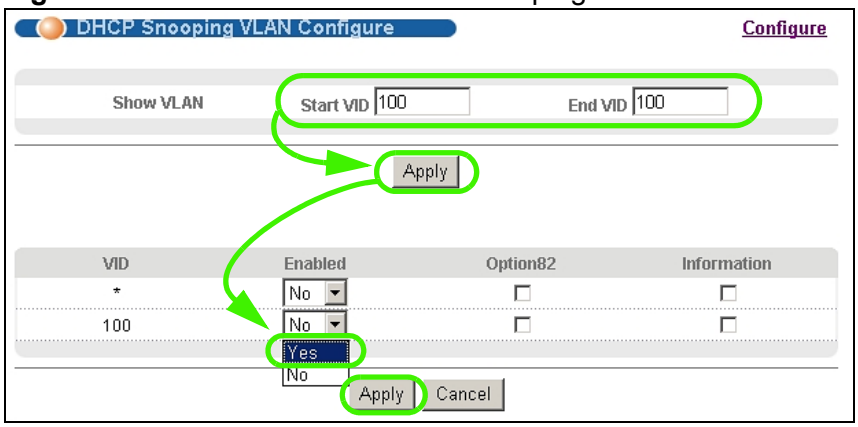
Figure 24 Tutorial: Set the DHCP Server Port to Trusted



7 Go to **Advanced Application** > **IP Source Guard** > **DHCP snooping** > **Configure** > **VLAN**, show VLAN 100 by entering 100 in the **Start VID** and **End VID** fields and click **Apply**. Then select **Yes** in the **Enabled** field of the VLAN 100 entry shown at the bottom section of the screen.

If you want to add more information in the DHCP request packets such as source VLAN ID or system name, you can also select the **Option82** and **Information** fields in the entry. See Section 26.12.1.3 on page 237.

Figure 25 Tutorial: Enable DHCP Snooping on this VLAN

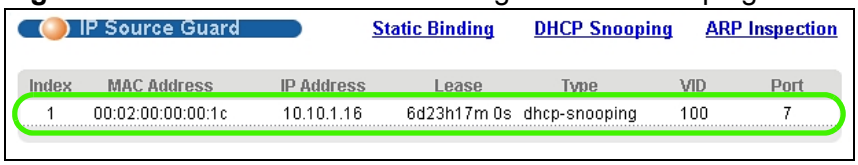


8 Click **Save** at the top right corner of the web configurator to save the configuration permanently.

9 Connect your DHCP server to port 5 and a computer (as DHCP client) to either port 6 or 7. The computer should be able to get an IP address from the DHCP server. If you put the DHCP server on port 6 or 7, the computer will not able to get an IP address.

10 To check if DHCP snooping works, go to **Advanced Application** > **IP Source Guard**, you should see an IP assignment with the type **dhcp-snooping** as shown.

Figure 26 Tutorial: Check the Binding If DHCP Snooping Works


IP Source Guard
Static Binding
DHCP Snooping
ARP Inspection
Index MAC Address IP Address Lease Type VID Port
1 00:02:00:00:00:1c 10.10.1.16 6d23h17m 0s dhcp-snooping 100 7

You can also telnet or log into the Switch's console. Use the command "`show dhcp snooping binding`" to see the DHCP snooping binding table as shown next.

```
sysname# show dhcp snooping binding
        MacAddress        IpAddress         Lease           Type  VLAN   Port
  -----------------  ---------------  ------------  -------------  ----  -----
  00:02:00:00:00:1c       10.10.1.16   6d23h59m20s  dhcp-snooping   100      7
  Total number of bindings: 1
```

6.3 How to Use DHCP Relay on the Switch

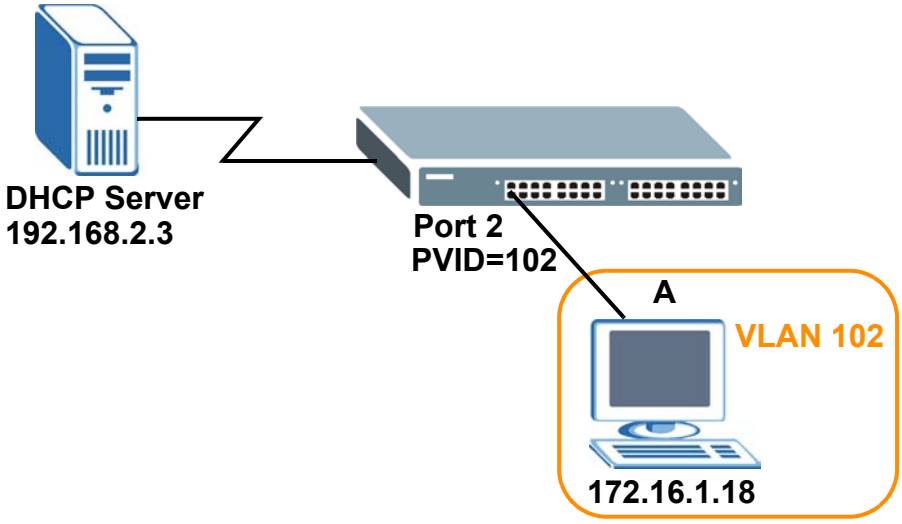
This tutorial describes how to configure your Switch to forward DHCP client requests to a specific DHCP server. The DHCP server can then assign a specific IP address based on the information in the DHCP requests.

6.3.1 DHCP Relay Tutorial Introduction

In this example, you have configured your DHCP server (192.168.2.3) and want to have it assign a specific IP address (say 172.16.1.18) to DHCP client **A** based

on the system name, VLAN ID and port number in the DHCP request. Client **A** connects to the Switch's port 2 in VLAN 102.

Figure 27 Tutorial: DHCP Relay Scenario



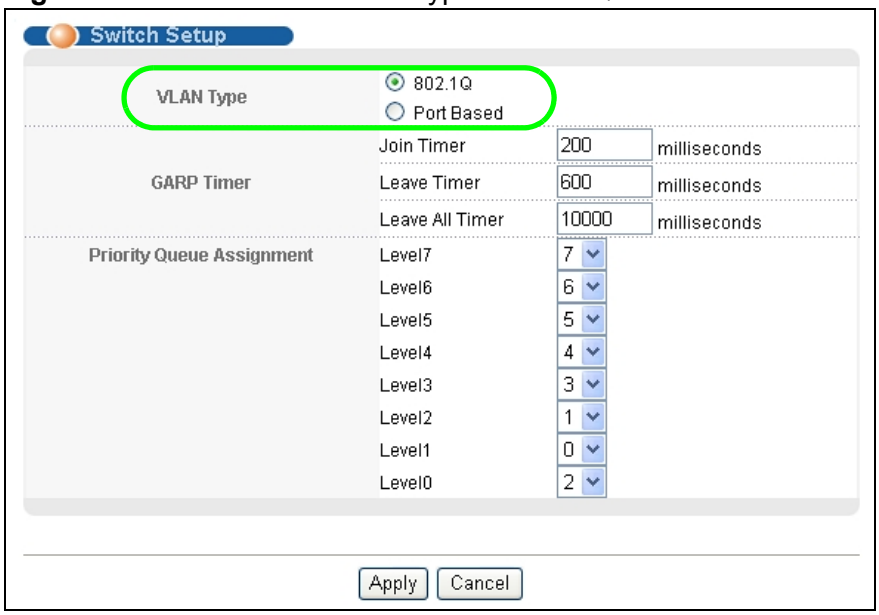
6.3.2 Creating a VLAN

Follow the steps below to configure port 2 as a member of VLAN 102.

1 Access the web configurator through the Switch's management port.

2 Go to **Basic Setting** > **Switch Setup** and set the VLAN type to **802.1Q**. Click **Apply** to save the settings to the run-time memory.

Figure 28 Tutorial: Set VLAN Type to 802.1Q



3 Click **Advanced Application** > **VLAN > Static VLAN**.

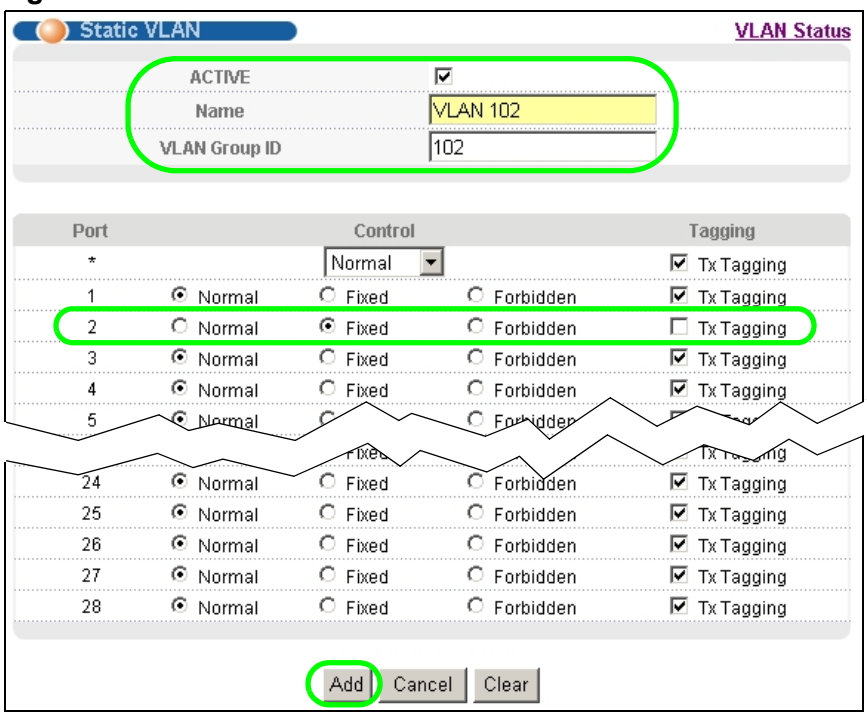
4 In the **Static VLAN** screen, select **ACTIVE**, enter a descriptive name (VALN 102 for example) in the **Name** field and enter 102 in the **VLAN Group ID** field.

5 Select **Fixed** to configure port 2 to be a permanent member of this VLAN.

6 Clear the **TX Tagging** check box to set the Switch to remove VLAN tags before sending.

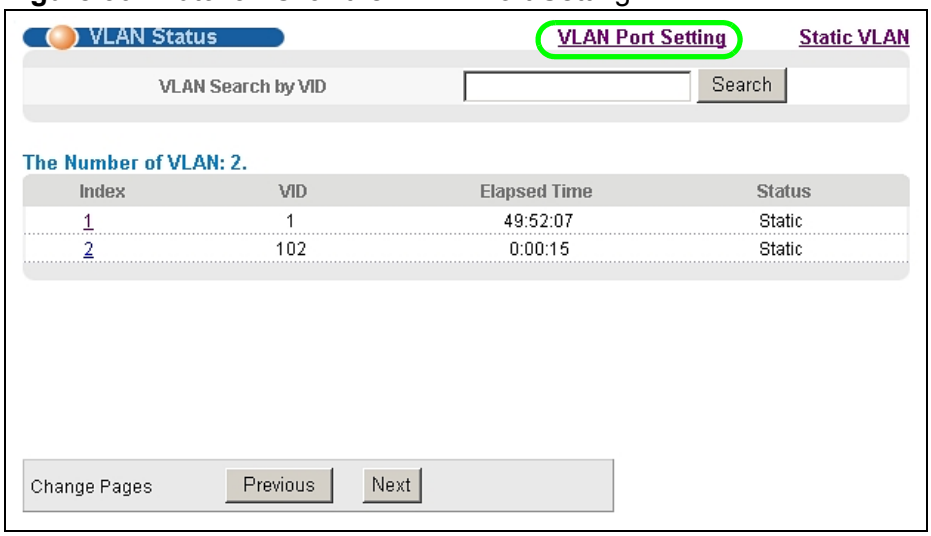
7 Click **Add** to save the settings to the run-time memory. Settings in the run-time memory are lost when the Switch's power is turned off.

Figure 29 Tutorial: Create a Static VLAN



8 Click the **VLAN Status** link in the **Static VLAN** screen and then the **VLAN Port Setting** link in the **VLAN Status** screen.

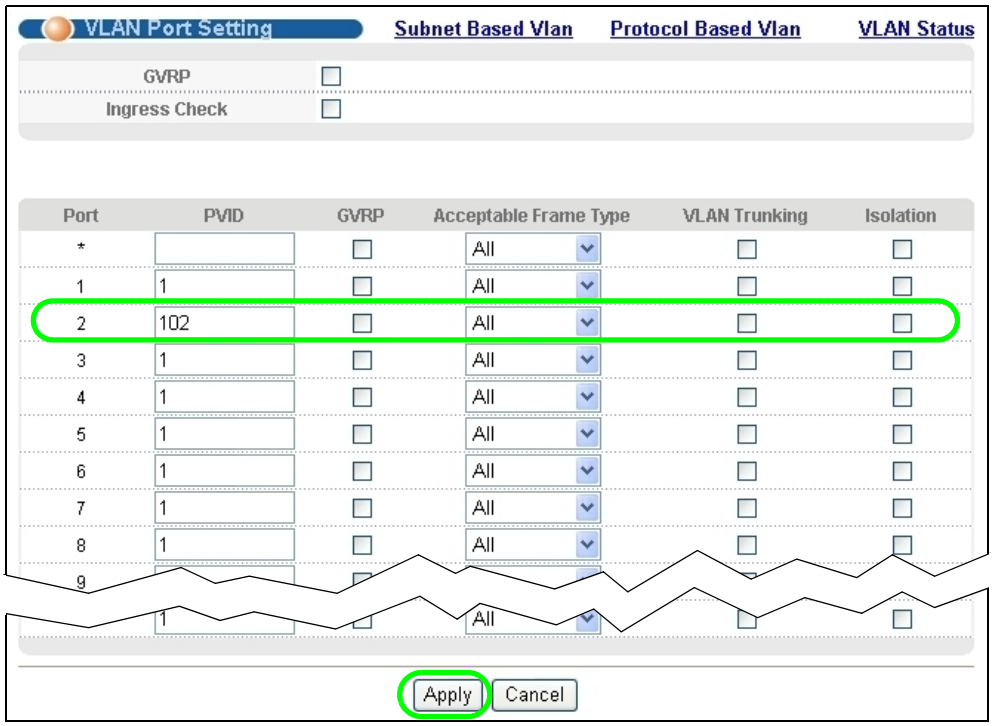
Figure 30 Tutorial: Click the VLAN Port Setting Link



9 Enter 102 in the **PVID** field for port 2 to add a tag to incoming untagged frames received on that port so that the frames are forwarded to the VLAN group that the tag defines.

10 Click **Apply** to save your changes back to the run-time memory.

Figure 31 Tutorial: Add Tag for Frames Received on Port 2



11 Click the **Save** link in the upper right corner of the web configurator to save your configuration permanently.

6.3.3 Configuring DHCP Relay

Follow the steps below to enable DHCP relay on the Switch and allow the Switch to add relay agent information (such as the VLAN ID) to DHCP requests.

1 Click **IP Application > DHCP** and then the **Global** link to open the **DHCP Relay** screen.

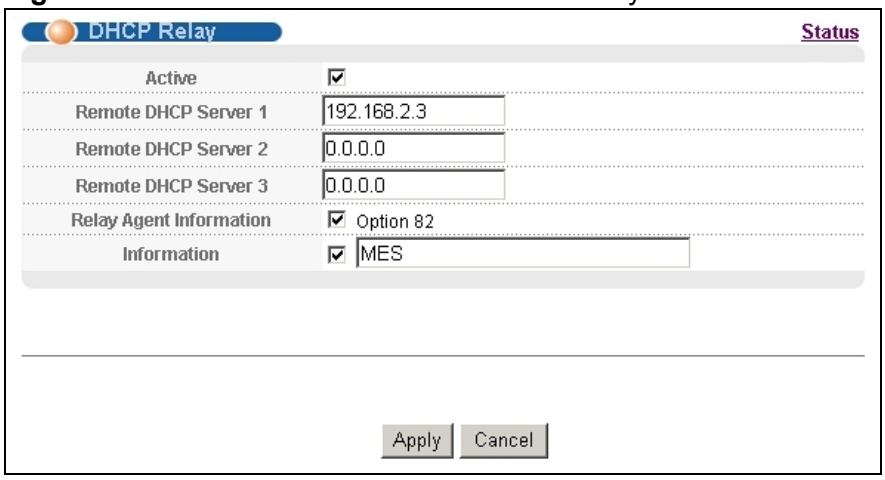
2 Select the **Active** check box.

3 Enter the DHCP server's IP address (192.168.2.3 in this example) in the **Remote DHCP Server 1** field.

4 Select the **Option 82** and the **Information** check boxes.

5 Click **Apply** to save your changes back to the run-time memory.

Figure 32 Tutorial: Set DHCP Server and Relay Information



6 Click the **Save** link in the upper right corner of the web configurator to save your configuration permanently.

7 The DHCP server can then assign a specific IP address based on the DHCP request.

6.3.4 Troubleshooting

Check the client **A**'s IP address. If it did not receive the IP address 172.16.1.18, make sure:

1. Client **A** is connected to the Switch's port 2 in VLAN 102.
2. You configured the correct VLAN ID, port number and system name for DHCP relay on both the DHCP server and the Switch.
3. You clicked the **Save** link on the Switch to have your settings take effect.

7

System Status and Port Statistics

7.1 Overview

This chapter describes the system status (web configurator home page) and port details screens.

The home screen of the web configurator displays a port statistical summary with links to each port showing statistical details.

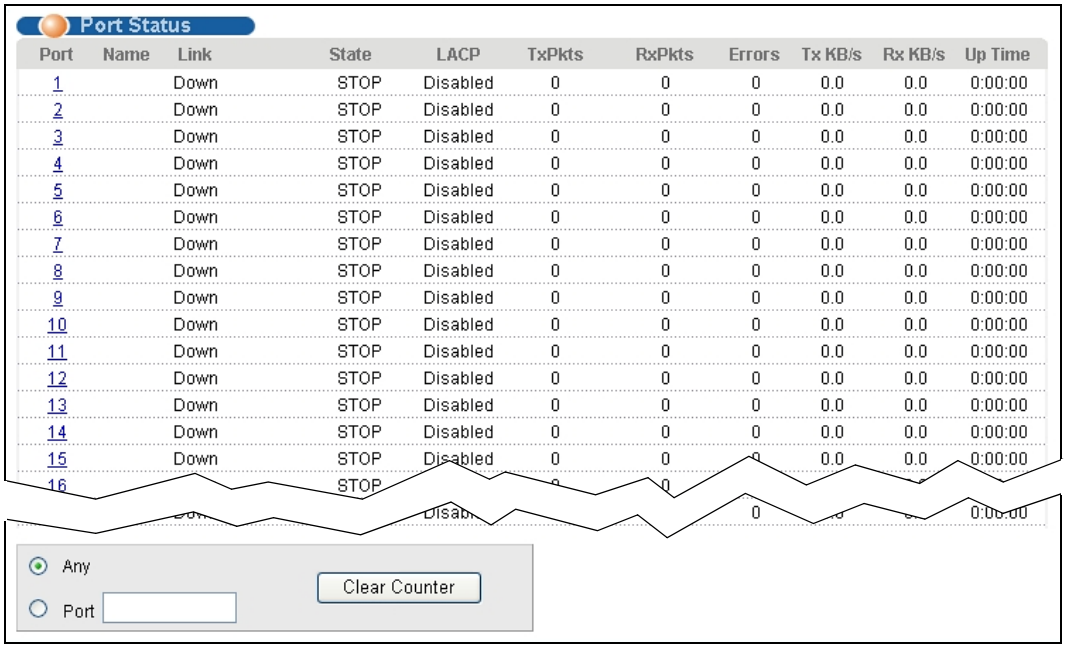
7.2 What You Can Do

- Use the **Port Status Sumary** screen (Section 7.3 on page 66) to view the port statistics.
- Use the **Port Details** screen (Section 7.3.1 on page 67) to display individual port statistics.

7.3 Port Status Summary

To view the port statistics, click **Status** in all web configurator screens to display the **Status** screen as shown next.

Figure 33 Status


Port Status
Port Name Link State LACP TxPkts RxPkts Errors Tx KB/s Rx KB/s Up Time
1 Down STOP Disabled 0 0 0 0.0 0.0 0:00:00
2 Down STOP Disabled 0 0 0 0.0 0.0 0:00:00
3 Down STOP Disabled 0 0 0 0.0 0.0 0:00:00
4 Down STOP Disabled 0 0 0 0.0 0.0 0:00:00
5 Down STOP Disabled 0 0 0 0.0 0.0 0:00:00
6 Down STOP Disabled 0 0 0 0.0 0.0 0:00:00
7 Down STOP Disabled 0 0 0 0.0 0.0 0:00:00
8 Down STOP Disabled 0 0 0 0.0 0.0 0:00:00
9 Down STOP Disabled 0 0 0 0.0 0.0 0:00:00
10 Down STOP Disabled 0 0 0 0.0 0.0 0:00:00
11 Down STOP Disabled 0 0 0 0.0 0.0 0:00:00
12 Down STOP Disabled 0 0 0 0.0 0.0 0:00:00
13 Down STOP Disabled 0 0 0 0.0 0.0 0:00:00
14 Down STOP Disabled 0 0 0 0.0 0.0 0:00:00
15 Down STOP Disabled 0 0 0 0.0 0.0 0:00:00
Any
Port
Clear Counter

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 6 Status

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Port	This identifies the Ethernet port. Click a port number to display the **Port Details** screen (refer to Figure 34 on page 67).
Name	This is the name you assigned to this port in the **Basic Setting** > **Port Setup** screen.
Link	This field displays the speed (either **10M** for 10Mbps, **100M** for 100Mbps or **1000M** for 1000Mbps) and the duplex (**F** for full duplex or **H** for half). It also shows the cable type (**Copper** or **Fiber**) for the combo ports.
State	If STP (Spanning Tree Protocol) is enabled, this field displays the STP state of the port (see Section 13.1 on page 117 for more information). If STP is disabled, this field displays **FORWARDING** if the link is up, otherwise, it displays **STOP**.
LACP	This fields displays whether LACP (Link Aggregation Control Protocol) has been enabled on the port.
TxPkts	This field shows the number of transmitted frames on this port.
RxPkts	This field shows the number of received frames on this port.
Errors	This field shows the number of received errors on this port.
Tx KB/s	This field shows the number of kilobytes per second transmitted on this port.

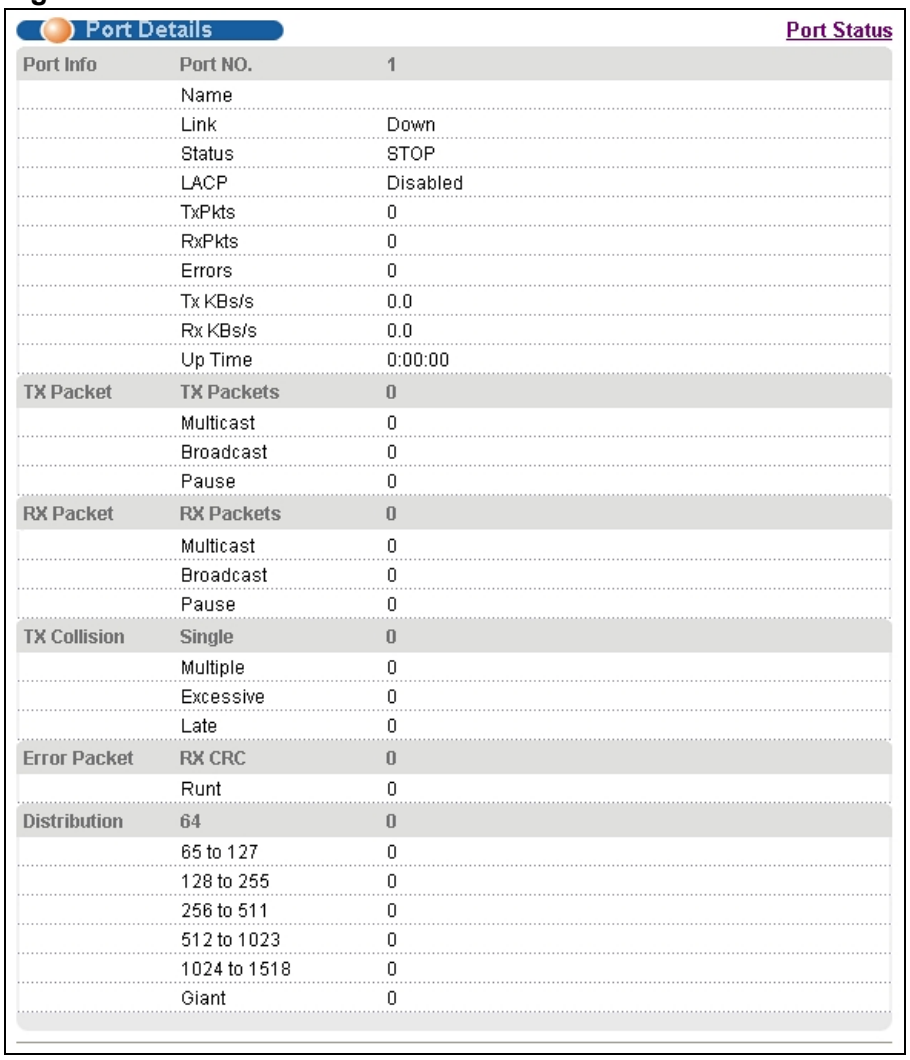
Table 6 Status (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Rx KB/s	This field shows the number of kilobytes per second received on this port.
Up Time	This field shows the total amount of time in hours, minutes and seconds the port has been up.
Clear Counter	Enter a port number and then click **Clear Counter** to erase the recorded statistical information for that port, or select **Any** to clear statistics for all ports.

7.3.1 Status: Port Details

Click a number in the **Port** column in the **Status** screen to display individual port statistics. Use this screen to check status and detailed performance data about an individual port on the Switch.

Figure 34 Status > Port Details



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 7 Status: Port Details

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Port Info	
Port NO.	This field displays the port number you are viewing.
Name	This field displays the name of the port.
Link	This field displays the speed (either **10M** for 10Mbps, **100M** for 100Mbps or **1000M** for 1000Mbps) and the duplex (**F** for full duplex or **H** for half duplex). It also shows the cable type (**Copper** or **Fiber**).
Status	If STP (Spanning Tree Protocol) is enabled, this field displays the STP state of the port (see Section 13.1 on page 117 for more information). If STP is disabled, this field displays **FORWARDING** if the link is up, otherwise, it displays **STOP**.
LACP	This field shows if LACP is enabled on this port or not.
TxPkts	This field shows the number of transmitted frames on this port
RxPkts	This field shows the number of received frames on this port
Errors	This field shows the number of received errors on this port.
Tx KB/s	This field shows the number kilobytes per second transmitted on this port.
Rx KB/s	This field shows the number of kilobytes per second received on this port.
Up Time	This field shows the total amount of time the connection has been up.
Tx Packet The following fields display detailed information about packets transmitted.	
TX Packet	This field shows the number of good packets (unicast, multicast and broadcast) transmitted.
Multicast	This field shows the number of good multicast packets transmitted.
Broadcast	This field shows the number of good broadcast packets transmitted.
Pause	This field shows the number of 802.3x Pause packets transmitted.
Rx Packet The following fields display detailed information about packets received.	
RX Packet	This field shows the number of good packets (unicast, multicast and broadcast) received.
Multicast	This field shows the number of good multicast packets received.
Broadcast	This field shows the number of good broadcast packets received.
Pause	This field shows the number of 802.3x Pause packets received.
TX Collision The following fields display information on collisions while transmitting.	
Single	This is a count of successfully transmitted packets for which transmission is inhibited by exactly one collision.
Multiple	This is a count of successfully transmitted packets for which transmission was inhibited by more than one collision.

Table 7 Status: Port Details (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Excessive	This is a count of packets for which transmission failed due to excessive collisions. Excessive collision is defined as the number of maximum collisions before the retransmission count is reset.
Late	This is the number of times a late collision is detected, that is, after 512 bits of the packets have already been transmitted.
Error Packet	The following fields display detailed information about packets received that were in error.
RX CRC	This field shows the number of packets received with CRC (Cyclic Redundant Check) error(s).
Runt	This field shows the number of packets received that were too short (shorter than 64 octets), including the ones with CRC errors.
Distribution	
64	This field shows the number of packets (including bad packets) received that were 64 octets in length.
65-127	This field shows the number of packets (including bad packets) received that were between 65 and 127 octets in length.
128-255	This field shows the number of packets (including bad packets) received that were between 128 and 255 octets in length.
256-511	This field shows the number of packets (including bad packets) received that were between 256 and 511 octets in length.
512-1023	This field shows the number of packets (including bad packets) received that were between 512 and 1023 octets in length.
1024-1518	This field shows the number of packets (including bad packets) received that were between 1024 and 1518 octets in length.
Giant	This field shows the number of packets (including bad packets) received that were between 1519 octets and the maximum frame size. The maximum frame size varies depending on your switch model. See Chapter 41 on page 329.

8

Basic Setting

8.1 Overview

This chapter describes how to configure the **System Info, General Setup**, **Switch Setup**, **IP Setup** and **Port Setup** screens.

The **System Info** screen displays general Switch information (such as firmware version number). The **General Setup** screen allows you to configure general Switch identification information. The **General Setup** screen also allows you to set the system time manually or get the current time and date from an external server when you turn on your Switch. The real time is then displayed in the Switch logs. The **Switch Setup** screen allows you to set up and configure global Switch features. The **IP Setup** screen allows you to configure a Switch IP address in each routing domain, subnet mask(s) and DNS (domain name server) for management purposes.

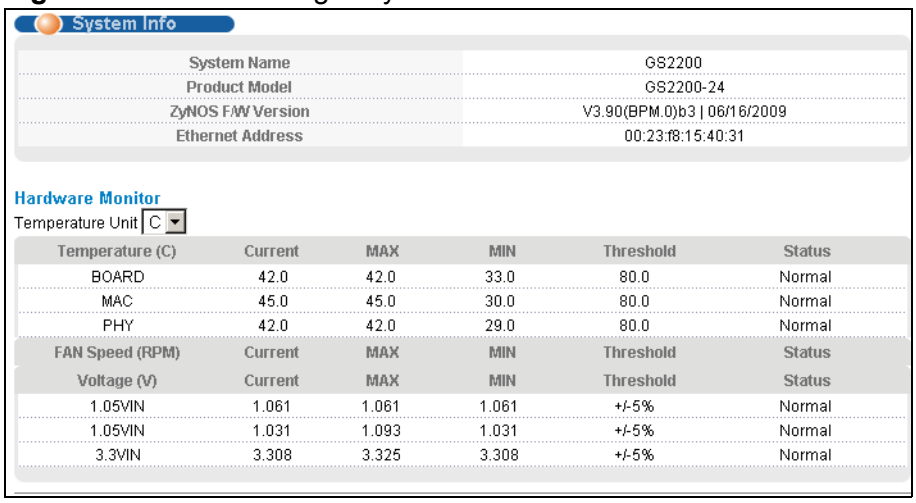
8.2 What You Can Do

- Use the **System Info** screen (Section 8.3 on page 72) to check the firmware version number.
- Use the **General Setup** screen (Section 8.4 on page 74) to configure general settings such as the system name and time.
- Use the **Switch Setup** screen (Section 8.6 on page 77) to choose your VLAN type, set the GARP timers and assign priorities to queues.
- Use the **IP Setup** screen (Section 8.7.1 on page 79) to configure the Switch IP address, default gateway device, the default domain name server and the management VLAN ID.
- Use the **Port Setup** screen (Section 8.8 on page 81) to configure Switch port settings.

8.3 System Information

In the navigation panel, click **Basic Setting** > **System Info** to display the screen as shown. You can check the firmware version number.

Figure 35 Basic Setting > System Info


System Info
System Name
GS2200
Product Model
GS2200-24
ZyNOS F/W Version
V3.90(BPM.0)b3 | 06/16/2009
Ethernet Address
00:23:f8:15:40:31
Hardware Monitor
Temperature Unit C
Temperature (C) Current MAX MIN Threshold Status
BOARD 42.0 42.0 33.0 80.0 Normal
MAC 45.0 45.0 30.0 80.0 Normal
PHY 42.0 42.0 29.0 80.0 Normal
FAN Speed (RPM) Current MAX MIN Threshold Status
Voltage (V) Current MAX MIN Threshold Status
1.05VIN 1.061 1.061 1.061 +/-5% Normal
1.05VIN 1.031 1.093 1.031 +/-5% Normal
3.3VIN 3.308 3.325 3.308 +/-5% Normal

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 8 Basic Setting > System Info

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
System Name	This field displays the descriptive name of the Switch for identification purposes.
Product Model	This field displays the product model of the Switch. Use this information when searching for firmware upgrade or looking for other support information in the website.
ZyNOS F/W Version	This field displays the version number of the Switch 's current firmware including the date created.
Ethernet Address	This field refers to the Ethernet MAC (Media Access Control) address of the Switch.
Hardware Monitor	
Temperature Unit	The Switch has temperature sensors that are capable of detecting and reporting if the temperature rises above the threshold. You may choose the temperature unit (Centigrade or Fahrenheit) in this field.
Temperature	**BOARD**, **MAC** and **PHY** refer to the location of the temperature sensors on the Switch printed circuit board.
Current	This shows the current temperature at this sensor.
MAX	This field displays the maximum temperature measured at this sensor.
MIN	This field displays the minimum temperature measured at this sensor.
Threshold	This field displays the upper temperature limit at this sensor.
Status	This field displays **Normal** for temperatures below the threshold and **Error** for those above.

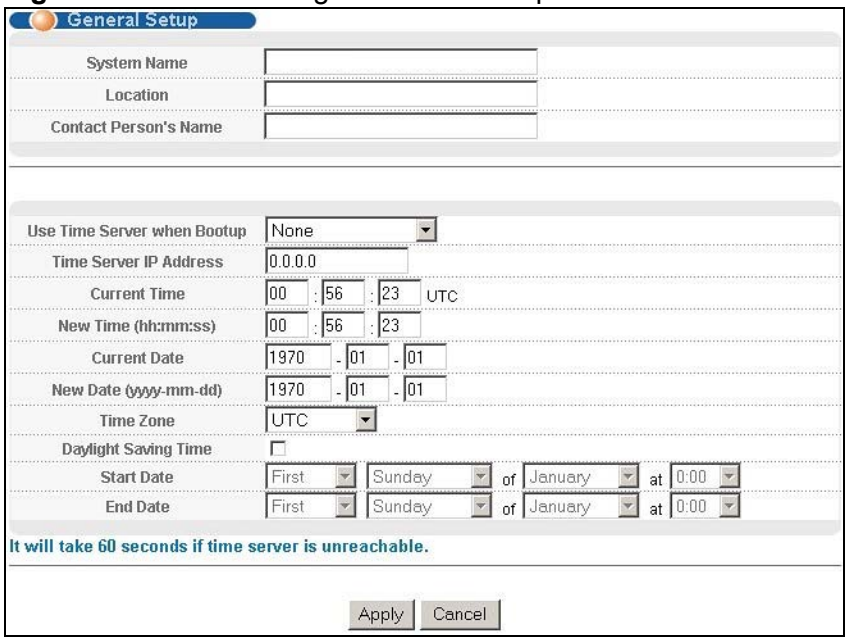
Table 8 Basic Setting > System Info (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Fan Speed (RPM)	A properly functioning fan is an essential component (along with a sufficiently ventilated, cool operating environment) in order for the device to stay within the temperature threshold. Each fan has a sensor that is capable of detecting and reporting if the fan speed falls below the threshold shown.
Current	This field displays this fan's current speed in Revolutions Per Minute (RPM).
MAX	This field displays this fan's maximum speed measured in Revolutions Per Minute (RPM).
MIN	This field displays this fan's minimum speed measured in Revolutions Per Minute (RPM). "<41" is displayed for speeds too small to measure (under 2000 RPM).
Threshold	This field displays the minimum speed at which a normal fan should work.
Status	**Normal** indicates that this fan is functioning above the minimum speed. **Error** indicates that this fan is functioning below the minimum speed.
Voltage(V)	The power supply for each voltage has a sensor that is capable of detecting and reporting if the voltage falls out of the tolerance range.
Current	This is the current voltage reading.
MAX	This field displays the maximum voltage measured at this point.
MIN	This field displays the minimum voltage measured at this point.
Threshold	This field displays the percentage tolerance of the voltage with which the Switch still works.
Status	**Normal** indicates that the voltage is within an acceptable operating range at this point; otherwise **Error** is displayed.

8.4 General Setup

Use this screen to configure general settings such as the system name and time. Click **Basic Setting** > **General Setup** in the navigation panel to display the screen as shown.

Figure 36 Basic Setting > General Setup



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 9 Basic Setting > General Setup

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
System Name	Choose a descriptive name for identification purposes. This name consists of up to 64 printable characters; spaces are allowed.
Location	Enter the geographic location of your Switch. You can use up to 32 printable ASCII characters; spaces are allowed.
Contact Person's Name	Enter the name of the person in charge of this Switch. You can use up to 32 printable ASCII characters; spaces are allowed.

Table 9 Basic Setting > General Setup (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Use Time Server when Bootup	Enter the time service protocol that your timeserver uses. Not all time servers support all protocols, so you may have to use trial and error to find a protocol that works. The main differences between them are the time format. When you select the **Daytime (RFC 867)** format, the Switch displays the day, month, year and time with no time zone adjustment. When you use this format it is recommended that you use a Daytime timeserver within your geographical time zone. **Time (RFC-868)** format displays a 4-byte integer giving the total number of seconds since 1970/1/1 at 0:0:0. **NTP (RFC-1305)** is similar to Time (RFC-868). **None** is the default value. Enter the time manually. Each time you turn on the Switch, the time and date will be reset to 1970-1-1 0:0:0.
Time Server IP Address	Enter the IP address of your timeserver. The Switch searches for the timeserver for up to 60 seconds. If you select a timeserver that is unreachable, then this screen will appear locked for 60 seconds. Please wait.
Current Time	This field displays the time you open this menu (or refresh the menu).
New Time (hh:min:ss)	Enter the new time in hour, minute and second format. The new time then appears in the **Current Time** field after you click **Apply**.
Current Date	This field displays the date you open this menu.
New Date (yyyy-mm-dd)	Enter the new date in year, month and day format. The new date then appears in the **Current Date** field after you click **Apply**.
Time Zone	Select the time difference between UTC (Universal Time Coordinated, formerly known as GMT, Greenwich Mean Time) and your time zone from the drop-down list box.
Daylight Saving Time	Daylight saving is a period from late spring to early fall when many countries set their clocks ahead of normal local time by one hour to give more daytime light in the evening. Select this option if you use Daylight Saving Time.
Start Date	Configure the day and time when Daylight Saving Time starts if you selected **Daylight Saving Time**. The time is displayed in the 24 hour format. Here are a couple of examples: Daylight Saving Time starts in most parts of the United States on the second Sunday of March. Each time zone in the United States starts using Daylight Saving Time at 2 A.M. local time. So in the United States you would select **Second**, **Sunday**, **March** and **2:00**. Daylight Saving Time starts in the European Union on the last Sunday of March. All of the time zones in the European Union start using Daylight Saving Time at the same moment (1 A.M. GMT or UTC). So in the European Union you would select **Last**, **Sunday**, **March** and the last field depends on your time zone. In Germany for instance, you would select **2:00** because Germany's time zone is one hour ahead of GMT or UTC (GMT+1).

Table 9 Basic Setting > General Setup (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
End Date	Configure the day and time when Daylight Saving Time ends if you selected **Daylight Saving Time**. The time field uses the 24 hour format. Here are a couple of examples: Daylight Saving Time ends in the United States on the first Sunday of November. Each time zone in the United States stops using Daylight Saving Time at 2 A.M. local time. So in the United States you would select **First**, **Sunday**, **November** and **2:00**. Daylight Saving Time ends in the European Union on the last Sunday of October. All of the time zones in the European Union stop using Daylight Saving Time at the same moment (1 A.M. GMT or UTC). So in the European Union you would select **Last**, **Sunday**, **October** and the last field depends on your time zone. In Germany for instance, you would select **2:00** because Germany's time zone is one hour ahead of GMT or UTC (GMT+1).
Apply	Click **Apply** to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the **Save** link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to begin configuring this screen afresh.

8.5 Introduction to VLANs

A VLAN (Virtual Local Area Network) allows a physical network to be partitioned into multiple logical networks. Devices on a logical network belong to one group. A device can belong to more than one group. With VLAN, a device cannot directly talk to or hear from devices that are not in the same group(s); the traffic must first go through a router.

In MTU (Multi-Tenant Unit) applications, VLAN is vital in providing isolation and security among the subscribers. When properly configured, VLAN prevents one subscriber from accessing the network resources of another on the same LAN, thus a user will not see the printers and hard disks of another user in the same building.

VLAN also increases network performance by limiting broadcasts to a smaller and more manageable logical broadcast domain. In traditional switched environments, all broadcast packets go to each and every individual port. With VLAN, all broadcasts are confined to a specific broadcast domain.

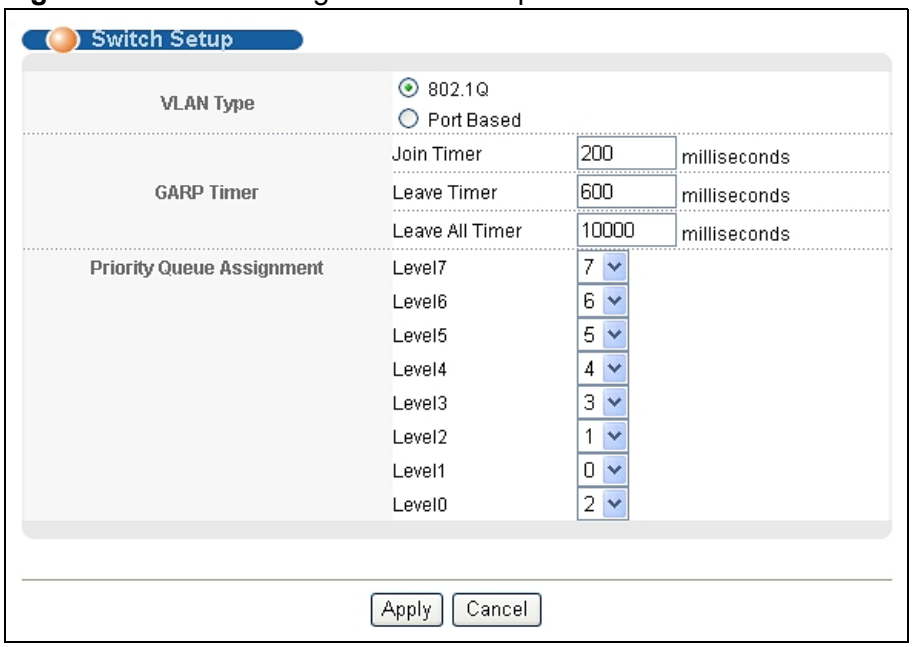
Note: VLAN is unidirectional; it only governs outgoing traffic.

See Chapter 9 on page 87 for information on port-based and 802.1Q tagged VLANs.

8.6 Switch Setup Screen

Click **Basic Setting** > **Switch Setup** in the navigation panel to display the screen as shown. The VLAN setup screens change depending on whether you choose **802.1Q** or **Port Based** in the **VLAN Type** field in this screen. Refer to Chapter 9 on page 87 for more information on VLAN.

Figure 37 Basic Setting > Switch Setup



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 10 Basic Setting > Switch Setup

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
VLAN Type	Choose **802.1Q** or **Port Based**. The **VLAN Setup** screen changes depending on whether you choose **802.1Q** VLAN type or **Port Based** VLAN type in this screen. See Chapter 9 on page 87 for more information.
GARP Timer: Switches join VLANs by making a declaration. A declaration is made by issuing a **Join** message using GARP. Declarations are withdrawn by issuing a **Leave** message. A **Leave All** message terminates all registrations. GARP timers set declaration timeout values. See the chapter on VLAN setup for more background information.	
Join Timer	Join Timer sets the duration of the Join Period timer for GVRP in milliseconds. Each port has a **Join Period** timer. The allowed **Join Time** range is between 100 and 65535 milliseconds; the default is 200 milliseconds. See the chapter on VLAN setup for more background information.
Leave Timer	Leave Time sets the duration of the **Leave Period** timer for GVRP in milliseconds. Each port has a single **Leave Period** timer. Leave Time must be two times larger than **Join Timer**; the default is 600 milliseconds.

Table 10 Basic Setting > Switch Setup (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Leave All Timer	Leave All Timer sets the duration of the Leave All Period timer for GVRP in milliseconds. Each port has a single Leave All Period timer. Leave All Timer must be larger than Leave Timer.
Priority Queue Assignment IEEE 802.1p defines up to eight separate traffic types by inserting a tag into a MAC-layer frame that contains bits to define class of service. Frames without an explicit priority tag are given the default priority of the ingress port. Use the next fields to configure the priority level-to-physical queue mapping. The Switch has eight physical queues that you can map to the 8 priority levels. On the Switch, traffic assigned to higher index queues gets through faster while traffic in lower index queues is dropped if the network is congested.	
Priority Level (The following descriptions are based on the traffic types defined in the IEEE 802.1d standard (which incorporates the 802.1p).	
Level 7	Typically used for network control traffic such as router configuration messages.
Level 6	Typically used for voice traffic that is especially sensitive to jitter (jitter is the variations in delay).
Level 5	Typically used for video that consumes high bandwidth and is sensitive to jitter.
Level 4	Typically used for controlled load, latency-sensitive traffic such as SNA (Systems Network Architecture) transactions.
Level 3	Typically used for "excellent effort" or better than best effort and would include important business traffic that can tolerate some delay.
Level 2	This is for "spare bandwidth".
Level 1	This is typically used for non-critical "background" traffic such as bulk transfers that are allowed but that should not affect other applications and users.
Level 0	Typically used for best-effort traffic.
Apply	Click **Apply** to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the **Save** link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to reset the fields.

8.7 IP Setup

Use the **IP Setup** screen to configure the Switch IP address, default gateway device, the default domain name server and the management VLAN ID. The default gateway specifies the IP address of the default gateway (next hop) for outgoing traffic.

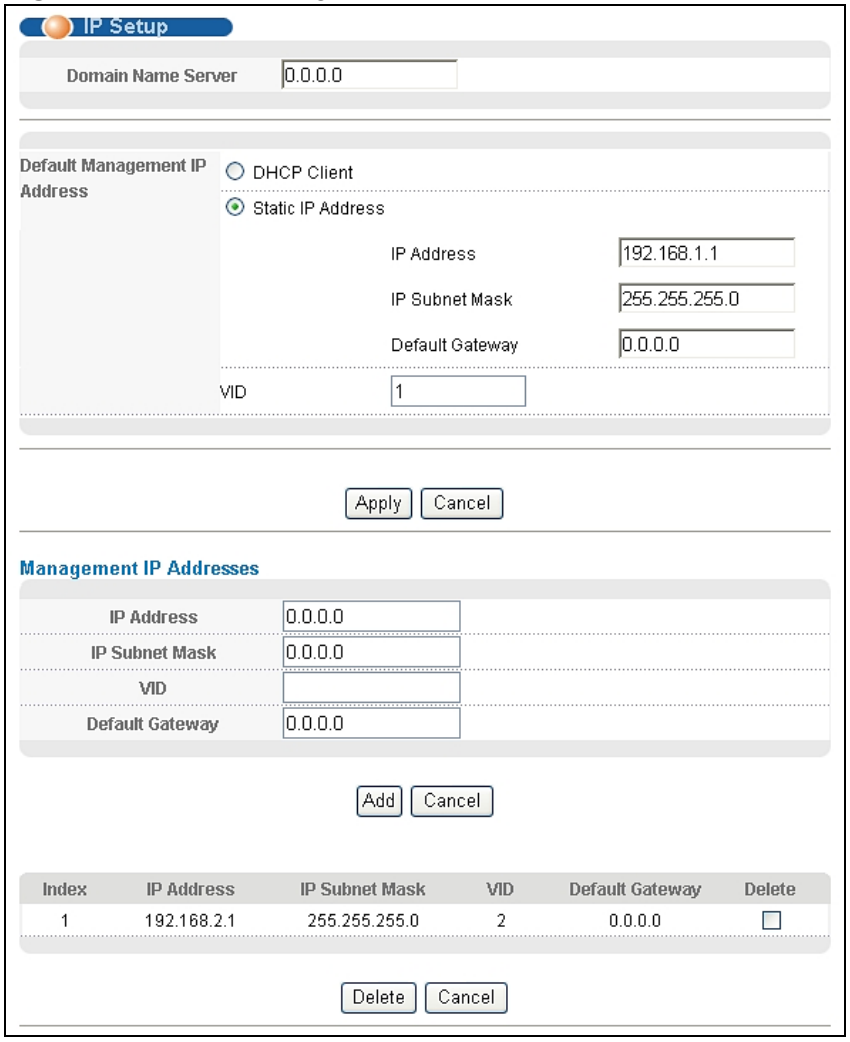
8.7.1 Management IP Addresses

The Switch needs an IP address for it to be managed over the network. The factory default IP address is 192.168.1.1. The subnet mask specifies the network number portion of an IP address. The factory default subnet mask is 255.255.255.0.

You can configure up to 64 IP addresses which are used to access and manage the Switch from the ports belonging to the pre-defined VLAN(s).

Note: You must configure a VLAN first.

Figure 38 Basic Setting > IP Setup



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 11 Basic Setting > IP Setup

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Domain Name Server	DNS (Domain Name System) is for mapping a domain name to its corresponding IP address and vice versa. Enter a domain name server IP address in order to be able to use a domain name instead of an IP address.
Default Management IP Address	
DHCP Client	Select this option if you have a DHCP server that can assign the Switch an IP address, subnet mask, a default gateway IP address and a domain name server IP address automatically.
Static IP Address	Select this option if you don't have a DHCP server or if you wish to assign static IP address information to the Switch. You need to fill in the following fields when you select this option.
IP Address	Enter the IP address of your Switch in dotted decimal notation for example 192.168.1.1.
IP Subnet Mask	Enter the IP subnet mask of your Switch in dotted decimal notation for example 255.255.255.0.
Default Gateway	Enter the IP address of the default outgoing gateway in dotted decimal notation, for example 192.168.1.254.
VID	Enter the VLAN identification number associated with the Switch IP address. This is the VLAN ID of the CPU and is used for management only. The default is "1". All ports, by default, are fixed members of this "management VLAN" in order to manage the device from any port. If a port is not a member of this VLAN, then users on that port cannot access the device. To access the Switch make sure the port that you are connected to is a member of Management VLAN.
Management IP Addresses You can create up to 64 IP addresses, which are used to access and manage the Switch from the ports belonging to the pre-defined VLAN(s). You must configure a VLAN first.	
IP Address	Enter the IP address for managing the Switch by the members of the VLAN specified in the **VID** field below.
IP Subnet Mask	Enter the IP subnet mask in dotted decimal notation.
VID	Type the VLAN group identification number.
Default Gateway	Enter the IP address of the default outgoing gateway in dotted decimal notation.
Add	Click **Add** to insert the entry to the summary table below and save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the **Save** link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to reset the fields to your previous configuration.
Index	This field displays the index number of the rule. Click an index number to edit the rule.
IP Address	This field displays the IP address.
IP Subnet Mask	This field displays the subnet mask.
VID	This field displays the ID number of the VLAN group.

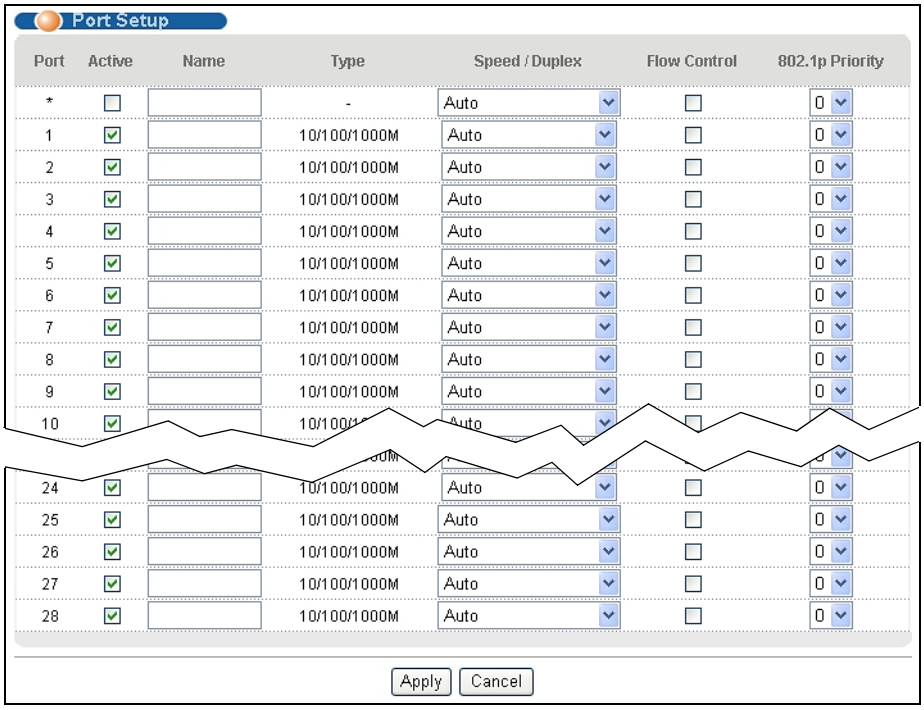
Table 11 Basic Setting > IP Setup (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Default Gateway	This field displays the IP address of the default gateway.
Delete	Check the management IP addresses that you want to remove in the **Delete** column, then click the **Delete** button.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to clear the selected check boxes in the **Delete** column.

8.8 Port Setup

Use this screen to configure Switch port settings. Click **Basic Setting** > **Port Setup** in the navigation panel to display the configuration screen.

Figure 39 Basic Setting > Port Setup



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 12 Basic Setting > Port Setup

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Port	This is the port index number.
*	Settings in this row apply to all ports. Use this row only if you want to make some settings the same for all ports. Use this row first to set the common settings and then make adjustments on a port-by-port basis. Note: Changes in this row are copied to all the ports as soon as you make them.
Active	Select this check box to enable a port. The factory default for all ports is enabled. A port must be enabled for data transmission to occur.
Name	Enter a descriptive name that identifies this port. You can enter up to 64 alpha-numerical characters. Note: Due to space limitation, the port name may be truncated in some web configurator screens.
Type	This field displays **10/100M** for Fast Ethernet connections and **10/100/1000M** for Gigabit connections.
Speed/ Duplex	Select the speed and the duplex mode of the Ethernet connection on this port. Choices are **Auto**, **10M/Half Duplex**, **10M/Full Duplex**, **100M/Half Duplex**, **100M/Full Duplex** and **1000M/Full Duplex** (Gigabit connections only). Selecting **Auto** (auto-negotiation) allows one port to negotiate with a peer port automatically to obtain the connection speed and duplex mode that both ends support. When auto-negotiation is turned on, a port on the Switch negotiates with the peer automatically to determine the connection speed and duplex mode. If the peer port does not support auto-negotiation or turns off this feature, the Switch determines the connection speed by detecting the signal on the cable and using half duplex mode. When the Switch's auto-negotiation is turned off, a port uses the pre-configured speed and duplex mode when making a connection, thus requiring you to make sure that the settings of the peer port are the same in order to connect.
Flow Control	A concentration of traffic on a port decreases port bandwidth and overflows buffer memory causing packet discards and frame losses. **Flow Control** is used to regulate transmission of signals to match the bandwidth of the receiving port. The Switch uses IEEE802.3x flow control in full duplex mode and backpressure flow control in half duplex mode. IEEE802.3x flow control is used in full duplex mode to send a pause signal to the sending port, causing it to temporarily stop sending signals when the receiving port memory buffers fill. Back Pressure flow control is typically used in half duplex mode to send a "collision" signal to the sending port (mimicking a state of packet collision) causing the sending port to temporarily stop sending signals and resend later. Select **Flow Control** to enable it.

Table 12 Basic Setting > Port Setup (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
802.1p Priority	This priority value is added to incoming frames without a (802.1p) priority queue tag. See **Priority Queue Assignment** in Table 10 on page 77 for more information.
Apply	Click **Apply** to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the **Save** link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to begin configuring this screen afresh.

PART III
Advanced

VLAN (87)

Static MAC Forward Setup (107)

Filtering (115)

Spanning Tree Protocol (117)

Bandwidth Control (139)

Broadcast Storm Control (143)

Mirroring (147)

Link Aggregation (151)

Port Authentication (161)

Port Security (165)

Classifier (169)

Policy Rule (175)

Queuing Method (181)

VLAN Stacking (185)

Multicast (193)

AAA (201)

IP Source Guard (215)

Loop Guard (241)

Layer 2 Protocol Tunneling (245)

9 VLAN

9.1 Overview

This chapter shows you how to configure 802.1Q tagged and port-based VLANs. The type of screen you see here depends on the **VLAN Type** you selected in the **Switch Setup** screen.

9.2 What You Can Do

- Use the **VLAN Status** screen (Section 9.4 on page 91) to view all VLAN groups.
- Use the **VLAN Detail** screen (Section 9.4.1 on page 92) to view detailed port settings and status of the VLAN group.
- Use the **Static VLAN** screen (Section 9.5 on page 93) to configure and view 802.1Q VLAN parameters for the Switch.
- Use the **VLAN Port Setting** screen (Section 9.6 on page 95) to configure the static VLAN (IEEE 802.1Q) settings on a port.
- Use the **Subnet Based VLAN** screen (Section 9.7 on page 96) to set up VLANs that allow you to group traffic into logical VLANs based on the source IP subnet you specify.
- Use the **Port-Based VLAN** screen (Section 9.9 on page 102) to set up VLANs where the packet forwarding decision is based on the destination MAC address and its associated port.

9.3 What You Need to Know

Read this section to know more about VLAN and how to configure the screens.

9.3.1 IEEE 802.1Q Tagged VLANs

A tagged VLAN uses an explicit tag (VLAN ID) in the MAC header to identify the VLAN membership of a frame across bridges - they are not confined to the switch on which they were created. The VLANs can be created statically by hand or

dynamically through GVRP. The VLAN ID associates a frame with a specific VLAN and provides the information that switches need to process the frame across the network. A tagged frame is four bytes longer than an untagged frame and contains two bytes of TPID (Tag Protocol Identifier, residing within the type/length field of the Ethernet frame) and two bytes of TCI (Tag Control Information, starts after the source address field of the Ethernet frame).

The CFI (Canonical Format Indicator) is a single-bit flag, always set to zero for Ethernet switches. If a frame received at an Ethernet port has a CFI set to 1, then that frame should not be forwarded as it is to an untagged port. The remaining twelve bits define the VLAN ID, giving a possible maximum number of 4,096 VLANs. Note that user priority and VLAN ID are independent of each other. A frame with VID (VLAN Identifier) of null (0) is called a priority frame, meaning that only the priority level is significant and the default VID of the ingress port is given as the VID of the frame. Of the 4096 possible VIDs, a VID of 0 is used to identify priority frames and value 4095 (FFF) is reserved, so the maximum possible VLAN configurations are 4,094.

TPID	User Priority	CFI	VLAN ID
2 Bytes	3 Bits	1 Bit	12 bits

9.3.2 Forwarding Tagged and Untagged Frames

Each port on the Switch is capable of passing tagged or untagged frames. To forward a frame from an 802.1Q VLAN-aware switch to an 802.1Q VLAN-unaware switch, the Switch first decides where to forward the frame and then strips off the VLAN tag. To forward a frame from an 802.1Q VLAN-unaware switch to an 802.1Q VLAN-aware switch, the Switch first decides where to forward the frame, and then inserts a VLAN tag reflecting the ingress port's default VID. The default PVID is VLAN 1 for all ports, but this can be changed.

A broadcast frame (or a multicast frame for a multicast group that is known by the system) is duplicated only on ports that are members of the VID (except the ingress port itself), thus confining the broadcast to a specific domain.

9.3.3 Automatic VLAN Registration

GARP and GVRP are the protocols used to automatically register VLAN membership across switches.

9.3.4 GARP

GARP (Generic Attribute Registration Protocol) allows network switches to register and de-register attribute values with other GARP participants within a bridged

LAN. GARP is a protocol that provides a generic mechanism for protocols that serve a more specific application, for example, GVRP.

9.3.4.1 GARP Timers

Switches join VLANs by making a declaration. A declaration is made by issuing a Join message using GARP. Declarations are withdrawn by issuing a Leave message. A Leave All message terminates all registrations. GARP timers set declaration timeout values.

9.3.5 GVRP

GVRP (GARP VLAN Registration Protocol) is a registration protocol that defines a way for switches to register necessary VLAN members on ports across the network. Enable this function to permit VLAN groups beyond the local Switch.

Please refer to the following table for common IEEE 802.1Q VLAN terminology.

Table 13 IEEE 802.1Q VLAN Terminology

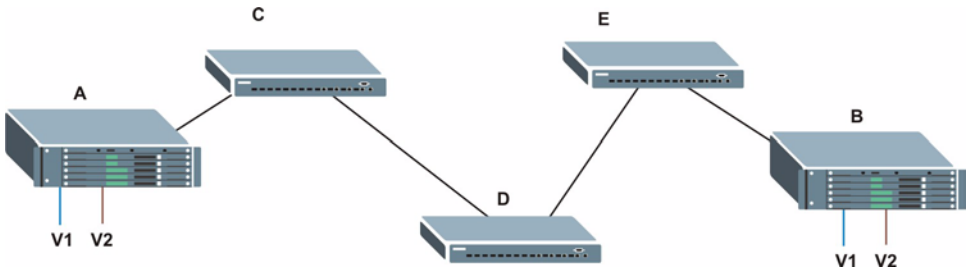
VLAN PARAMETER	TERM	DESCRIPTION
VLAN Type	Permanent VLAN	This is a static VLAN created manually.
	Dynamic VLAN	This is a VLAN configured by a GVRP registration/ deregistration process.
VLAN Administrative Control	Registration Fixed	Fixed registration ports are permanent VLAN members.
	Registration Forbidden	Ports with registration forbidden are forbidden to join the specified VLAN.
	Normal Registration	Ports dynamically join a VLAN using GVRP.
VLAN Tag Control	Tagged	Ports belonging to the specified VLAN tag all outgoing frames transmitted.
	Untagged	Ports belonging to the specified VLAN don't tag all outgoing frames transmitted.
VLAN Port	Port VID	This is the VLAN ID assigned to untagged frames that this port received.
	Acceptable Frame Type	You may choose to accept both tagged and untagged incoming frames, just tagged incoming frames or just untagged incoming frames on a port.
	Ingress filtering	If set, the Switch discards incoming frames for VLANs that do not have this port as a member

9.3.6 Port VLAN Trunking

Enable **VLAN Trunking** on a port to allow frames belonging to unknown VLAN groups to pass through that port. This is useful if you want to set up VLAN groups on end devices without having to configure the same VLAN groups on intermediary devices.

Refer to the following figure. Suppose you want to create VLAN groups 1 and 2 (V1 and V2) on devices A and B. Without **VLAN Trunking**, you must configure VLAN groups 1 and 2 on all intermediary switches C, D and E; otherwise they will drop frames with unknown VLAN group tags. However, with **VLAN Trunking** enabled on a port(s) in each intermediary switch you only need to create VLAN groups in the end devices (A and B). C, D and E automatically allow frames with VLAN group tags 1 and 2 (VLAN groups that are unknown to those switches) to pass through their VLAN trunking port(s).

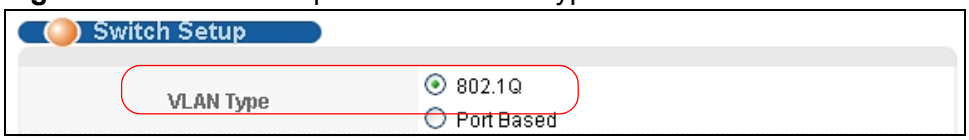
Figure 40 Port VLAN Trunking



9.3.7 Select the VLAN Type

Select a VLAN type in the **Basic Setting** > **Switch Setup** screen.

Figure 41 Switch Setup > Select VLAN Type



9.3.8 Static VLAN

Use a static VLAN to decide whether an incoming frame on a port should be

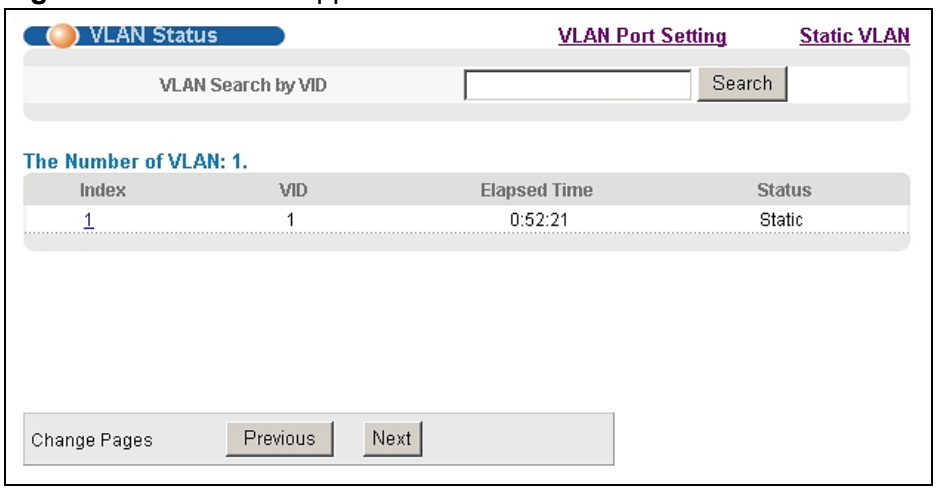
- sent to a VLAN group as normal depending on its VLAN tag.
- sent to a group whether it has a VLAN tag or not.
- blocked from a VLAN group regardless of its VLAN tag.

You can also tag all outgoing frames (that were previously untagged) from a port with the specified VID.

9.4 VLAN Status

Click **Advanced Application** > **VLAN** from the navigation panel to display the **VLAN Status** screen as shown next.

Figure 42 Advanced Application > VLAN: VLAN Status



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

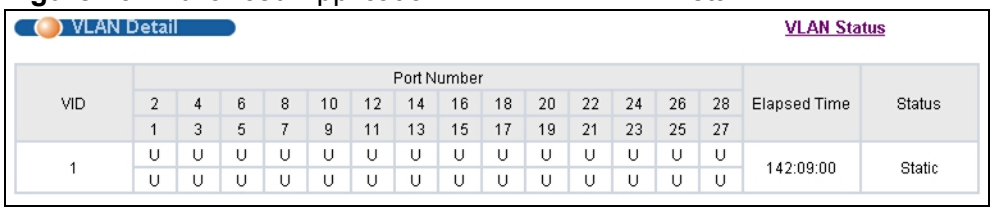
Table 14 Advanced Application > VLAN: VLAN Status

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
VLAN Search by VID	Enter an existing VLAN ID number(s) (separated by a comma) and click **Search** to display only the specified VLAN(s) in the list below. Leave this field blank and click **Search** to display all VLANs configured on the Switch.
The Number of VLAN	This is the number of VLANs configured on the Switch.
The Number of Search Results	This is the number of VLANs that match the searching criteria and display in the list below. This field displays only when you use the **Search** button to look for certain VLANs.
Index	This is the VLAN index number. Click on an index number to view more VLAN details.
VID	This is the VLAN identification number that was configured in the **Static VLAN** screen.
Elapsed Time	This field shows how long it has been since a normal VLAN was registered or a static VLAN was set up.
Status	This field shows how this VLAN was added to the Switch. **dynamic**: using GVRP **static**: added as a permanent entry
Change Pages	Click **Previous** or **Next** to show the previous/next screen if all status information cannot be seen in one screen.

9.4.1 VLAN Details

Use this screen to view detailed port settings and status of the VLAN group. Click on an index number in the **VLAN Status** screen to display VLAN details.

Figure 43 Advanced Application > VLAN > VLAN Detail


VLAN Detail
VLAN Status
VID
Port Number
2 4 6 8 10 12 14 16 18 20 22 24 26 28
1 3 5 7 9 11 13 15 17 19 21 23 25 27
Elapsed Time
Status
1
U U U U U U U U U U U U U U
U U U U U U U U U U U U U U
142:09:00
Static

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

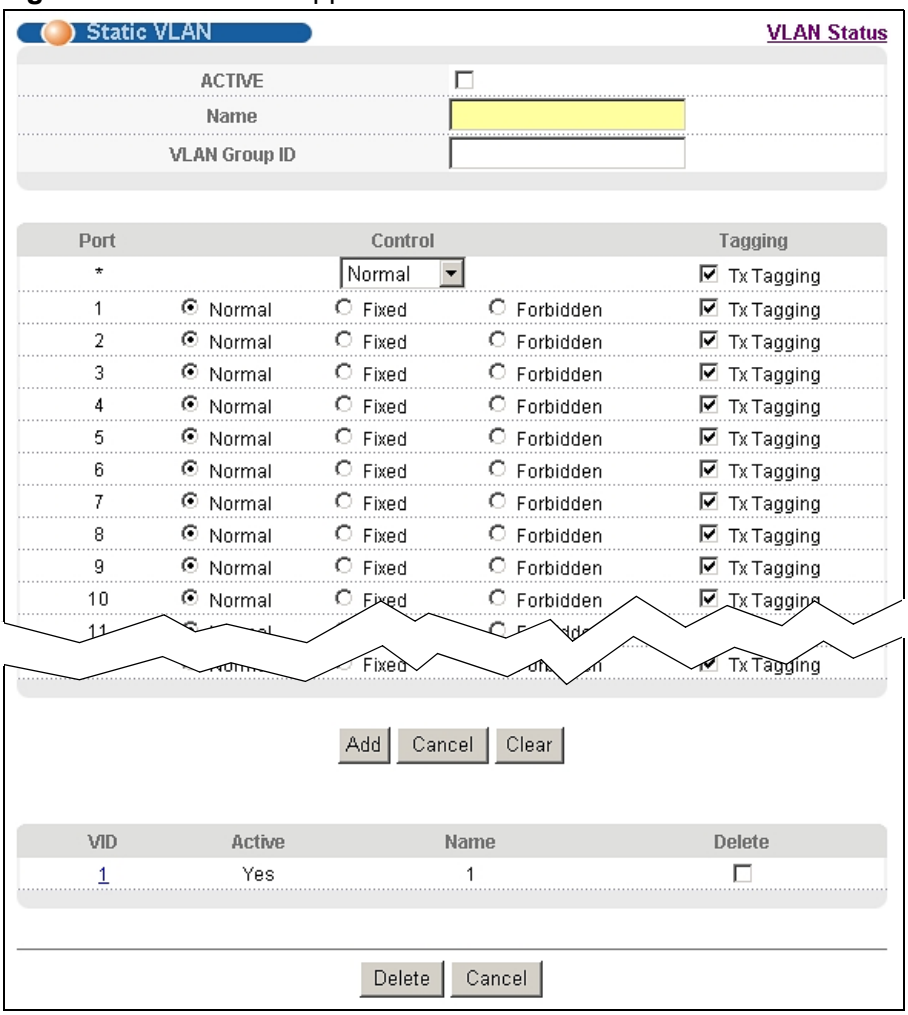
Table 15 Advanced Application > VLAN > VLAN Detail

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
VLAN Status	Click this to go to the **VLAN Status** screen.
VID	This is the VLAN identification number that was configured in the **Static VLAN** screen.
Port Number	This column displays the ports that are participating in a VLAN. A tagged port is marked as **T**, an untagged port is marked as **U** and ports not participating in a VLAN are marked as "**–**".
Elapsed Time	This field shows how long it has been since a normal VLAN was registered or a static VLAN was set up.
Status	This field shows how this VLAN was added to the Switch. **dynamic**: using GVRP **static**: added as a permanent entry

9.5 Configure a Static VLAN

Use this screen to configure and view 802.1Q VLAN parameters for the Switch. To configure a static VLAN, click **Static VLAN** in the **VLAN Status** screen to display the screen as shown next.

Figure 44 Advanced Application > VLAN > Static VLAN



The following table describes the related labels in this screen.

Table 16 Advanced Application > VLAN > Static VLAN

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
ACTIVE	Select this check box to activate the VLAN settings.
Name	Enter a descriptive name for the VLAN group for identification purposes. This name consists of up to 64 printable characters.
VLAN Group ID	Enter the VLAN ID for this static entry; the valid range is between 1 and 4094.
Port	The port number identifies the port you are configuring.

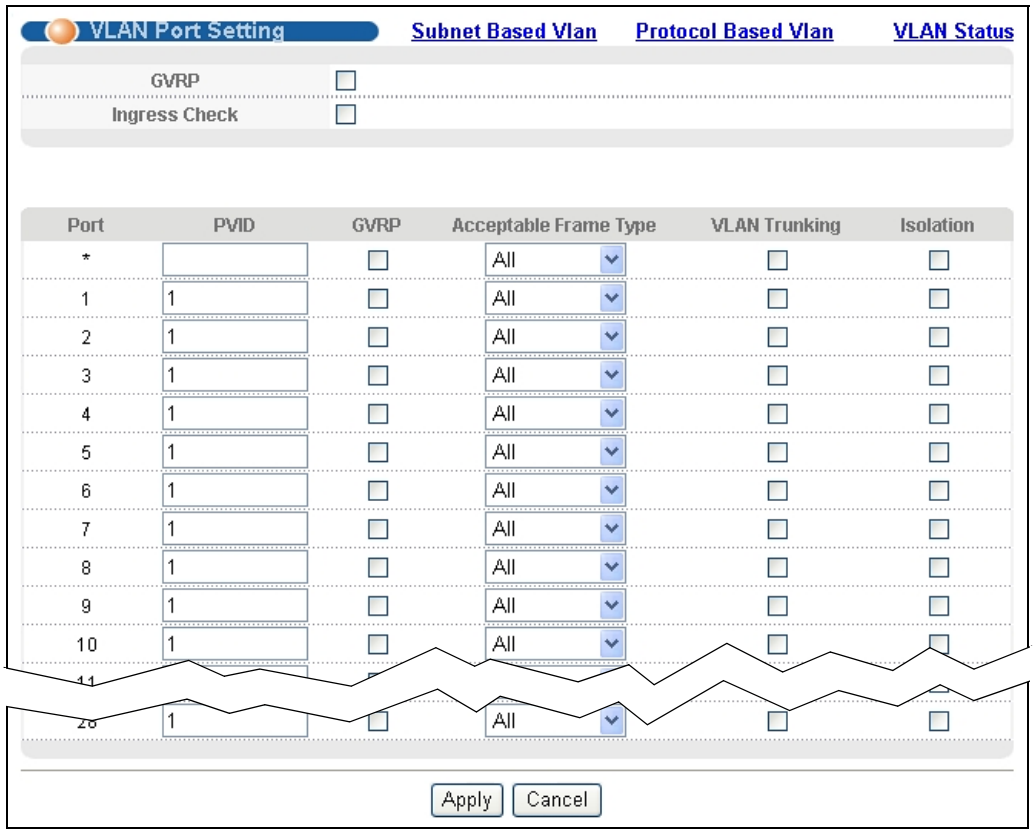
Table 16 Advanced Application > VLAN > Static VLAN (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
*	Settings in this row apply to all ports. Use this row only if you want to make some settings the same for all ports. Use this row first to set the common settings and then make adjustments on a port-by-port basis. Note: Changes in this row are copied to all the ports as soon as you make them.
Control	Select **Normal** for the port to dynamically join this VLAN group using GVRP. This is the default selection. Select **Fixed** for the port to be a permanent member of this VLAN group. Select **Forbidden** if you want to prohibit the port from joining this VLAN group.
Tagging	Select **TX Tagging** if you want the port to tag all outgoing frames transmitted with this VLAN Group ID.
Add	Click **Add** to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the **Save** link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to change the fields back to their last saved values.
Clear	Click **Clear** to start configuring the screen again.
VID	This field displays the ID number of the VLAN group. Click the number to edit the VLAN settings.
Active	This field indicates whether the VLAN settings are enabled (**Yes**) or disabled (**No**).
Name	This field displays the descriptive name for this VLAN group.
Delete	Click **Delete** to remove the selected entry from the summary table.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to clear the **Delete** check boxes.

9.6 Configure VLAN Port Settings

Use the VLAN Port Setting screen to configure the static VLAN (IEEE 802.1Q) settings on a port. Click the **VLAN Port Setting** link in the **VLAN Status** screen.

Figure 45 Advanced Application > VLAN > VLAN Port Setting



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 17 Advanced Application > VLAN > VLAN Port Setting

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
GVRP	GVRP (GARP VLAN Registration Protocol) is a registration protocol that defines a way for switches to register necessary VLAN members on ports across the network. Select this check box to permit VLAN groups beyond the local Switch.
Ingress Check	If this check box is selected, the Switch discards incoming frames on a port for VLANs that do not include this port in its member set. Clear this check box to disable ingress filtering.
Port	This field displays the port number.

Table 17 Advanced Application > VLAN > VLAN Port Setting (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
*	Settings in this row apply to all ports. Use this row only if you want to make some settings the same for all ports. Use this row first to set the common settings and then make adjustments on a port-by-port basis. Note: Changes in this row are copied to all the ports as soon as you make them.
PVID	A PVID (Port VLAN ID) is a tag that adds to incoming untagged frames received on a port so that the frames are forwarded to the VLAN group that the tag defines. Enter a number between 1and 4094 as the port VLAN ID.
GVRP	Select this check box to allow GVRP on this port.
Acceptable Frame Type	Specify the type of frames allowed on a port. Choices are **All**, **Tag Only** and **Untag Only**. Select **All** from the drop-down list box to accept all untagged or tagged frames on this port. This is the default setting. Select **Tag Only** to accept only tagged frames on this port. All untagged frames will be dropped. Select **Untag Only** to accept only untagged frames on this port. All tagged frames will be dropped.
VLAN Trunking	Enable **VLAN Trunking** on ports connected to other switches or routers (but not ports directly connected to end users) to allow frames belonging to unknown VLAN groups to pass through the Switch.
Isolation	Select this to allows this port to communicate only with the CPU management port and the ports on which the isolation feature is not enabled.
Apply	Click **Apply** to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the **Save** link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to begin configuring this screen afresh.

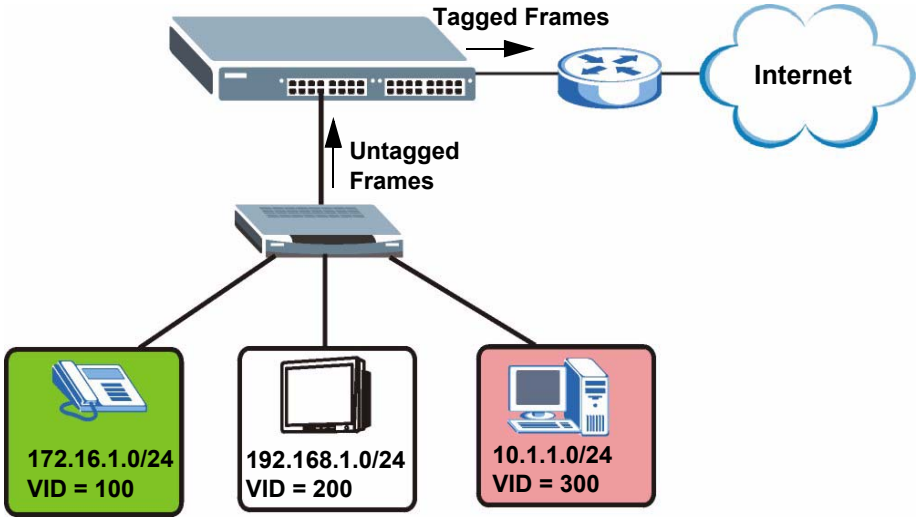
9.7 Subnet Based VLANs

Subnet based VLANs allow you to group traffic into logical VLANs based on the source IP subnet you specify. When a frame is received on a port, the Switch checks if a tag is added already and the IP subnet it came from. The untagged packets from the same IP subnet are then placed in the same subnet based VLAN. One advantage of using subnet based VLANs is that priority can be assigned to traffic from the same IP subnet.

For example, an ISP (Internet Services Provider) may divide different types of services it provides to customers into different IP subnets. Traffic for voice services is designated for IP subnet 172.16.1.0/24, video for 192.168.1.0/24 and data for 10.1.1.0/24. The Switch can then be configured to group incoming traffic based on the source IP subnet of incoming frames.

You configure a subnet based VLAN with priority 6 and VID of 100 for traffic received from IP subnet 172.16.1.0/24 (voice services). You also have a subnet based VLAN with priority 5 and VID of 200 for traffic received from IP subnet 192.168.1.0/24 (video services). Lastly, you configure VLAN with priority 3 and VID of 300 for traffic received from IP subnet 10.1.1.0/24 (data services). All untagged incoming frames will be classified based on their source IP subnet and prioritized accordingly. That is video services receive the highest priority and data the lowest.

Figure 46 Subnet Based VLAN Application Example

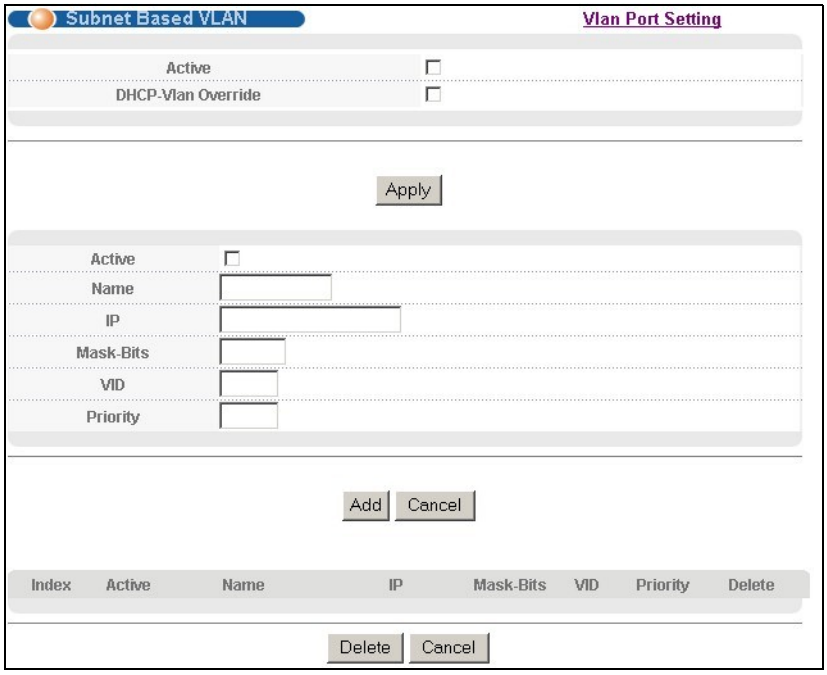


9.7.1 Configuring Subnet Based VLAN

Click **Subnet Based VLAN** in the **VLAN Port Setting** screen to display the configuration screen as shown.

Note: Subnet based VLAN applies to un-tagged packets and is applicable only when you use IEEE 802.1Q tagged VLAN.

Figure 47 Advanced Application > VLAN > VLAN Port Setting > Subnet Based VLAN



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 18 Advanced Application > VLAN > VLAN Port Setting > Subnet Based VLAN Setup

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Active	Check this box to activate this subnet based VLANs on the Switch.
DHCP-Vlan Override	When DHCP snooping is enabled DHCP clients can renew their IP address through the DHCP VLAN or via another DHCP server on the subnet based VLAN. Select this checkbox to force the DHCP clients in this IP subnet to obtain their IP addresses through the DHCP VLAN.
Apply	Click **Apply** to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the **Save** link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Active	Check this box to activate the IP subnet VLAN you are creating or editing.
Name	Enter up to 32 alpha numeric characters to identify this subnet based VLAN.
IP	Enter the IP address of the subnet for which you want to configure this subnet based VLAN.
Mask-Bits	Enter the bit number of the subnet mask. To find the bit number, convert the subnet mask to binary format and add all the 1's together. Take "255.255.255.0" for example. 255 converts to eight 1s in binary. There are three 255s, so add three eights together and you get the bit number (24).

Table 18 Advanced Application > VLAN > VLAN Port Setting > Subnet Based VLAN Setup (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
VID	Enter the ID of a VLAN with which the untagged frames from the IP subnet specified in this subnet based VLAN are tagged. This must be an existing VLAN which you defined in the **Advanced Applications** > **VLAN** screens.
Priority	Select the priority level that the Switch assigns to frames belonging to this VLAN.
Add	Click **Add** to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the **Save** link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to begin configuring this screen afresh.
Index	This is the index number identifying this subnet based VLAN. Click on any of these numbers to edit an existing subnet based VLAN.
Active	This field shows whether the subnet based VLAN is active or not.
Name	This field shows the name the subnet based VLAN.
IP	This field shows the IP address of the subnet for this subnet based VLAN.
Mask-Bits	This field shows the subnet mask in bit number format for this subnet based VLAN.
VID	This field shows the VLAN ID of the frames which belong to this subnet based VLAN.
Priority	This field shows the priority which is assigned to frames belonging to this subnet based VLAN.
Delete	Click this to delete the subnet based VLANs which you marked for deletion.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to begin configuring this screen afresh.

9.8 Protocol Based VLANs

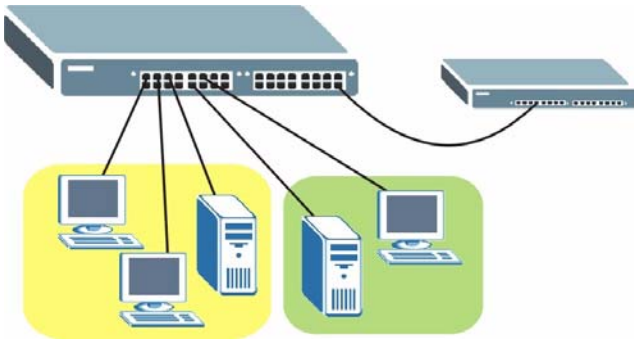
Protocol based VLANs allow you to group traffic into logical VLANs based on the protocol you specify. When an upstream frame is received on a port (configured for a protocol based VLAN), the Switch checks if a tag is added already and its protocol. The untagged packets of the same protocol are then placed in the same protocol based VLAN. One advantage of using protocol based VLANs is that priority can be assigned to traffic of the same protocol.

Note: Protocol based VLAN applies to un-tagged packets and is applicable only when you use IEEE 802.1Q tagged VLAN.

For example, port 1, 2, 3 and 4 belong to static VLAN 100, and port 4, 5, 6, 7 belong to static VLAN 120. You configure a protocol based VLAN A with priority 3 for ARP traffic received on port 1, 2 and 3. You also have a protocol based VLAN B with priority 2 for Apple Talk traffic received on port 6 and 7. All upstream ARP traffic from port 1, 2 and 3 will be grouped together, and all upstream Apple Talk

traffic from port 6 and 7 will be in another group and have higher priority than ARP traffic, when they go through the uplink port to a backbone switch C.

Figure 48 Protocol Based VLAN Application Example

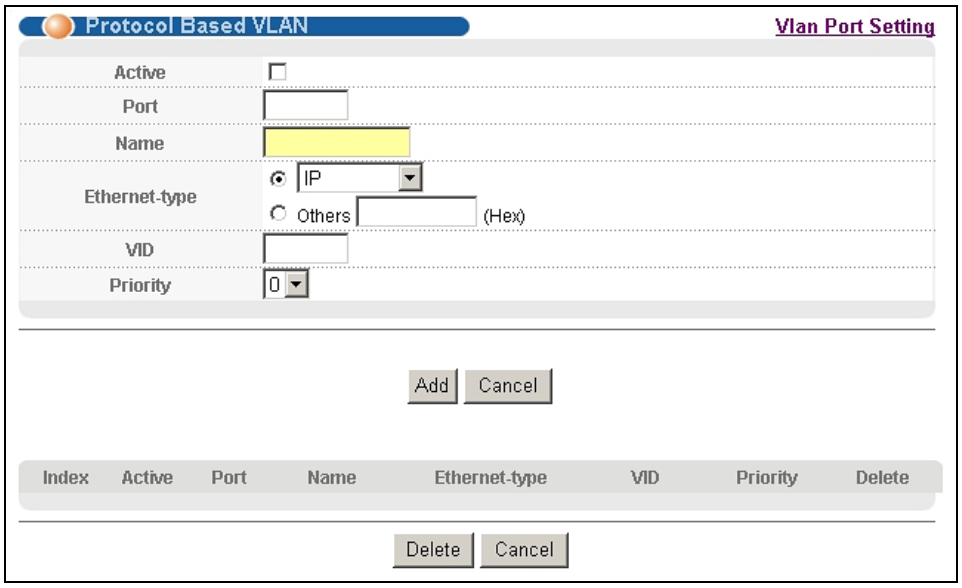


9.8.1 Configuring Protocol Based VLAN

Click **Protocol Based VLAN** in the **VLAN Port Setting** screen to display the configuration screen as shown.

Note: Protocol-based VLAN applies to un-tagged packets and is applicable only when you use IEEE 802.1Q tagged VLAN.

Figure 49 Advanced Application > VLAN > VLAN Port Setting > Protocol Based VLAN



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 19 Advanced Application > VLAN > VLAN Port Setting > Protocol Based VLAN Setup

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Active	Check this box to activate this protocol based VLAN.
Port	Type a port to be included in this protocol based VLAN. This port must belong to a static VLAN in order to participate in a protocol based VLAN. See Chapter 9 on page 87 for more details on setting up VLANs.
Name	Enter up to 32 alpha numeric characters to identify this protocol based VLAN.
Ethernet-type	Use the drop down list box to select a predefined protocol to be included in this protocol based VLAN or select **Others** and type the protocol number in hexadecimal notation. For example the IP protocol in hexadecimal notation is 0800, and Novell IPX protocol is 8137. Note: Protocols in the hexadecimal number range of 0x0000 to 0x05ff are not allowed to be used for protocol based VLANs.
VID	Enter the ID of a VLAN to which the port belongs. This must be an existing VLAN which you defined in the **Advanced Applications** > **VLAN** screens.
Priority	Select the priority level that the Switch will assign to frames belonging to this VLAN.
Add	Click **Add** to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the **Save** link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to begin configuring this screen afresh.
Index	This is the index number identifying this protocol based VLAN. Click on any of these numbers to edit an existing protocol based VLAN.
Active	This field shows whether the protocol based VLAN is active or not.
Port	This field shows which port belongs to this protocol based VLAN.
Name	This field shows the name the protocol based VLAN.
Ethernet Type	This field shows which Ethernet protocol is part of this protocol based VLAN.
VID	This field shows the VLAN ID of the port.
Priority	This field shows the priority which is assigned to frames belonging to this protocol based VLAN.
Delete	Click this to delete the protocol based VLANs which you marked for deletion.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to begin configuring this screen afresh.

9.9 Port-based VLAN Setup

Port-based VLANs are VLANs where the packet forwarding decision is based on the destination MAC address and its associated port.

Port-based VLANs require allowed outgoing ports to be defined for each port. Therefore, if you wish to allow two subscriber ports to talk to each other, for example, between conference rooms in a hotel, you must define the egress (an egress port is an outgoing port, that is, a port through which a data packet leaves) for both ports.

Port-based VLANs are specific only to the Switch on which they were created.

Note: When you activate port-based VLAN, the Switch uses a default VLAN ID of 1. You cannot change it.

Note: In screens (such as **IP Setup** and **Filtering**) that require a VID, you must enter 1 as the VID.

The port-based VLAN setup screen is shown next. The **CPU** management port forms a VLAN with all Ethernet ports.

9.9.1 Configure a Port-based VLAN

Select **Port Based** as the **VLAN Type** in the **Basic Setting** > **Switch Setup** screen and then click **Advanced Application** > **VLAN** from the navigation panel to display the next screen.

Figure 50 Port Based VLAN Setup (All Connected)

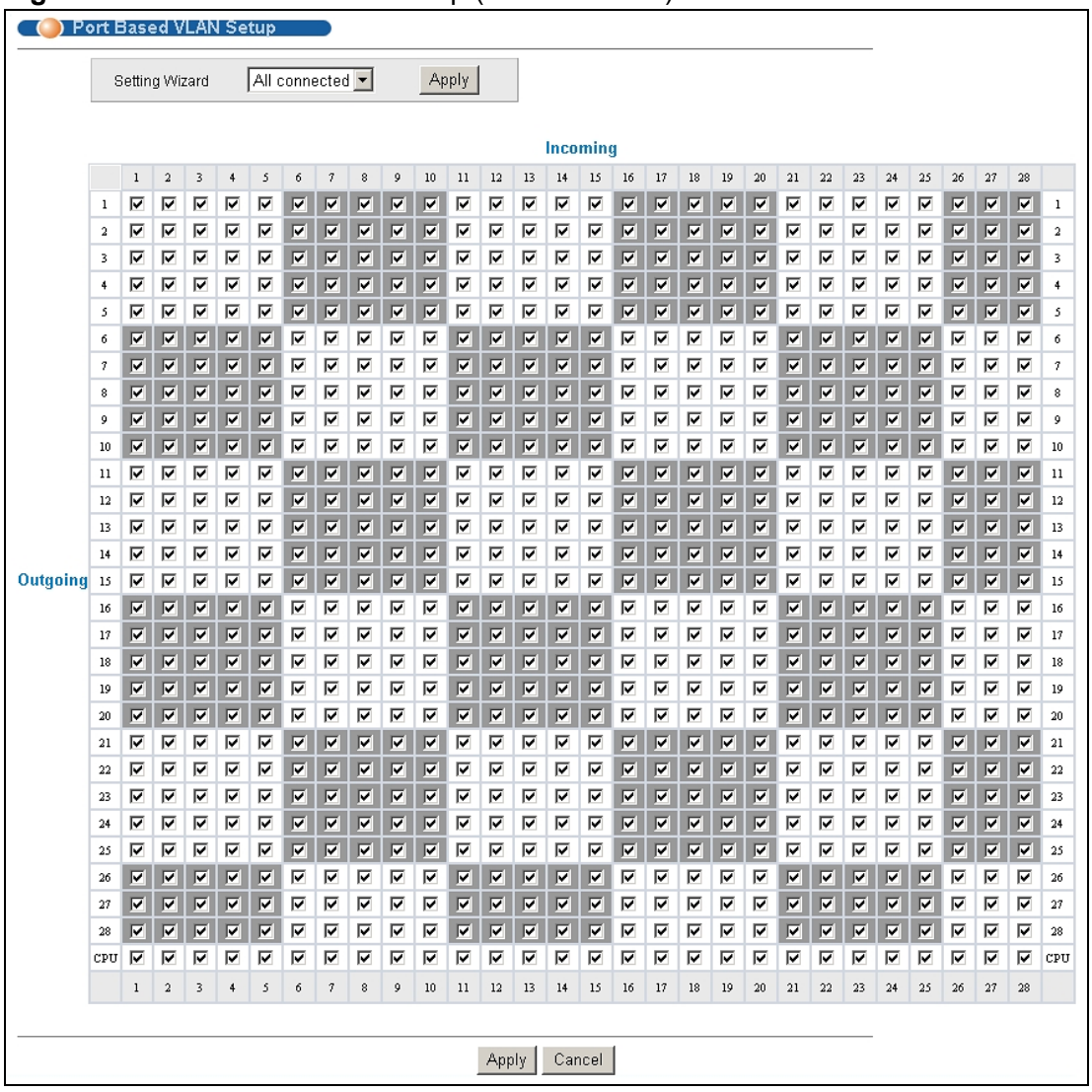
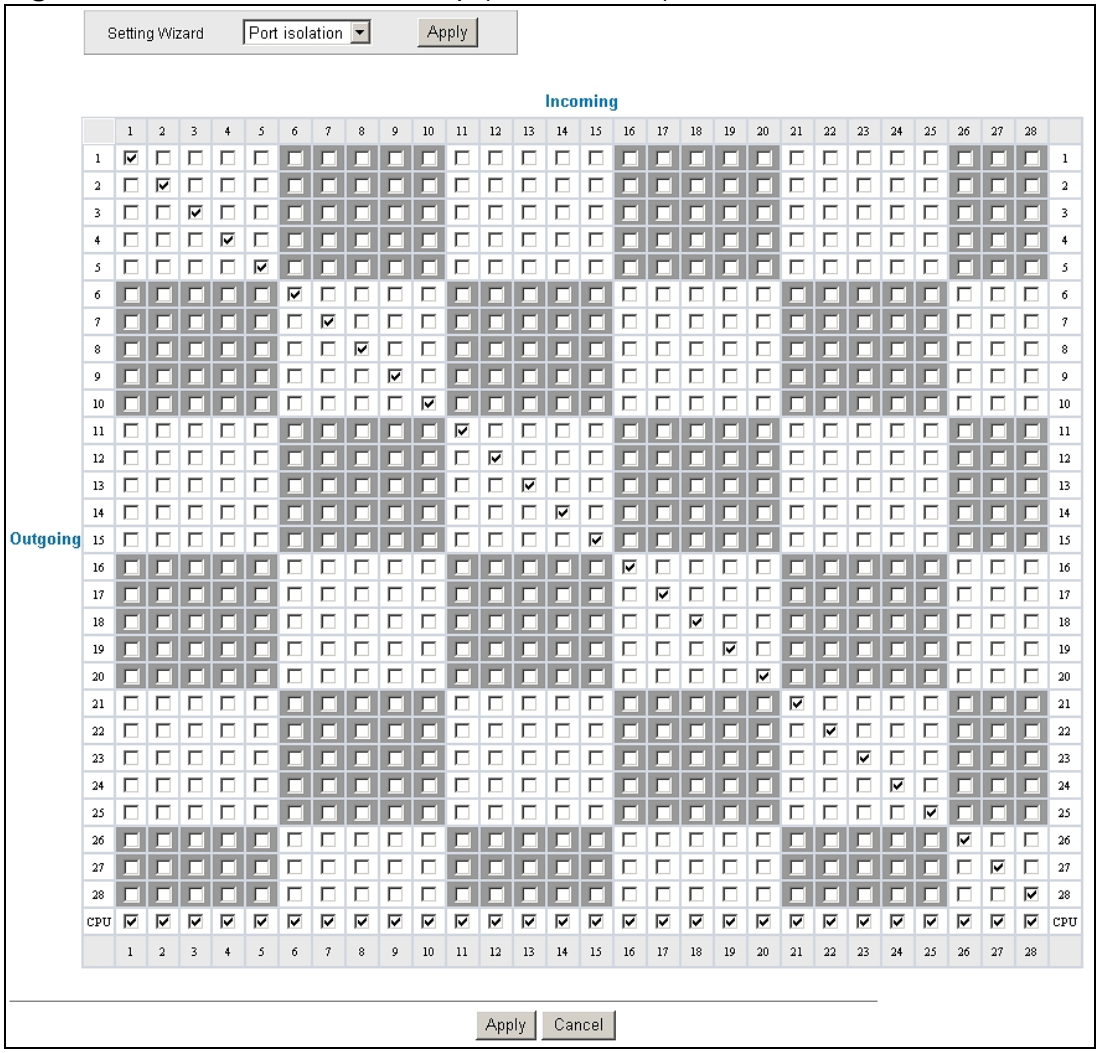

Port Based VLAN Setup
Setting Wizard
All connected
Apply
Incoming
Outgoing
1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12 13 14 15 16 17 18 19 20 21 22 23 24 25 26 27 28
CPU
Apply
Cancel

Figure 51 Port Based VLAN Setup (Port Isolation)


Setting Wizard
Port isolation
Apply
Incoming
Outgoing
1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12 13 14 15 16 17 18 19 20 21 22 23 24 25 26 27 28
CPU
Apply
Cancel

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 20 Port Based VLAN Setup

label	Description
Setting Wizard	Choose **All connected** or **Port isolation**. **All connected** means all ports can communicate with each other, that is, there are no virtual LANs. All incoming and outgoing ports are selected. This option is the most flexible but also the least secure. **Port isolation** means that each port can only communicate with the CPU management port and cannot communicate with each other. All incoming ports are selected while only the CPU outgoing port is selected. This option is the most limiting but also the most secure. After you make your selection, click **Apply** (top right of screen) to display the screens as mentioned above. You can still customize these settings by adding/deleting incoming or outgoing ports, but you must also click **Apply** at the bottom of the screen.
Incoming	These are the ingress ports; an ingress port is an incoming port, that is, a port through which a data packet enters. If you wish to allow two subscriber ports to talk to each other, you must define the ingress port for both ports. The numbers in the top row denote the incoming port for the corresponding port listed on the left (its outgoing port). **CPU** refers to the Switch management port. By default it forms a VLAN with all Ethernet ports. If it does not form a VLAN with a particular port then the Switch cannot be managed from that port.
Outgoing	These are the egress ports; an egress port is an outgoing port, that is, a port through which a data packet leaves. If you wish to allow two subscriber ports to talk to each other, you must define the egress port for both ports. **CPU** refers to the Switch management port. By default it forms a VLAN with all Ethernet ports. If it does not form a VLAN with a particular port then the Switch cannot be managed from that port.
Apply	Click **Apply** to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the **Save** link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to begin configuring this screen afresh.

9.10 Technical Reference

This section provides technical background information on the topics discussed in this chapter.

9.10.1 Create an IP-based VLAN Example

This example shows you how to create an IP VLAN which includes ports 1, 4 and 8. Follow these steps:

1 Activate this protocol based VLAN.

2 Type the port number you want to include in this protocol based VLAN. Type **1**.

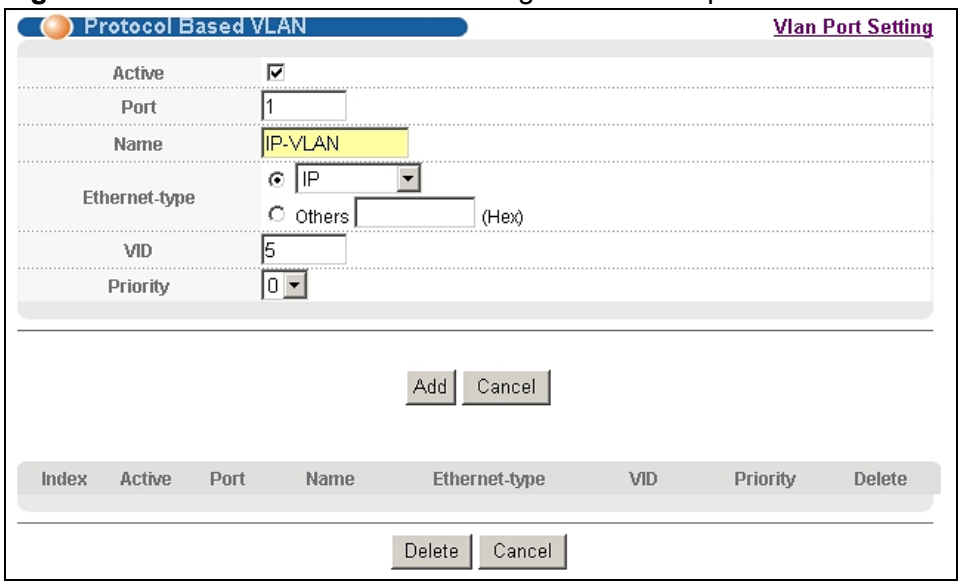
3 Give this protocol-based VLAN a descriptive name. Type **IP-VLAN**.

4 Select the protocol. Leave the default value **IP**.

5 Type the VLAN ID of an existing VLAN. In our example we already created a static VLAN with an ID of 5. Type **5**.

6 Leave the priority set to **0** and click **Add**.

Figure 52 Protocol Based VLAN Configuration Example



To add more ports to this protocol based VLAN.

1 Click the index number of the protocol based VLAN entry. Click **1**

2 Change the value in the **Port** field to the next port you want to add.

3 Click **Add**.

10

Static MAC Forward Setup

10.1 Overview

This chapter discusses how to configure forwarding rules based on MAC addresses of devices on your network.

Use these screens to configure static MAC address forwarding.

10.2 What You Can Do

Use the **Static MAC Forwarding** screen (Section 10.3 on page 107) to assign static MAC addresses for a port.

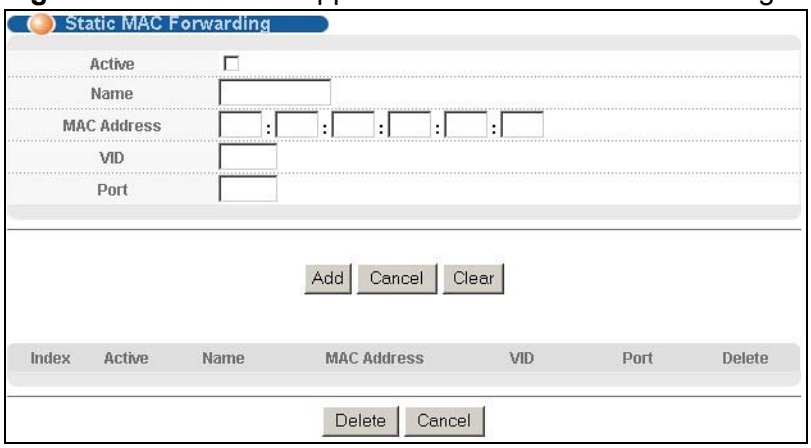
10.3 Configuring Static MAC Forwarding

A static MAC address is an address that has been manually entered in the MAC address table. Static MAC addresses do not age out. When you set up static MAC address rules, you are setting static MAC addresses for a port. This may reduce the need for broadcasting.

Static MAC address forwarding together with port security allow only computers in the MAC address table on a port to access the Switch. See Chapter 19 on page 165 for more information on port security.

Click **Advanced Application** > **Static MAC Forwarding** in the navigation panel to display the configuration screen as shown.

Figure 53 Advanced Application > Static MAC Forwarding



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 21 Advanced Application > Static MAC Forwarding

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Active	Select this check box to activate your rule. You may temporarily deactivate a rule without deleting it by clearing this check box.
Name	Enter a descriptive name for identification purposes for this static MAC address forwarding rule.
MAC Address	Enter the MAC address in valid MAC address format, that is, six hexadecimal character pairs. Note: Static MAC addresses do not age out.
VID	Enter the VLAN identification number.
Port	Enter the port where the MAC address entered in the previous field will be automatically forwarded.
Add	Click **Add** to save your rule to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses this rule if it is turned off or loses power, so use the **Save** link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to reset the fields to their last saved values.
Clear	Click **Clear** to begin configuring this screen afresh.
Index	Click an index number to modify a static MAC address rule for a port.
Active	This field displays whether this static MAC address forwarding rule is active (**Yes**) or not (**No**). You may temporarily deactivate a rule without deleting it.
Name	This field displays the descriptive name for identification purposes for this static MAC address-forwarding rule.
MAC Address	This field displays the MAC address that will be forwarded and the VLAN identification number to which the MAC address belongs.
VID	This field displays the ID number of the VLAN group.

Table 21 Advanced Application > Static MAC Forwarding (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Port	This field displays the port where the MAC address shown in the next field will be forwarded.
Delete	Click **Delete** to remove the selected entry from the summary table.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to clear the **Delete** check boxes.

11

Static Multicast Forward Setup

11.1 Overview

This chapter discusses how to configure forwarding rules based on multicast MAC addresses of devices on your network.

Use these screens to configure static multicast address forwarding.

11.2 What You Can Do

Use the **Static Multicast Forward Setup** screen (Section 11.4 on page 112) to configure rules to forward specific multicast frames, such as streaming or control frames, to specific port(s).

11.3 What You Need To Know

A multicast MAC address is the MAC address of a member of a multicast group. A static multicast address is a multicast MAC address that has been manually entered in the multicast table. Static multicast addresses do not age out. Static multicast forwarding allows you (the administrator) to forward multicast frames to a member without the member having to join the group first.

If a multicast group has no members, then the switch will either flood the multicast frames to all ports or drop them. You can configure this in the **Advanced Application** > **Multicast** > **Multicast Setting** screen (see Section 24.5 on page 196). Figure 54 shows such unknown multicast frames flooded to all ports. With static multicast forwarding, you can forward these multicasts to port(s) within a VLAN group. Figure 55 shows frames being forwarded to devices

connected to port 3. Figure 56 shows frames being forwarded to ports 2 and 3 within VLAN group 4.

Figure 54 No Static Multicast Forwarding

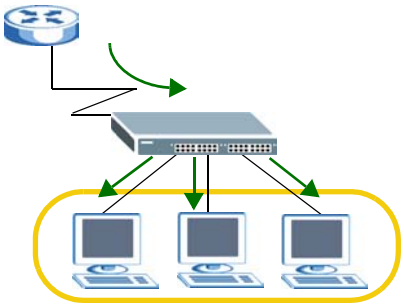


Figure 55 Static Multicast Forwarding to A Single Port

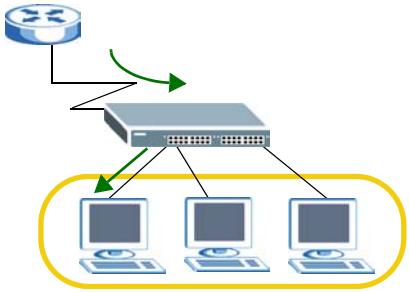
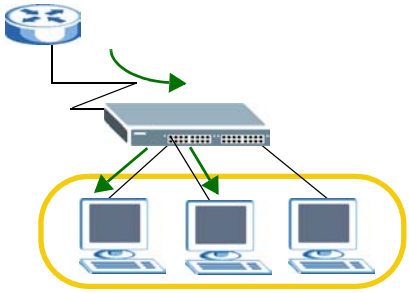


Figure 56 Static Multicast Forwarding to Multiple Ports

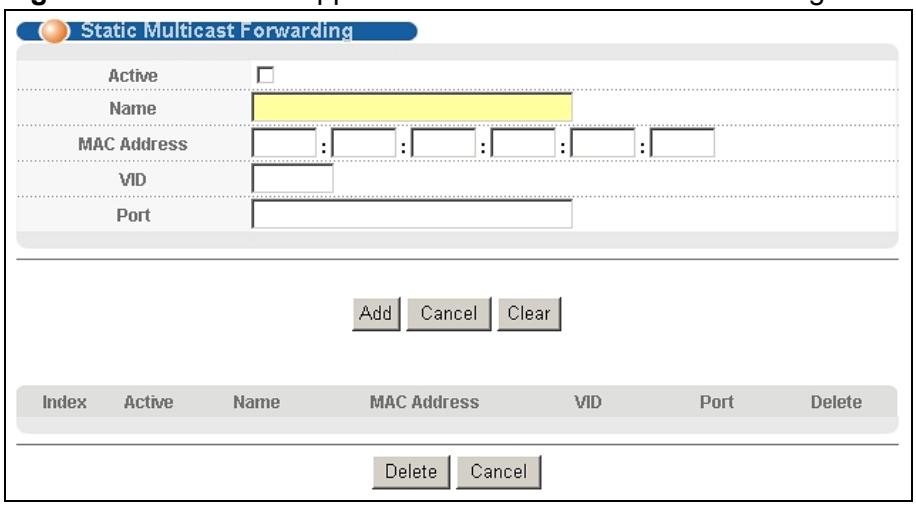


11.4 Configuring Static Multicast Forwarding

Use this screen to configure rules to forward specific multicast frames, such as streaming or control frames, to specific port(s).

Click **Advanced Application** > **Static Multicast Forwarding** to display the configuration screen as shown.

Figure 57 Advanced Application > Static Multicast Forwarding



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 22 Advanced Application > Static Multicast Forwarding

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Active	Select this check box to activate your rule. You may temporarily deactivate a rule without deleting it by clearing this check box.
Name	Type a descriptive name (up to 32 printable ASCII characters) for this static multicast MAC address forwarding rule. This is for identification only.
MAC Address	Enter a multicast MAC address which identifies the multicast group. The last binary bit of the first octet pair in a multicast MAC address must be 1. For example, the first octet pair 00000001 is 01 and 00000011 is 03 in hexadecimal, so 01:00:5e:00:00:0A and 03:00:5e:00:00:27 are valid multicast MAC addresses.
VID	You can forward frames with matching destination MAC address to port(s) within a VLAN group. Enter the ID that identifies the VLAN group here. If you don't have a specific target VLAN, enter 1.
Port	Enter the port(s) where frames with destination MAC address that matched the entry above are forwarded. You can enter multiple ports separated by (no space) comma (,) or hyphen (-). For example, enter "3-5" for ports 3, 4, and 5. Enter "3,5,7" for ports 3, 5, and 7.
Add	Click **Add** to save your rule to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses this rule if it is turned off or loses power, so use the **Save** link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to reset the fields to their last saved values.
Clear	Click **Clear** to begin configuring this screen afresh.
Index	Click an index number to modify a static multicast MAC address rule for port(s).

Table 22 Advanced Application > Static Multicast Forwarding (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Active	This field displays whether a static multicast MAC address forwarding rule is active (**Yes**) or not (**No**). You may temporarily deactivate a rule without deleting it.
Name	This field displays the descriptive name for identification purposes for a static multicast MAC address-forwarding rule.
MAC Address	This field displays the multicast MAC address that identifies a multicast group.
VID	This field displays the ID number of a VLAN group to which frames containing the specified multicast MAC address will be forwarded.
Port	This field displays the port(s) within a identified VLAN group to which frames containing the specified multicast MAC address will be forwarded.
Delete	Click **Delete** to remove the selected entry from the summary table.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to clear the **Delete** check boxes.

12 Filtering

12.1 Overview

This chapter discusses MAC address port filtering.

Filtering means sifting traffic going through the Switch based on the source and/or destination MAC addresses and VLAN group (ID).

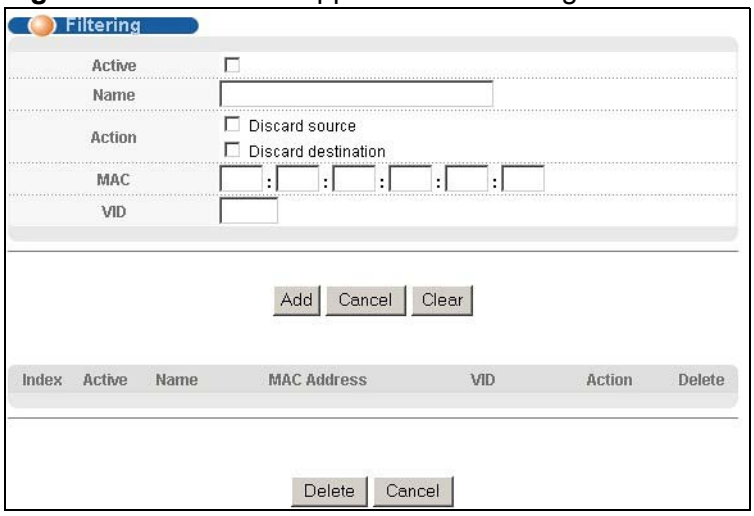
12.2 What You Can Do

Use the **Filtering** screen (Section 12.3 on page 115) to create rules for traffic going through the Switch.

12.3 Configure a Filtering Rule

Use this screen to create rules for traffic going through the Switch. Click **Advanced Application** > **Filtering** in the navigation panel to display the screen as shown next.

Figure 58 Advanced Application > Filtering



The following table describes the related labels in this screen.

Table 23 Advanced Application > Filtering

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Active	Make sure to select this check box to activate your rule. You may temporarily deactivate a rule without deleting it by deselecting this check box.
Name	Type a descriptive name (up to 32 printable ASCII characters) for this rule. This is for identification only.
Action	Select **Discard source** to drop the frames from the source MAC address (specified in the **MAC** field). The Switch can still send frames to the MAC address. Select **Discard destination** to drop the frames to the destination MAC address (specified in the **MAC** address). The Switch can still receive frames originating from the MAC address. Select **Discard source** and **Discard destination** to block traffic to/from the MAC address specified in the **MAC** field.
MAC	Type a MAC address in valid MAC address format, that is, six hexadecimal character pairs.
VID	Type the VLAN group identification number.
Add	Click **Add** to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the **Save** link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to reset the fields to your previous configuration.
Clear	Click **Clear** to clear the fields to the factory defaults.
Index	This field displays the index number of the rule. Click an index number to change the settings.
Active	This field displays **Yes** when the rule is activated and **No** when is it deactivated.
Name	This field displays the descriptive name for this rule. This is for identification purpose only.
MAC Address	This field displays the source/destination MAC address with the VLAN identification number to which the MAC address belongs.
VID	This field displays the VLAN group identification number.
Delete	Check the rule(s) that you want to remove in the **Delete** column and then click the **Delete** button.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to clear the selected checkbox(es) in the **Delete** column.

13

Spanning Tree Protocol

13.1 Overview

The Switch supports Spanning Tree Protocol (STP), Rapid Spanning Tree Protocol (RSTP) and Multiple Spanning Tree Protocol (MSTP) as defined in the following standards.

- IEEE 802.1D Spanning Tree Protocol
- IEEE 802.1w Rapid Spanning Tree Protocol
- IEEE 802.1s Multiple Spanning Tree Protocol

The Switch also allows you to set up multiple STP configurations (or trees). Ports can then be assigned to the trees.

13.2 What You Can Do

- Use the **Spanning Tree Protocol** status screen (Section 13.4 on page 121) to view the STP status in the different STP modes (RSTP, MRSTP or MSTP) you can configure on the Switch.
- Use the **Spanning Tree Configuration** screen (Section 13.5 on page 121) to activate one of the STP modes on the Switch.
- Use the **Rapid Spanning Tree Protocol** screen (Section 13.6 on page 122) to configure RSTP settings.
- Use the **Rapid Spanning Tree Protocol Status** screen (Section 13.7 on page 124) to display the status screen as shown next.
- Use the **Multiple Rapid Spanning Tree Protocol** screen (Section 13.8 on page 126) to configure MRSTP.
- Use the **Multiple Rapid Spanning Tree Protocol Status** screen (Section 13.9 on page 128) to view the MRSTP status.
- Use the **Multiple Spanning Tree Protocol** screen (Section 13.10 on page 130) to configure MSTP.
- Use the **Multiple Spanning Tree Protocol Status** screen (Section 13.11 on page 133) to view the MSTP status.

13.3 What You Need to Know

(R)STP detects and breaks network loops and provides backup links between switches, bridges or routers. It allows a switch to interact with other (R)STP -compliant switches in your network to ensure that only one path exists between any two stations on the network.

The Switch uses IEEE 802.1w RSTP (Rapid Spanning Tree Protocol) that allows faster convergence of the spanning tree than STP (while also being backwards compatible with STP-only aware bridges). In RSTP, topology change information is directly propagated throughout the network from the device that generates the topology change. In STP, a longer delay is required as the device that causes a topology change first notifies the root bridge that then notifies the network. Both RSTP and STP flush unwanted learned addresses from the filtering database. In RSTP, the port states are Discarding, Learning, and Forwarding.

Note: In this user's guide, "STP" refers to both STP and RSTP.

13.3.1 STP Terminology

The root bridge is the base of the spanning tree.

Path cost is the cost of transmitting a frame onto a LAN through that port. The recommended cost is assigned according to the speed of the link to which a port is attached. The slower the media, the higher the cost.

Table 24 STP Path Costs

	LINK SPEED	RECOMMENDED VALUE	RECOMMENDED RANGE	ALLOWED RANGE
Path Cost	4Mbps	250	100 to 1000	1 to 65535
Path Cost	10Mbps	100	50 to 600	1 to 65535
Path Cost	16Mbps	62	40 to 400	1 to 65535
Path Cost	100Mbps	19	10 to 60	1 to 65535
Path Cost	1Gbps	4	3 to 10	1 to 65535
Path Cost	10Gbps	2	1 to 5	1 to 65535

On each bridge, the root port is the port through which this bridge communicates with the root. It is the port on this switch with the lowest path cost to the root (the root path cost). If there is no root port, then this switch has been accepted as the root bridge of the spanning tree network.

For each LAN segment, a designated bridge is selected. This bridge has the lowest cost to the root among the bridges connected to the LAN.

13.3.2 How STP Works

After a bridge determines the lowest cost-spanning tree with STP, it enables the root port and the ports that are the designated ports for connected LANs, and disables all other ports that participate in STP. Network packets are therefore only forwarded between enabled ports, eliminating any possible network loops.

STP-aware switches exchange Bridge Protocol Data Units (BPDUs) periodically. When the bridged LAN topology changes, a new spanning tree is constructed.

Once a stable network topology has been established, all bridges listen for Hello BPDUs (Bridge Protocol Data Units) transmitted from the root bridge. If a bridge does not get a Hello BPDU after a predefined interval (Max Age), the bridge assumes that the link to the root bridge is down. This bridge then initiates negotiations with other bridges to reconfigure the network to re-establish a valid network topology.

13.3.3 STP Port States

STP assigns five port states to eliminate packet looping. A bridge port is not allowed to go directly from blocking state to forwarding state so as to eliminate transient loops.

Table 25 STP Port States

PORT STATE	DESCRIPTION
Disabled	STP is disabled (default).
Blocking	Only configuration and management BPDUs are received and processed.
Listening	All BPDUs are received and processed. Note: The listening state does not exist in RSTP.
Learning	All BPDUs are received and processed. Information frames are submitted to the learning process but not forwarded.
Forwarding	All BPDUs are received and processed. All information frames are received and forwarded.

13.3.4 Multiple RSTP

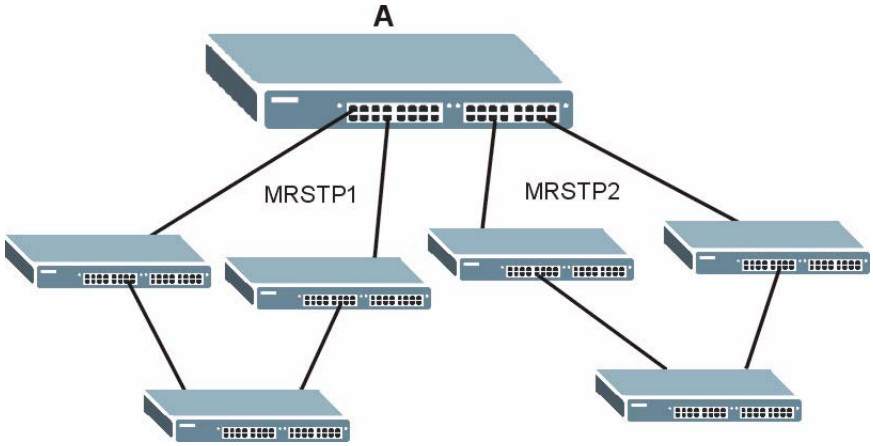
MRSTP (Multiple RSTP) is ZyXEL's proprietary feature that is compatible with RSTP and STP. With MRSTP, you can have more than one spanning tree on your Switch and assign port(s) to each tree. Each spanning tree operates independently with its own bridge information.

In the following example, there are two RSTP instances (**MRSTP 1** and **MRSTP2**) on switch **A**.

To set up MRSTP, activate MRSTP on the Switch and specify which port(s) belong to which spanning tree.

Note: Each port can belong to one STP tree only.

Figure 59 MRSTP Network Example



13.3.5 Multiple STP

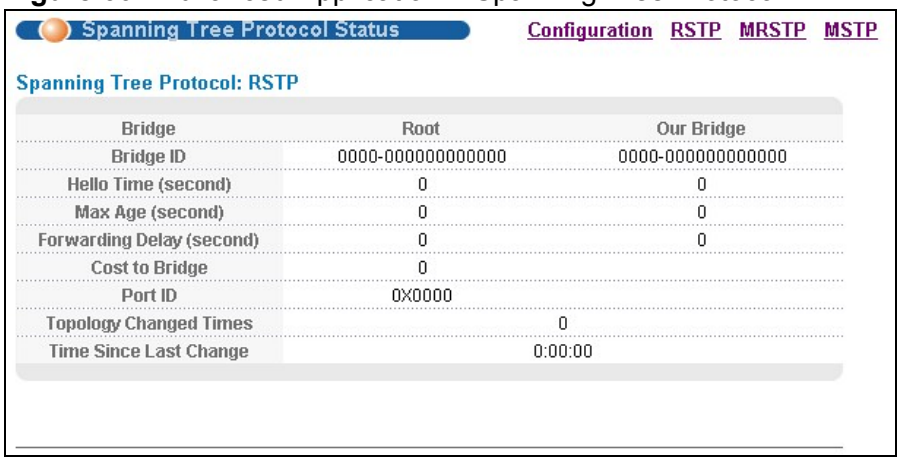
Multiple Spanning Tree Protocol (IEEE 802.1s) is backward compatible with STP/ RSTP and addresses the limitations of existing spanning tree protocols (STP and RSTP) in networks to include the following features:

- One Common and Internal Spanning Tree (CIST) that represents the entire network's connectivity.
- Grouping of multiple bridges (or switching devices) into regions that appear as one single bridge on the network.
- A VLAN can be mapped to a specific Multiple Spanning Tree Instance (MSTI). MSTI allows multiple VLANs to use the same spanning tree.
- Load-balancing is possible as traffic from different VLANs can use distinct paths in a region.

13.4 Spanning Tree Protocol Status Screen

The Spanning Tree Protocol status screen changes depending on what standard you choose to implement on your network. Click **Advanced Application** > **Spanning Tree Protocol** to see the screen as shown.

Figure 60 Advanced Application > Spanning Tree Protocol

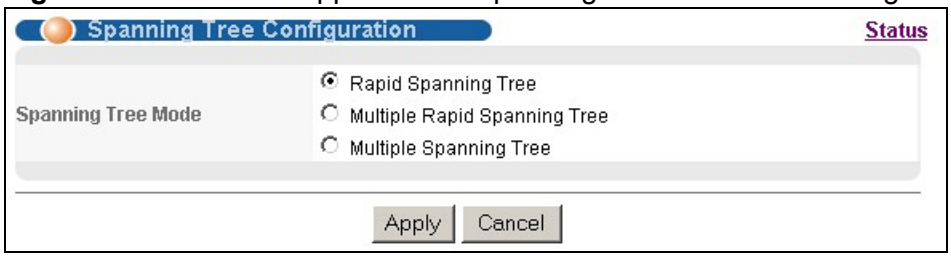


This screen differs depending on which STP mode (RSTP, MRSTP or MSTP) you configure on the Switch. This screen is described in detail in the section that follows the configuration section for each STP mode. Click **Configuration** to activate one of the STP standards on the Switch.

13.5 Spanning Tree Configuration

Use the **Spanning Tree Configuration** screen to activate one of the STP modes on the Switch. Click **Configuration** in the **Advanced Application** > **Spanning Tree Protocol**.

Figure 61 Advanced Application > Spanning Tree Protocol > Configuration



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

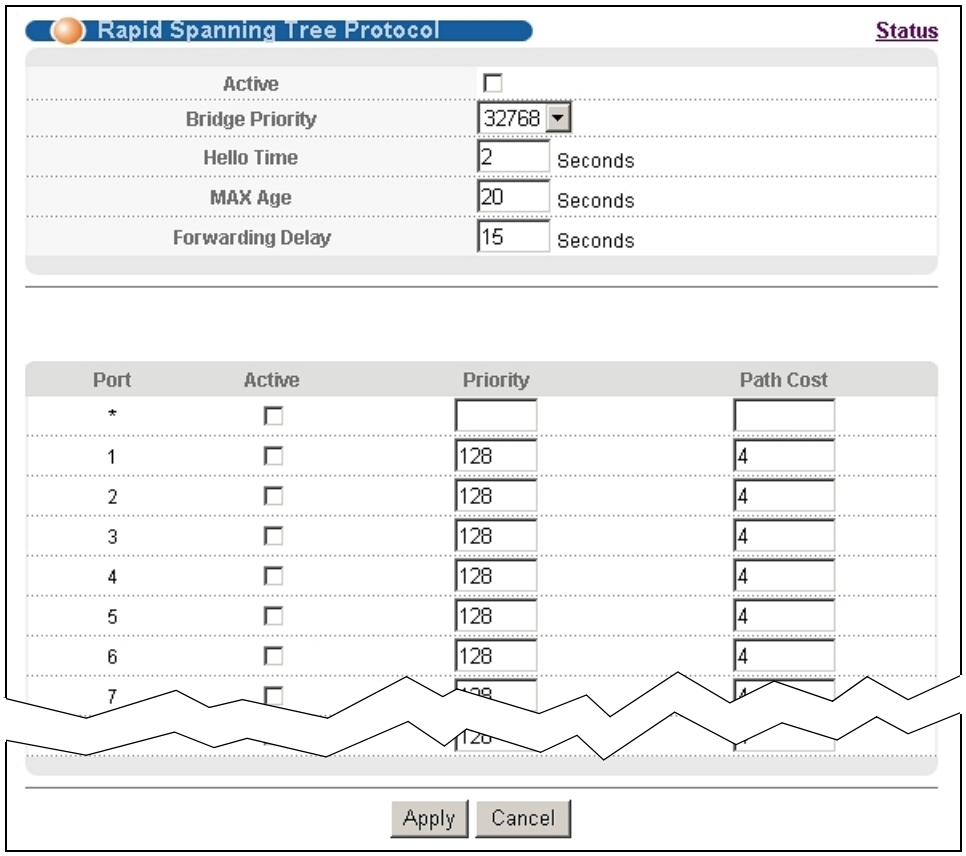
Table 26 Advanced Application > Spanning Tree Protocol > Configuration

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Spanning Tree Mode	You can activate one of the STP modes on the Switch. Select **Rapid Spanning Tree**, **Multiple Rapid Spanning Tree** or **Multiple Spanning Tree**. See Section 13.1 on page 117 for background information on STP.
Apply	Click **Apply** to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the **Save** link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to begin configuring this screen afresh.

13.6 Configure Rapid Spanning Tree Protocol

Use this screen to configure RSTP settings, see Section 13.1 on page 117 for more information on RSTP. Click **RSTP** in the **Advanced Application** > **Spanning Tree Protocol** screen.

Figure 62 Advanced Application > Spanning Tree Protocol > RSTP



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 27 Advanced Application > Spanning Tree Protocol > RSTP

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Status	Click **Status** to display the **RSTP Status** screen (see Figure 63 on page 124).
Active	Select this check box to activate RSTP. Clear this checkbox to disable RSTP. Note: You must also activate **Rapid Spanning Tree** in the **Advanced Application > Spanning Tree Protocol > Configuration** screen to enable RSTP on the Switch.
Bridge Priority	Bridge priority is used in determining the root switch, root port and designated port. The switch with the highest priority (lowest numeric value) becomes the STP root switch. If all switches have the same priority, the switch with the lowest MAC address will then become the root switch. Select a value from the drop-down list box. The lower the numeric value you assign, the higher the priority for this bridge. Bridge Priority determines the root bridge, which in turn determines Hello Time, Max Age and Forwarding Delay.
Hello Time	This is the time interval in seconds between BPDU (Bridge Protocol Data Units) configuration message generations by the root switch. The allowed range is 1 to 10 seconds.
Max Age	This is the maximum time (in seconds) the Switch can wait without receiving a BPDU before attempting to reconfigure. All Switch ports (except for designated ports) should receive BPDUs at regular intervals. Any port that ages out STP information (provided in the last BPDU) becomes the designated port for the attached LAN. If it is a root port, a new root port is selected from among the Switch ports attached to the network. The allowed range is 6 to 40 seconds.
Forwarding Delay	This is the maximum time (in seconds) the Switch will wait before changing states. This delay is required because every switch must receive information about topology changes before it starts to forward frames. In addition, each port needs time to listen for conflicting information that would make it return to a blocking state; otherwise, temporary data loops might result. The allowed range is 4 to 30 seconds. As a general rule: Note: 2 * (Forward Delay - 1) >= Max Age >= 2 * (Hello Time + 1)
Port	This field displays the port number.
*	Settings in this row apply to all ports. Use this row only if you want to make some settings the same for all ports. Use this row first to set the common settings and then make adjustments on a port-by-port basis. Note: Changes in this row are copied to all the ports as soon as you make them.

Table 27 Advanced Application > Spanning Tree Protocol > RSTP (continued)

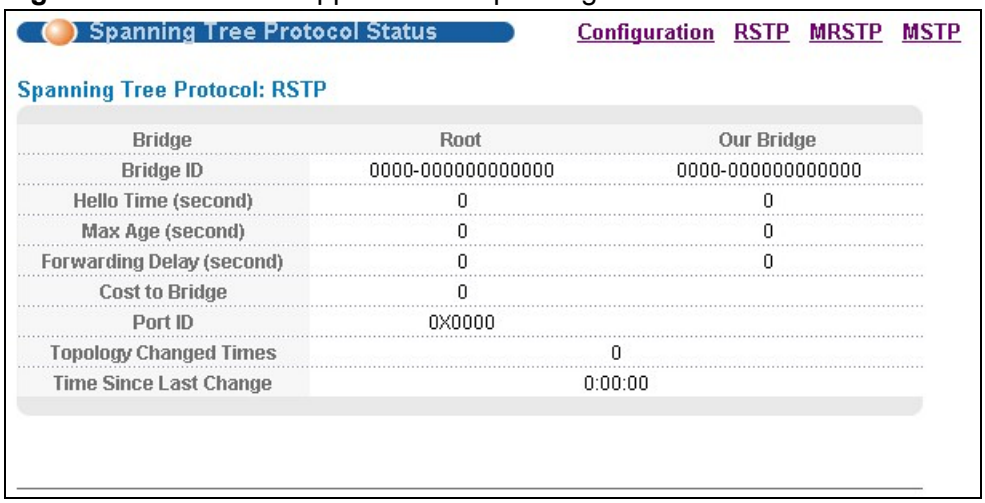
LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Active	Select this check box to activate RSTP on this port.
Priority	Configure the priority for each port here. Priority decides which port should be disabled when more than one port forms a loop in a switch. Ports with a higher priority numeric value are disabled first. The allowed range is between 0 and 255 and the default value is 128.
Path Cost	Path cost is the cost of transmitting a frame on to a LAN through that port. It is recommended to assign this value according to the speed of the bridge. The slower the media, the higher the cost-see Table 24 on page 118 for more information.
Apply	Click **Apply** to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the **Save** link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to begin configuring this screen afresh.

13.7 Rapid Spanning Tree Protocol Status

Click **Advanced Application** > **Spanning Tree Protocol** in the navigation panel to display the status screen as shown next. See Section 13.1 on page 117 for more information on RSTP.

Note: This screen is only available after you activate RSTP on the Switch.

Figure 63 Advanced Application > Spanning Tree Protocol > Status: RSTP



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

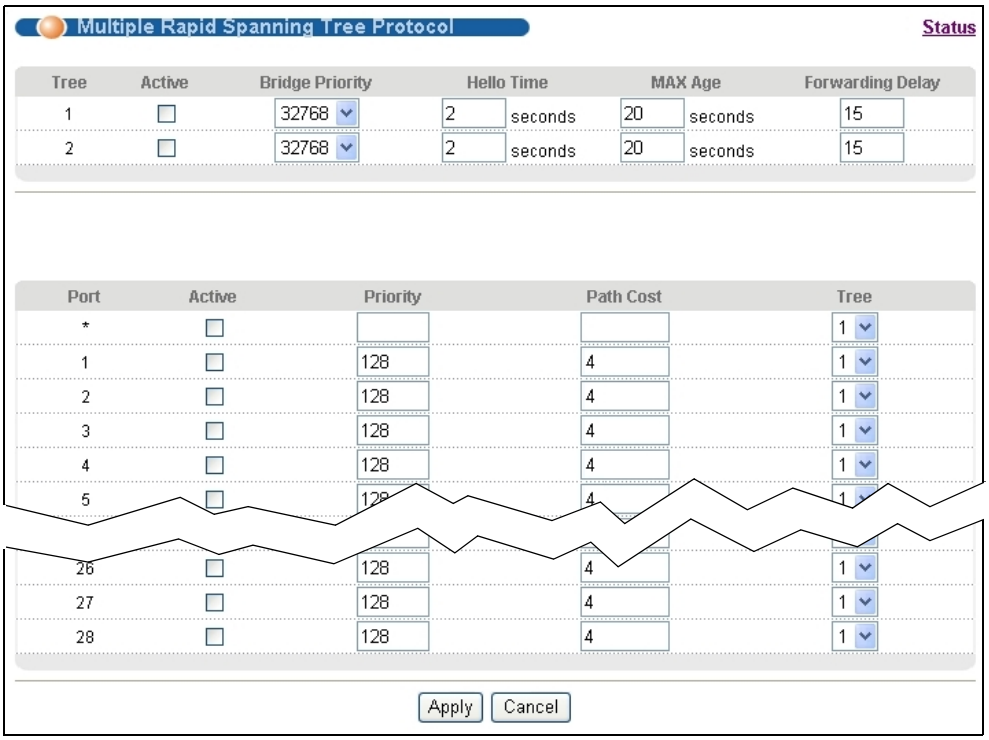
Table 28 Advanced Application > Spanning Tree Protocol > Status: RSTP

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Configuration	Click **Configuration** to specify which STP mode you want to activate. Click **RSTP** to edit RSTP settings on the Switch.
Bridge	**Root** refers to the base of the spanning tree (the root bridge). **Our Bridge** is this switch. This Switch may also be the root bridge.
Bridge ID	This is the unique identifier for this bridge, consisting of bridge priority plus MAC address. This ID is the same for **Root** and **Our Bridge** if the Switch is the root switch.
Hello Time (second)	This is the time interval (in seconds) at which the root switch transmits a configuration message. The root bridge determines Hello Time, Max Age and Forwarding Delay.
Max Age (second)	This is the maximum time (in seconds) the Switch can wait without receiving a configuration message before attempting to reconfigure.
Forwarding Delay (second)	This is the time (in seconds) the root switch will wait before changing states (that is, listening to learning to forwarding). Note: The listening state does not exist in RSTP.
Cost to Bridge	This is the path cost from the root port on this Switch to the root switch.
Port ID	This is the priority and number of the port on the Switch through which this Switch must communicate with the root of the Spanning Tree.
Topology Changed Times	This is the number of times the spanning tree has been reconfigured.
Time Since Last Change	This is the time since the spanning tree was last reconfigured.

13.8 Configure Multiple Rapid Spanning Tree Protocol

To configure MRSTP, click **MRSTP** in the **Advanced Application** > **Spanning Tree Protocol** screen. See Section 13.1 on page 117 for more information on MRSTP.

Figure 64 Advanced Application > Spanning Tree Protocol > MRSTP



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 29 Advanced Application > Spanning Tree Protocol > MRSTP

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Status	Click **Status** to display the **MRSTP Status** screen (see Figure 63 on page 124).
Tree	This is a read only index number of the STP trees.
Active	Select this check box to activate an STP tree. Clear this checkbox to disable an STP tree. Note: You must also activate **Multiple Rapid Spanning Tree** in the **Advanced Application** > **Spanning Tree Protocol** > **Configuration** screen to enable MRSTP on the Switch.

Table 29 Advanced Application > Spanning Tree Protocol > MRSTP (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Bridge Priority	Bridge priority is used in determining the root switch, root port and designated port. The switch with the highest priority (lowest numeric value) becomes the STP root switch. If all switches have the same priority, the switch with the lowest MAC address will then become the root switch. Select a value from the drop-down list box. The lower the numeric value you assign, the higher the priority for this bridge. Bridge Priority determines the root bridge, which in turn determines Hello Time, Max Age and Forwarding Delay.
Hello Time	This is the time interval in seconds between BPDU (Bridge Protocol Data Units) configuration message generations by the root switch. The allowed range is 1 to 10 seconds.
Max Age	This is the maximum time (in seconds) the Switch can wait without receiving a BPDU before attempting to reconfigure. All Switch ports (except for designated ports) should receive BPDUs at regular intervals. Any port that ages out STP information (provided in the last BPDU) becomes the designated port for the attached LAN. If it is a root port, a new root port is selected from among the Switch ports attached to the network. The allowed range is 6 to 40 seconds.
Forwarding Delay	This is the maximum time (in seconds) the Switch will wait before changing states. This delay is required because every switch must receive information about topology changes before it starts to forward frames. In addition, each port needs time to listen for conflicting information that would make it return to a blocking state; otherwise, temporary data loops might result. The allowed range is 4 to 30 seconds. As a general rule: Note: 2 * (Forward Delay - 1) >= Max Age >= 2 * (Hello Time + 1)
Port	This field displays the port number.
*	Settings in this row apply to all ports. Use this row only if you want to make some settings the same for all ports. Use this row first to set the common settings and then make adjustments on a port-by-port basis. Note: Changes in this row are copied to all the ports as soon as you make them.
Active	Select this check box to activate STP on this port.
Priority	Configure the priority for each port here. Priority decides which port should be disabled when more than one port forms a loop in a switch. Ports with a higher priority numeric value are disabled first. The allowed range is between 0 and 255 and the default value is 128.
Path Cost	Path cost is the cost of transmitting a frame on to a LAN through that port. It is recommended to assign this value according to the speed of the bridge. The slower the media, the higher the cost-see Table 24 on page 118 for more information.

Table 29 Advanced Application > Spanning Tree Protocol > MRSTP (continued)

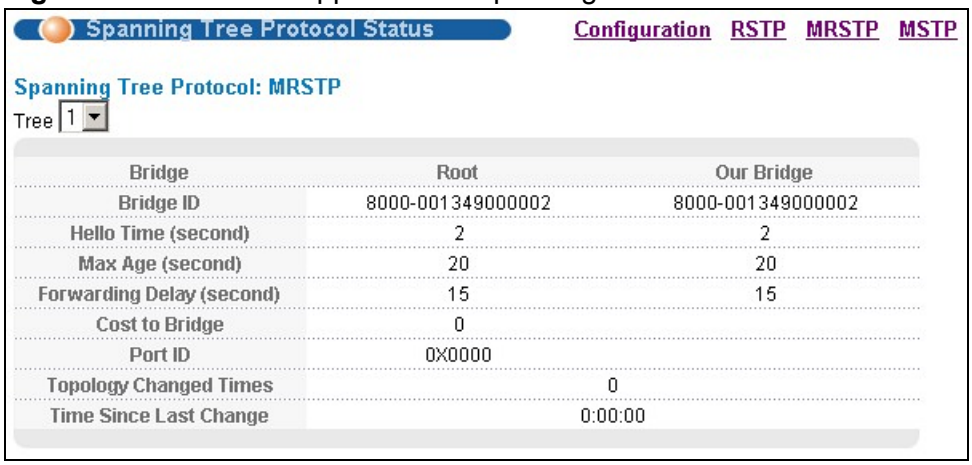
LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Tree	Select which STP tree configuration this port should participate in.
Apply	Click **Apply** to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the **Save** link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to begin configuring this screen afresh.

13.9 Multiple Rapid Spanning Tree Protocol Status

Click **Advanced Application** > **Spanning Tree Protocol** in the navigation panel to display the status screen as shown next. See Section 13.1 on page 117 for more information on MRSTP.

Note: This screen is only available after you activate MRSTP on the Switch.

Figure 65 Advanced Application > Spanning Tree Protocol > Status: MRSTP



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 30 Advanced Application > Spanning Tree Protocol > Status: MRSTP

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Configuration	Click **Configuration** to specify which STP mode you want to activate. Click **MRSTP** to edit MRSTP settings on the Switch.
Tree	Select which STP tree configuration you want to view.
Bridge	**Root** refers to the base of the spanning tree (the root bridge). **Our Bridge** is this switch. This Switch may also be the root bridge.
Bridge ID	This is the unique identifier for this bridge, consisting of bridge priority plus MAC address. This ID is the same for **Root** and **Our Bridge** if the Switch is the root switch.

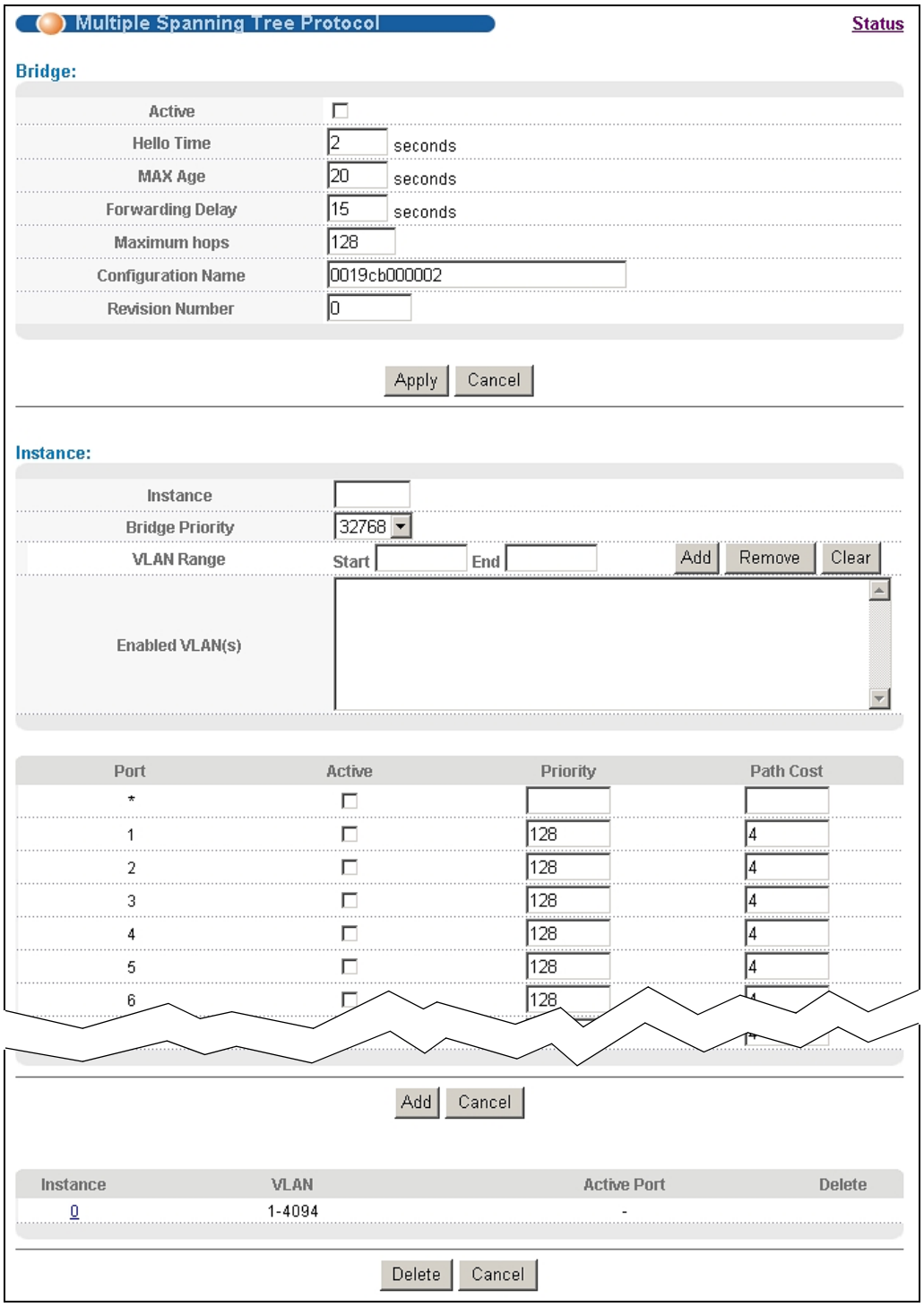
Table 30 Advanced Application > Spanning Tree Protocol > Status: MRSTP

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Hello Time (second)	This is the time interval (in seconds) at which the root switch transmits a configuration message. The root bridge determines Hello Time, Max Age and Forwarding Delay.
Max Age (second)	This is the maximum time (in seconds) the Switch can wait without receiving a configuration message before attempting to reconfigure.
Forwarding Delay (second)	This is the time (in seconds) the root switch will wait before changing states (that is, listening to learning to forwarding). Note: The listening state does not exist in RSTP.
Cost to Bridge	This is the path cost from the root port on this Switch to the root switch.
Port ID	This is the priority and number of the port on the Switch through which this Switch must communicate with the root of the Spanning Tree.
Topology Changed Times	This is the number of times the spanning tree has been reconfigured.
Time Since Last Change	This is the time since the spanning tree was last reconfigured.

13.10 Configure Multiple Spanning Tree Protocol

To configure MSTP, click **MSTP** in the **Advanced Application** > **Spanning Tree Protocol** screen. See Section 13.3.5 on page 120 for more information on MSTP.

Figure 66 Advanced Application > Spanning Tree Protocol > MSTP



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 31 Advanced Application > Spanning Tree Protocol > MSTP

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Status	Click **Status** to display the **MSTP Status** screen (see Figure 67 on page 133).
Active	Select this to activate MSTP on the Switch. Clear this to disable MSTP on the Switch. Note: You must also activate **Multiple Spanning Tree** in the **Advanced Application > Spanning Tree Protocol > Configuration** screen to enable MSTP on the Switch.
Hello Time	This is the time interval in seconds between BPDU (Bridge Protocol Data Units) configuration message generations by the root switch. The allowed range is 1 to 10 seconds.
MaxAge	This is the maximum time (in seconds) the Switch can wait without receiving a BPDU before attempting to reconfigure. All Switch ports (except for designated ports) should receive BPDUs at regular intervals. Any port that ages out STP information (provided in the last BPDU) becomes the designated port for the attached LAN. If it is a root port, a new root port is selected from among the Switch ports attached to the network. The allowed range is 6 to 40 seconds.
Forwarding Delay	This is the maximum time (in seconds) the Switch will wait before changing states. This delay is required because every switch must receive information about topology changes before it starts to forward frames. In addition, each port needs time to listen for conflicting information that would make it return to a blocking state; otherwise, temporary data loops might result. The allowed range is 4 to 30 seconds. As a general rule: Note: 2 * (Forward Delay - 1) >= Max Age >= 2 * (Hello Time + 1)
Maximum hops	Enter the number of hops (between 1 and 255) in an MSTP region before the BPDU is discarded and the port information is aged.
Configuration Name	Enter a descriptive name (up to 32 characters) of an MST region.
Revision Number	Enter a number to identify a region's configuration. Devices must have the same revision number to belong to the same region.
Apply	Click **Apply** to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the **Save** link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to begin configuring this screen afresh.
Instance	Use this section to configure MSTI (Multiple Spanning Tree Instance) settings.
Instance	Enter the number you want to use to identify this MST instance on the Switch. The Switch supports instance numbers 0-15.

Table 31 Advanced Application > Spanning Tree Protocol > MSTP (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Bridge Priority	Set the priority of the Switch for the specific spanning tree instance. The lower the number, the more likely the Switch will be chosen as the root bridge within the spanning tree instance. Enter priority values between 0 and 61440 in increments of 4096 (thus valid values are 4096, 8192, 12288, 16384, 20480, 24576, 28672, 32768, 36864, 40960, 45056, 49152, 53248, 57344 and 61440).
VLAN Range	Enter the start of the VLAN ID range that you want to add or remove from the VLAN range edit area in the **Start** field. Enter the end of the VLAN ID range that you want to add or remove from the VLAN range edit area in the **End** field. Next click: • **Add** - to add this range of VLAN(s) to be mapped to the MST instance. • **Remove** - to remove this range of VLAN(s) from being mapped to the MST instance. • **Clear** - to remove all VLAN(s) from being mapped to this MST instance.
Enabled VLAN(s)	This field displays which VLAN(s) are mapped to this MST instance.
Port	This field displays the port number.
*	Settings in this row apply to all ports. Use this row only if you want to make some settings the same for all ports. Use this row first to set the common settings and then make adjustments on a port-by-port basis. Note: Changes in this row are copied to all the ports as soon as you make them.
Active	Select this check box to add this port to the MST instance.
Priority	Configure the priority for each port here. Priority decides which port should be disabled when more than one port forms a loop in a switch. Ports with a higher priority numeric value are disabled first. The allowed range is between 0 and 255 and the default value is 128.
Path Cost	Path cost is the cost of transmitting a frame on to a LAN through that port. It is recommended to assign this value according to the speed of the bridge. The slower the media, the higher the cost-see Table 24 on page 118 for more information.
Add	Click **Add** to save this MST instance to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses this change if it is turned off or loses power, so use the **Save** link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to begin configuring this screen afresh.
Instance	This field displays the ID of an MST instance.
VLAN	This field displays the VID (or VID ranges) to which the MST instance is mapped.
Active Port	This field display the ports configured to participate in the MST instance.

Table 31 Advanced Application > Spanning Tree Protocol > MSTP (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Delete	Check the rule(s) that you want to remove in the **Delete** column and then click the **Delete** button.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to begin configuring this screen afresh.

13.11 Multiple Spanning Tree Protocol Status

Click **Advanced Application** > **Spanning Tree Protocol** in the navigation panel to display the status screen as shown next. See Section 13.3.5 on page 120 for more information on MSTP.

Note: This screen is only available after you activate MSTP on the Switch.

Figure 67 Advanced Application > Spanning Tree Protocol > Status: MSTP

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 32 Advanced Application > Spanning Tree Protocol > Status: MSTP

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Configuration	Click **Configuration** to specify which STP mode you want to activate. Click **MSTP** to edit MSTP settings on the Switch.
CST	This section describes the Common Spanning Tree settings.
Bridge	**Root** refers to the base of the spanning tree (the root bridge). **Our Bridge** is this switch. This Switch may also be the root bridge.
Bridge ID	This is the unique identifier for this bridge, consisting of bridge priority plus MAC address. This ID is the same for **Root** and **Our Bridge** if the Switch is the root switch.
Hello Time (second)	This is the time interval (in seconds) at which the root switch transmits a configuration message.
Max Age (second)	This is the maximum time (in seconds) the Switch can wait without receiving a configuration message before attempting to reconfigure.
Forwarding Delay (second)	This is the time (in seconds) the root switch will wait before changing states (that is, listening to learning to forwarding).
Cost to Bridge	This is the path cost from the root port on this Switch to the root switch.
Port ID	This is the priority and number of the port on the Switch through which this Switch must communicate with the root of the Spanning Tree.
Configuration Name	This field displays the configuration name for this MST region.
Revision Number	This field displays the revision number for this MST region.
Configuration Digest	A configuration digest is generated from the VLAN-MSTI mapping information. This field displays the 16-octet signature that is included in an MSTP BPDU. This field displays the digest when MSTP is activated on the system.
Topology Changed Times	This is the number of times the spanning tree has been reconfigured.
Time Since Last Change	This is the time since the spanning tree was last reconfigured.
Instance:	These fields display the MSTI to VLAN mapping. In other words, which VLANs run on each spanning tree instance.
Instance	This field displays the MSTI ID.
VLAN	This field displays which VLANs are mapped to an MSTI.
MSTI	Select the MST instance settings you want to view.
Bridge	**Root** refers to the base of the MST instance. **Our Bridge** is this switch. This Switch may also be the root bridge.
Bridge ID	This is the unique identifier for this bridge, consisting of bridge priority plus MAC address. This ID is the same for **Root** and **Our Bridge** if the Switch is the root switch.

Table 32 Advanced Application > Spanning Tree Protocol > Status: MSTP

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Internal Cost	This is the path cost from the root port in this MST instance to the regional root switch.
Port ID	This is the priority and number of the port on the Switch through which this Switch must communicate with the root of the MST instance.

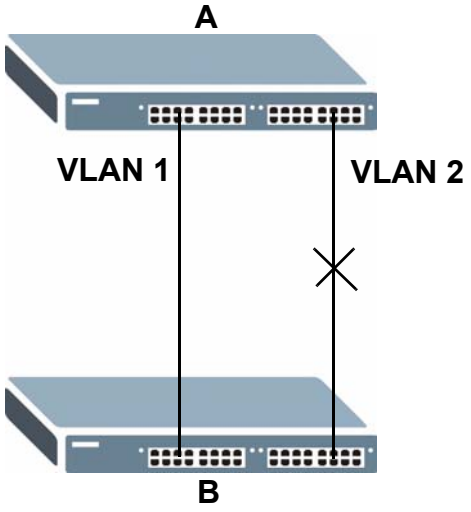
13.12 Technical Reference

This section provides technical background information on the topics discussed in this chapter.

13.12.1 MSTP Network Example

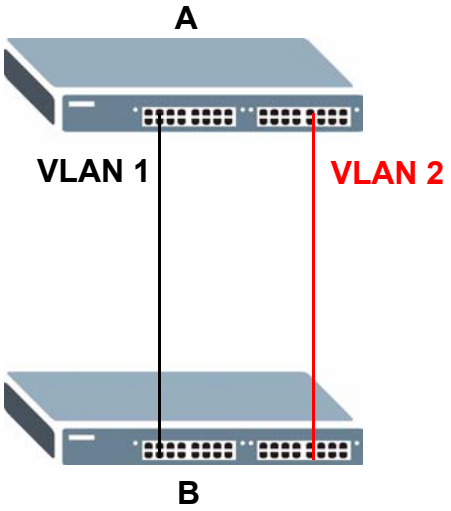
The following figure shows a network example where two VLANs are configured on the two switches. If the switches are using STP or RSTP, the link for VLAN 2 will be blocked as STP and RSTP allow only one link in the network and block the redundant link.

Figure 68 STP/RSTP Network Example



With MSTP, VLANs 1 and 2 are mapped to different spanning trees in the network. Thus traffic from the two VLANs travel on different paths. The following figure shows the network example using MSTP.

Figure 69 MSTP Network Example



13.12.2 MST Region

An MST region is a logical grouping of multiple network devices that appears as a single device to the rest of the network. Each MSTP-enabled device can only belong to one MST region. When BPDUs enter an MST region, external path cost (of paths outside this region) is increased by one. Internal path cost (of paths within this region) is increased by one when BPDUs traverse the region.

Devices that belong to the same MST region are configured to have the same MSTP configuration identification settings. These include the following parameters:

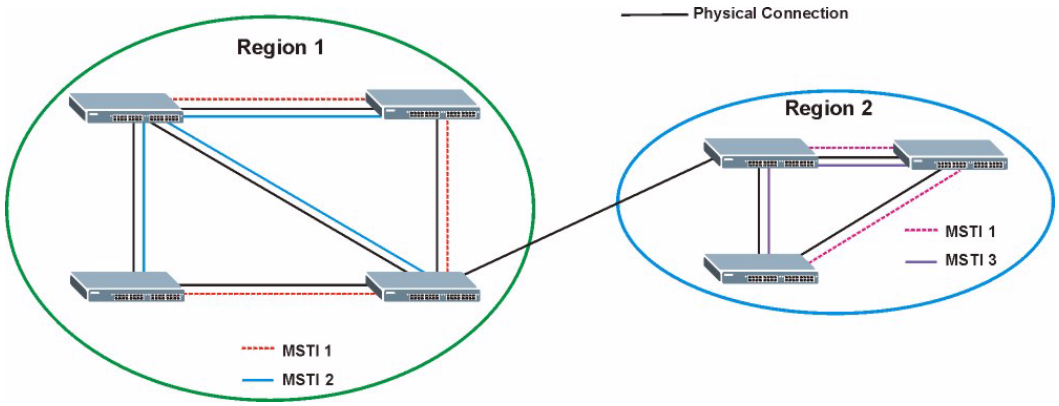
- Name of the MST region
- Revision level as the unique number for the MST region
- VLAN-to-MST Instance mapping

13.12.3 MST Instance

An MST Instance (MSTI) is a spanning tree instance. VLANs can be configured to run on a specific MSTI. Each created MSTI is identified by a unique number (known as an MST ID) known internally to a region. Thus an MSTI does not span across MST regions.

The following figure shows an example where there are two MST regions. Regions 1 and 2 have 2 spanning tree instances.

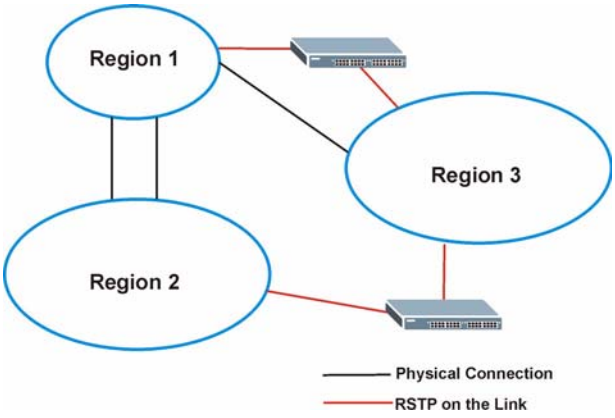
Figure 70 MSTIs in Different Regions



13.12.4 Common and Internal Spanning Tree (CIST)

A CIST represents the connectivity of the entire network and it is equivalent to a spanning tree in an STP/RSTP. The CIST is the default MST instance (MSTID 0). Any VLANs that are not members of an MST instance are members of the CIST. In an MSTP-enabled network, there is only one CIST that runs between MST regions and single spanning tree devices. A network may contain multiple MST regions and other network segments running RSTP.

Figure 71 MSTP and Legacy RSTP Network Example



14

Bandwidth Control

14.1 Bandwidth Control Overview

This chapter shows you how you can cap the maximum bandwidth using the **Bandwidth Control** screen.

Bandwidth control means defining a maximum allowable bandwidth for incoming and/or out-going traffic flows on a port.

14.2 What You Can Do

Use the **Bandwidth Control** screen (Section 14.3 on page 140) to limit the bandwidth for traffic going through the Switch.

14.3 Bandwidth Control Setup

Click **Advanced Application** > **Bandwidth Control** in the navigation panel to bring up the screen as shown next.

Figure 72 Advanced Application > Bandwidth Control

The following table describes the related labels in this screen.

Table 33 Advanced Application > Bandwidth Control

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Active	Select this check box to enable bandwidth control on the Switch.
Port	This field displays the port number.
*	Settings in this row apply to all ports. Use this row only if you want to make some settings the same for all ports. Use this row first to set the common settings and then make adjustments on a port-by-port basis. Note: Changes in this row are copied to all the ports as soon as you make them.
Active	Select this check box to activate ingress rate limits on this port.
Ingress Rate	
Active	Select this check box to activate egress rate limits on this port.
Egress Rate	Specify the maximum bandwidth allowed in kilobits per second (Kbps) for the out-going traffic flow on a port.

Table 33 Advanced Application > Bandwidth Control (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Apply	Click **Apply** to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the **Save** link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to reset the fields.

15

Broadcast Storm Control

15.1 Overview

This chapter introduces and shows you how to configure the broadcast storm control feature.

Broadcast storm control limits the number of broadcast, multicast and destination lookup failure (DLF) packets the Switch receives per second on the ports. When the maximum number of allowable broadcast, multicast and/or DLF packets is reached per second, the subsequent packets are discarded. Enable this feature to reduce broadcast, multicast and/or DLF packets in your network. You can specify limits for each packet type on each port.

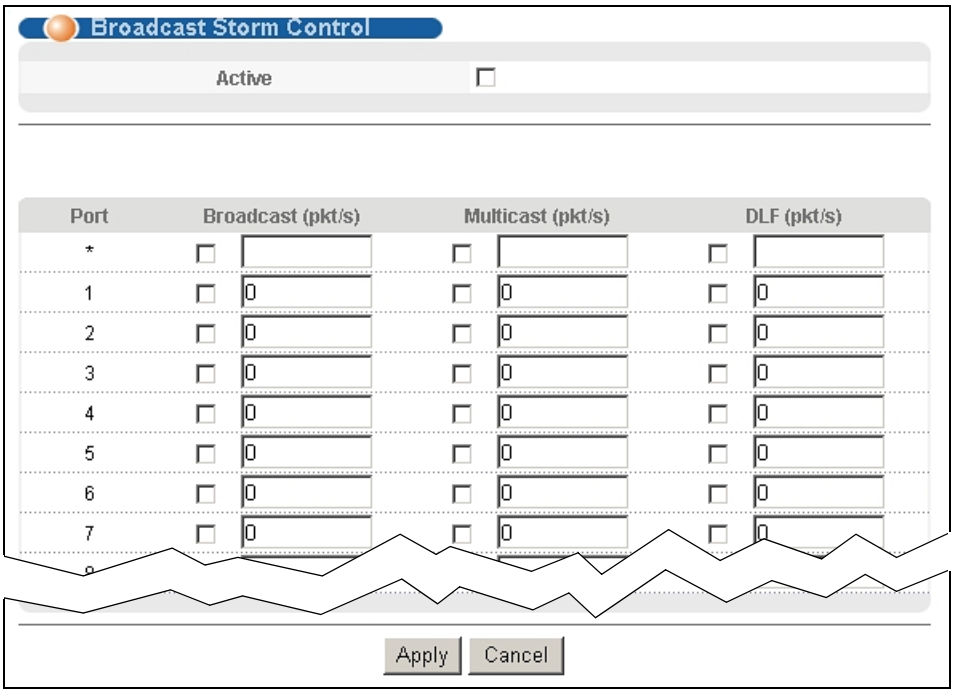
15.2 What You Can Do

Use the **Broadcast Storm Control** screen (Section 15.3 on page 144) to limit the number of broadcast, multicast and destination lookup failure (DLF) packets the Switch receives per second on the ports.

15.3 Broadcast Storm Control Setup

Click **Advanced Application** > **Broadcast Storm Control** in the navigation panel to display the screen as shown next.

Figure 73 Advanced Application > Broadcast Storm Control



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 34 Advanced Application > Broadcast Storm Control

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Active	Select this check box to enable traffic storm control on the Switch. Clear this check box to disable this feature.
Port	This field displays the port number.
*	Settings in this row apply to all ports. Use this row only if you want to make some settings the same for all ports. Use this row first to set the common settings and then make adjustments on a port-by-port basis. Note: Changes in this row are copied to all the ports as soon as you make them.
Broadcast (pkt/s)	Select this option and specify how many broadcast packets the port receives per second.
Multicast (pkt/s)	Select this option and specify how many multicast packets the port receives per second.
DLF (pkt/s)	Select this option and specify how many destination lookup failure (DLF) packets the port receives per second.

Table 34 Advanced Application > Broadcast Storm Control (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Apply	Click **Apply** to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the **Save** link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to reset the fields.

16 Mirroring

16.1 Overview

This chapter discusses port mirroring setup screens.

Port mirroring allows you to copy a traffic flow to a monitor port (the port you copy the traffic to) in order that you can examine the traffic from the monitor port without interference.

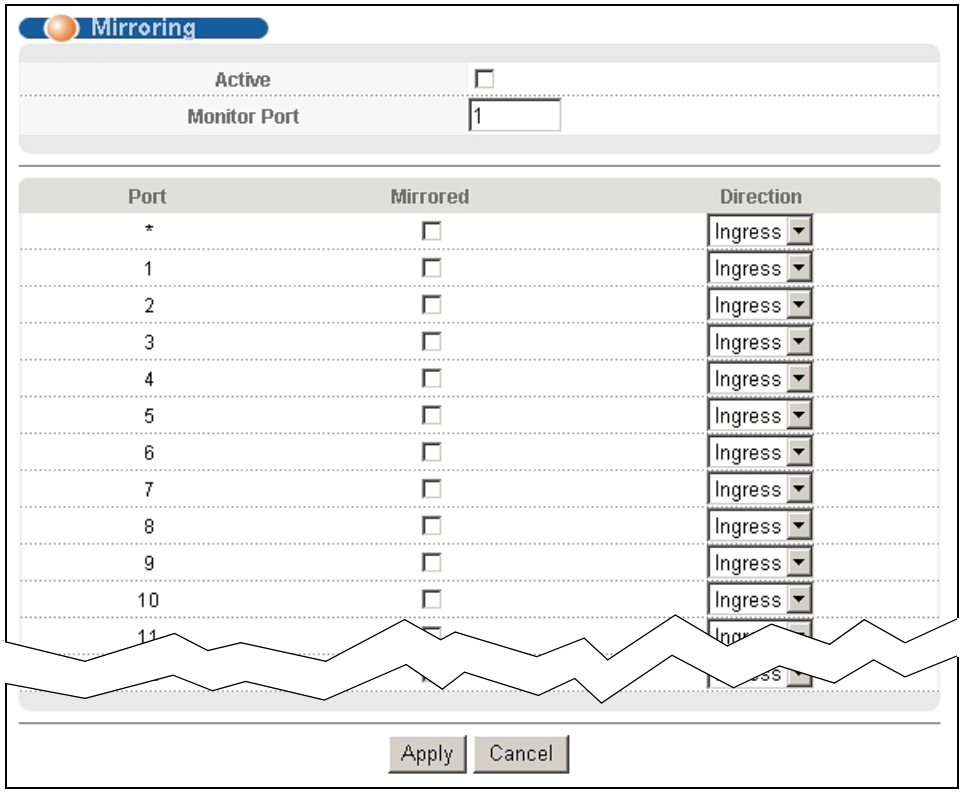
16.2 What You Can Do

Use the **Mirroring** screen (Section 16.3 on page 148) to select a monitor port and specify the traffic flow to be copied to the monitor port.

16.3 Port Mirroring Setup

Click **Advanced Application > Mirroring** in the navigation panel to display the **Mirroring** screen. Use this screen to select a monitor port and specify the traffic flow to be copied to the monitor port.

Figure 74 Advanced Application > Mirroring



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 35 Advanced Application > Mirroring

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Active	Select this check box to activate port mirroring on the Switch. Clear this check box to disable the feature.
Monitor Port	The monitor port is the port you copy the traffic to in order to examine it in more detail without interfering with the traffic flow on the original port(s). Enter the port number of the monitor port.
Port	This field displays the port number.
*	Settings in this row apply to all ports. Use this row only if you want to make some settings the same for all ports. Use this row first to set the common settings and then make adjustments on a port-by-port basis. Note: Changes in this row are copied to all the ports as soon as you make them.

Table 35 Advanced Application > Mirroring (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Mirrored	Select this option to mirror the traffic on a port.
Direction	Specify the direction of the traffic to mirror by selecting from the drop-down list box. Choices are **Egress** (outgoing), **Ingress** (incoming) and **Both**.
Apply	Click **Apply** to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the **Save** link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to reset the fields.

17

Link Aggregation

17.1 Overview

This chapter shows you how to logically aggregate physical links to form one logical, higher-bandwidth link.

Link aggregation (trunking) is the grouping of physical ports into one logical higher-capacity link. You may want to trunk ports if for example, it is cheaper to use multiple lower-speed links than to under-utilize a high-speed, but more costly, single-port link. However, the more ports you aggregate then the fewer available ports you have. A trunk group is one logical link containing multiple ports.

The beginning port of each trunk group must be physically connected to form a trunk group.

17.2 What You Can Do

- Use the **Link Aggregation Status** screen (Section 17.4 on page 153) to view ports you have configured to be in the trunk group, ports that are currently transmitting data as one logical link in the trunk group and so on.
- Use the **Link Aggregation Setting** screen (Section 17.5 on page 155) to configure to enable static link aggregation.
- Use the **Link Aggregation Control Protocol** screen (Section 17.6 on page 157) to enable Link Aggregation Control Protocol (LACP).

17.3 What You Need to Know

The Switch supports both static and dynamic link aggregation.

Note: In a properly planned network, it is recommended to implement static link aggregation only. This ensures increased network stability and control over the trunk groups on your Switch.

See Section 17.7.1 on page 158 for a static port trunking example.

17.3.1 Dynamic Link Aggregation

The Switch adheres to the IEEE 802.3ad standard for static and dynamic (LACP) port trunking.

The IEEE 802.3ad standard describes the Link Aggregation Control Protocol (LACP) for dynamically creating and managing trunk groups.

When you enable LACP link aggregation on a port, the port can automatically negotiate with the ports at the remote end of a link to establish trunk groups. LACP also allows port redundancy, that is, if an operational port fails, then one of the "standby" ports become operational without user intervention. Please note that:

- You must connect all ports point-to-point to the same Ethernet switch and configure the ports for LACP trunking.
- LACP only works on full-duplex links.
- All ports in the same trunk group must have the same media type, speed, duplex mode and flow control settings.

Configure trunk groups or LACP before you connect the Ethernet switch to avoid causing network topology loops.

17.3.2 Link Aggregation ID

LACP aggregation ID consists of the following information[1]:

Table 36 Link Aggregation ID: Local Switch

SYSTEM PRIORITY	MAC ADDRESS	KEY	PORT PRIORITY	PORT NUMBER
0000	00-00-00-00-00-00	0000	00	0000

Table 37 Link Aggregation ID: Peer Switch

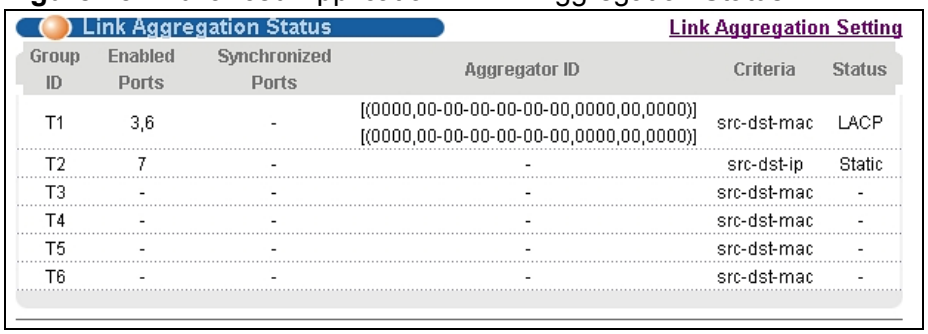
SYSTEM PRIORITY	MAC ADDRESS	KEY	PORT PRIORITY	PORT NUMBER
0000	00-00-00-00-00-00	0000	00	0000

1. Port Priority and Port Number are 0 as it is the aggregator ID for the trunk group, not the individual port.

17.4 Link Aggregation Status

Click **Advanced Application** > **Link Aggregation** in the navigation panel. The **Link Aggregation Status** screen displays by default. See Section 17.1 on page 151 for more information.

Figure 75 Advanced Application > Link Aggregation Status



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 38 Advanced Application > Link Aggregation Status

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Group ID	This field displays the group ID to identify a trunk group, that is, one logical link containing multiple ports.
Enabled Ports	These are the ports you have configured in the **Link Aggregation** screen to be in the trunk group. The port number(s) displays only when this trunk group is activated and there is a port belonging to this group.
Synchronized Ports	These are the ports that are currently transmitting data as one logical link in this trunk group.
Aggregator ID	Link Aggregator ID consists of the following: system priority, MAC address, key, port priority and port number. Refer to Section 17.3.2 on page 152 for more information on this field. The ID displays only when there is a port belonging to this trunk group and LACP is also enabled for this group.

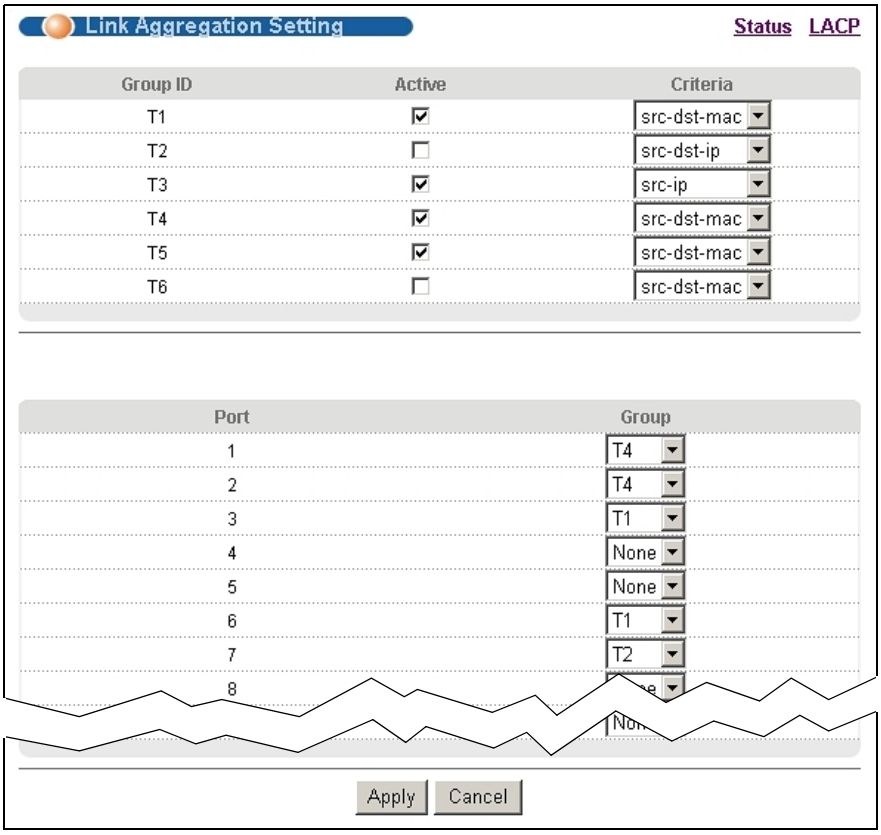
Table 38 Advanced Application > Link Aggregation Status (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Criteria	This shows the outgoing traffic distribution algorithm used in this trunk group. Packets from the same source and/or to the same destination are sent over the same link within the trunk. **src-mac** means the Switch distributes traffic based on the packet's source MAC address. **dst-mac** means the Switch distributes traffic based on the packet's destination MAC address. **src-dst-mac** means the Switch distributes traffic based on a combination of the packet's source and destination MAC addresses. **src-ip** means the Switch distributes traffic based on the packet's source IP address. **dst-ip** means the Switch distributes traffic based on the packet's destination IP address. **src-dst-ip** means the Switch distributes traffic based on a combination of the packet's source and destination IP addresses.
Status	This field displays how these ports were added to the trunk group. It displays: • **Static** - if the ports are configured as static members of a trunk group. • **LACP** - if the ports are configured to join a trunk group via LACP.

17.5 Link Aggregation Setting

Click **Advanced Application** > **Link Aggregation > Link Aggregation Setting** to display the screen shown next. See Section 17.1 on page 151 for more information on link aggregation.

Figure 76 Advanced Application > Link Aggregation > Link Aggregation Setting



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 39 Advanced Application > Link Aggregation > Link Aggregation Setting

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Link Aggregation Setting	This is the only screen you need to configure to enable static link aggregation.
Group ID	The field identifies the link aggregation group, that is, one logical link containing multiple ports.
Active	Select this option to activate a trunk group.

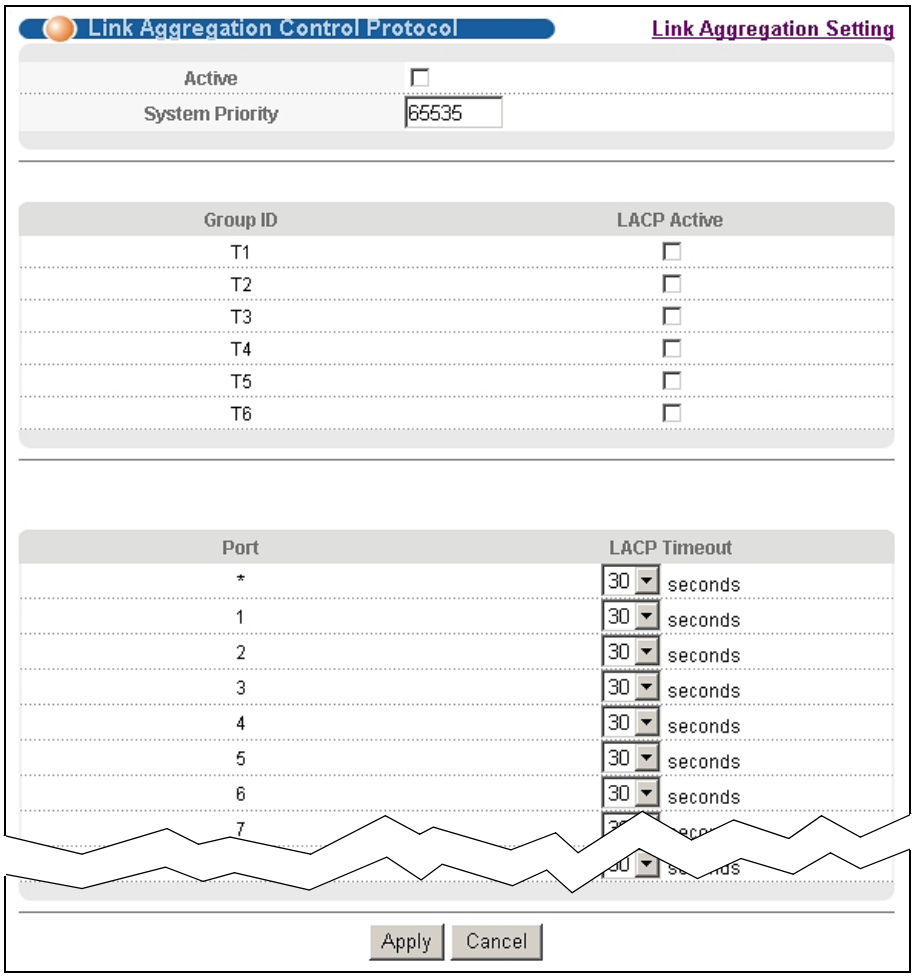
Table 39 Advanced Application > Link Aggregation > Link Aggregation Setting

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Criteria	Select the outgoing traffic distribution type. Packets from the same source and/or to the same destination are sent over the same link within the trunk. By default, the Switch uses the **src-dst-mac** distribution type. If the Switch is behind a router, the packet's destination or source MAC address will be changed. In this case, set the Switch to distribute traffic based on its IP address to make sure port trunking can work properly. Select **src-mac** to distribute traffic based on the packet's source MAC address. Select **dst-mac** to distribute traffic based on the packet's destination MAC address. Select **src-dst-mac** to distribute traffic based on a combination of the packet's source and destination MAC addresses. Select **src-ip** to distribute traffic based on the packet's source IP address. Select **dst-ip** to distribute traffic based on the packet's destination IP address. Select **src-dst-ip** to distribute traffic based on a combination of the packet's source and destination IP addresses.
Port	This field displays the port number.
Group	Select the trunk group to which a port belongs. Note: When you enable the port security feature on the Switch and configure port security settings for a port, you cannot include the port in an active trunk group.
Apply	Click **Apply** to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the **Save** link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to begin configuring this screen afresh.

17.6 Link Aggregation Control Protocol

Click **Advanced Application** > **Link Aggregation** > **Link Aggregation Setting** > **LACP** to display the screen shown next. See Section 17.3.1 on page 152 for more information on dynamic link aggregation.

Figure 77 Advanced Application > Link Aggregation > Link Aggregation Setting > LACP



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 40 Advanced Application > Link Aggregation > Link Aggregation Setting > LACP

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Link Aggregation Control Protocol	Note: Do not configure this screen unless you want to enable dynamic link aggregation.
Active	Select this checkbox to enable Link Aggregation Control Protocol (LACP).

Table 40 Advanced Application > Link Aggregation > Link Aggregation Setting > LACP (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
System Priority	LACP system priority is a number between 1 and 65,535. The switch with the lowest system priority (and lowest port number if system priority is the same) becomes the LACP "server". The LACP "server" controls the operation of LACP setup. Enter a number to set the priority of an active port using Link Aggregation Control Protocol (LACP). The smaller the number, the higher the priority level.
Group ID	The field identifies the link aggregation group, that is, one logical link containing multiple ports.
LACP Active	Select this option to enable LACP for a trunk.
Port	This field displays the port number.
*	Settings in this row apply to all ports. Use this row only if you want to make some settings the same for all ports. Use this row first to set the common settings and then make adjustments on a port-by-port basis. Note: Changes in this row are copied to all the ports as soon as you make them.
LACP Timeout	Timeout is the time interval between the individual port exchanges of LACP packets in order to check that the peer port in the trunk group is still up. If a port does not respond after three tries, then it is deemed to be "down" and is removed from the trunk. Set a short timeout (one second) for busy trunked links to ensure that disabled ports are removed from the trunk group as soon as possible. Select either 1 second or 30 seconds.
Apply	Click **Apply** to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the **Save** link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to begin configuring this screen afresh.

17.7 Technical Reference

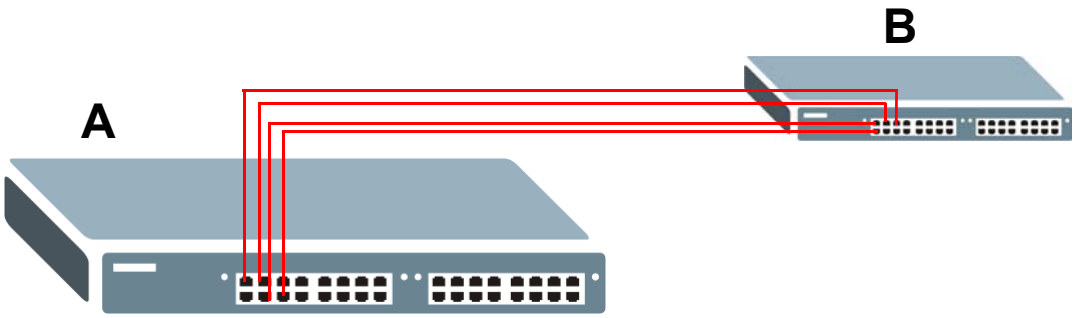
This section provides technical background information on the topics discussed in this chapter.

17.7.1 Static Trunking Example

This example shows you how to create a static port trunk group for ports 2-5.

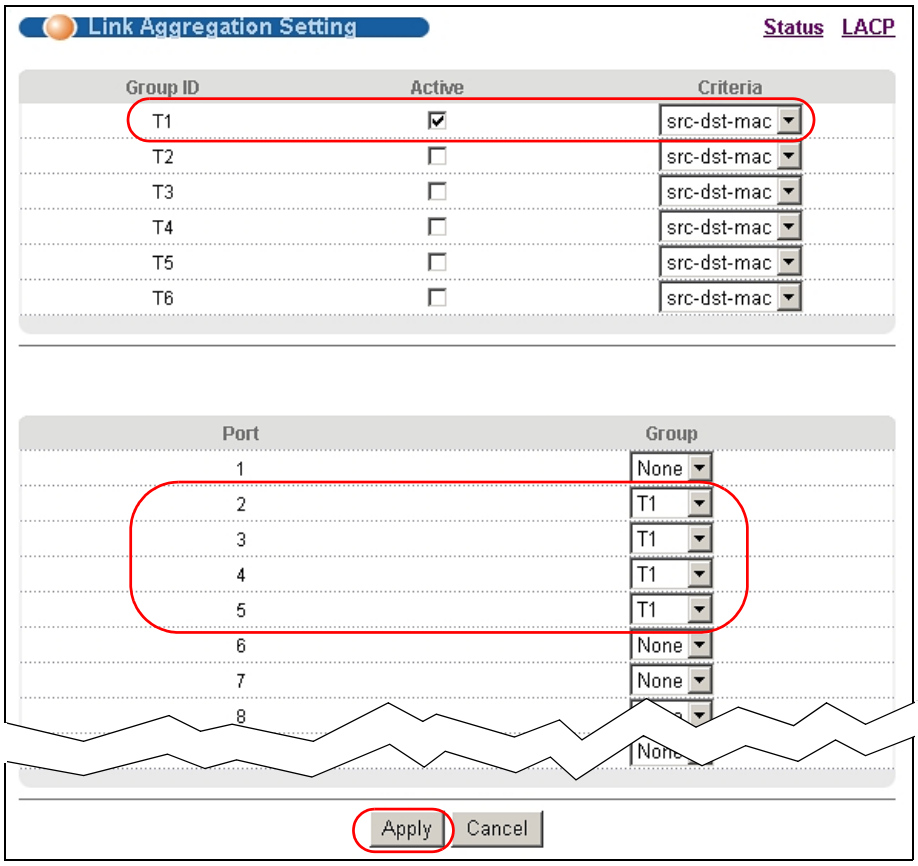
1 **Make your physical connections** - make sure that the ports that you want to belong to the trunk group are connected to the same destination. The following figure shows ports 2-5 on switch **A** connected to switch **B**.

Figure 78 Trunking Example - Physical Connections



2 **Configure static trunking** - Click **Advanced Application** > **Link Aggregation** > **Link Aggregation Setting**. In this screen activate trunk group **T1**, select the traffic distribution algorithm used by this group and select the ports that should belong to this group as shown in the figure below. Click **Apply** when you are done.

Figure 79 Trunking Example - Configuration Screen



Your trunk group 1 (**T1**) configuration is now complete.

18

Port Authentication

18.1 Overview

This chapter describes the IEEE 802.1x authentication method.

Port authentication is a way to validate access to ports on the Switch to clients based on an external server (authentication server). The Switch supports the following method for port authentication:

- **IEEE 802.1x**[2] - An authentication server validates access to a port based on a username and password provided by the user.

18.2 What You Can Do

- Use the **Port Authentication** screen (Section 18.4 on page 162) to check if IEEE 802.1x port authentication is activated.
- Use the **802.1x** screen (Section 18.5 on page 163) to activate IEEE 802.1x security.

18.3 What You Need to Know

IEEE 802.1x authentication uses the RADIUS (Remote Authentication Dial In User Service, RFC 2138, 2139) protocol to validate users. See Section 25.3.2 on page 202 for more information on configuring your RADIUS server settings.

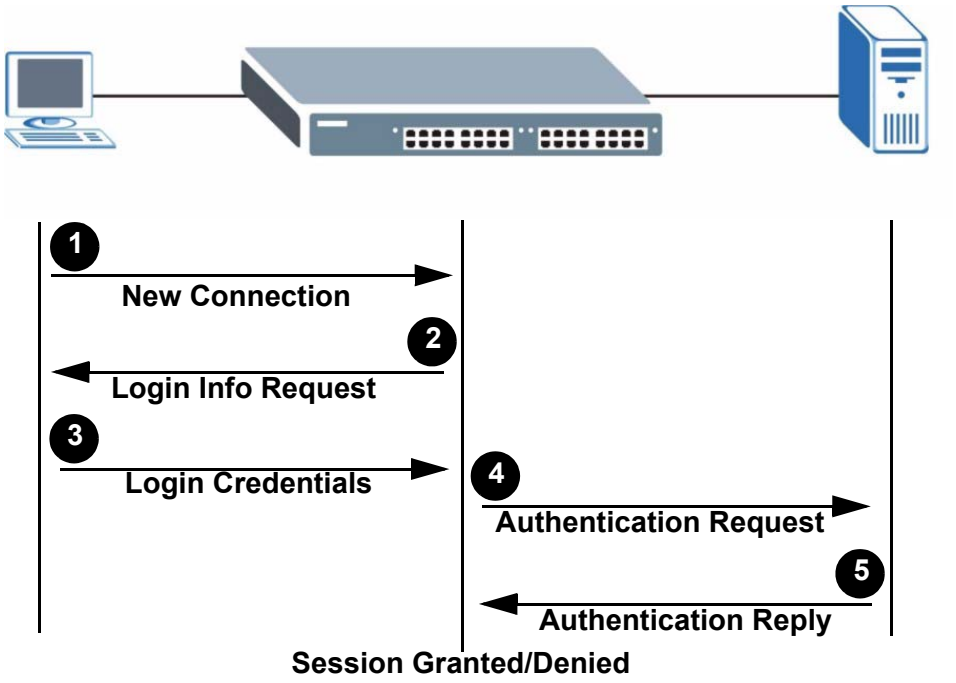
18.3.1 IEEE 802.1x Authentication

The following figure illustrates how a client connecting to a IEEE 802.1x authentication enabled port goes through a validation process. The Switch prompts the client for login information in the form of a user name and password.

2. At the time of writing, IEEE 802.1x is not supported by all operating systems. See your operating system documentation. If your operating system does not support 802.1x, then you may need to install 802.1x client software.

When the client provides the login credentials, the Switch sends an authentication request to a RADIUS server. The RADIUS server validates whether this client is allowed access to the port.

Figure 80 IEEE 802.1x Authentication Process

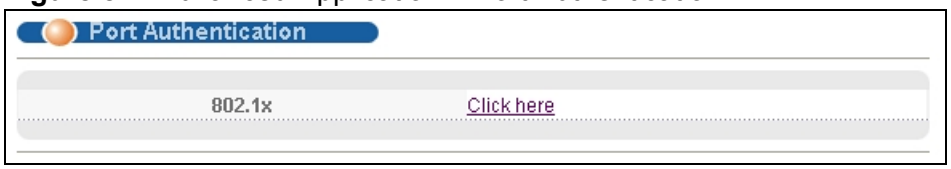


18.4 Port Authentication Configuration

To enable port authentication, first activate the port authentication method (both on the Switch and the port(s)) then configure the RADIUS server settings in the **Auth and Acct > Radius Server Setup** screen.

Click **Advanced Application** > **Port Authentication** in the navigation panel to display the screen as shown.

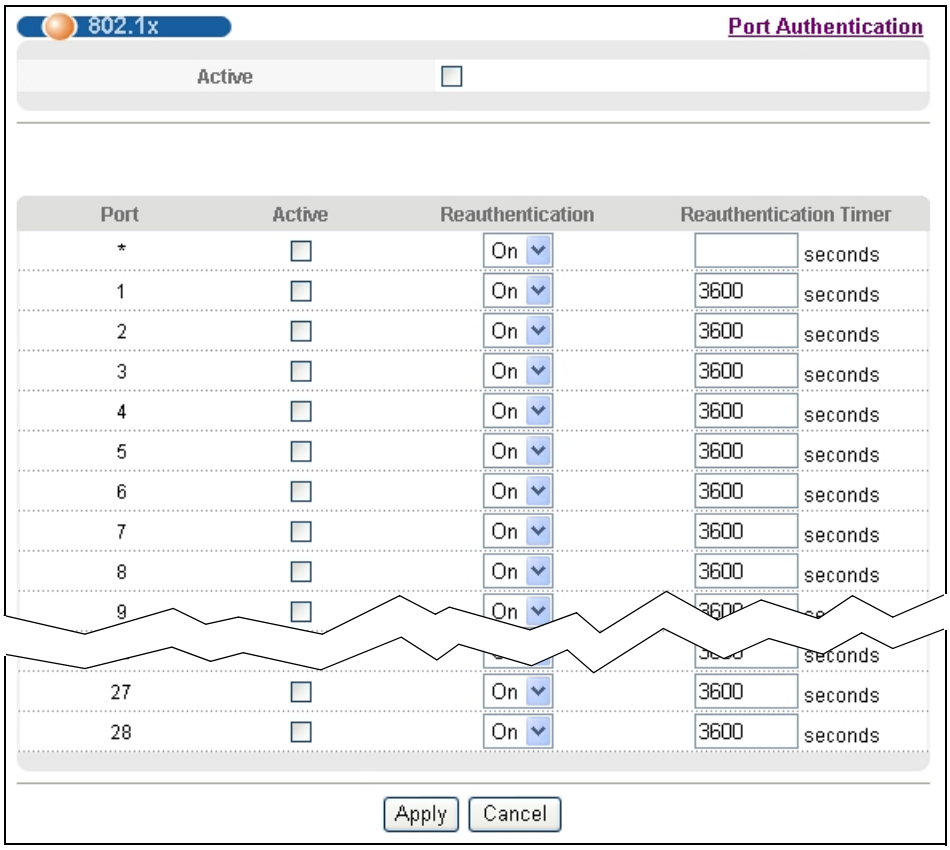
Figure 81 Advanced Application > Port Authentication



18.5 Activate IEEE 802.1x Security

Use this screen to activate IEEE 802.1x security. In the **Port Authentication** screen click **802.1x** to display the configuration screen as shown.

Figure 82 Advanced Application > Port Authentication > 802.1x



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 41 Advanced Application > Port Authentication > 802.1x

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Active	Select this check box to permit 802.1x authentication on the Switch. Note: You must first enable 802.1x authentication on the Switch before configuring it on each port.
Port	This field displays the port number.
*	Settings in this row apply to all ports. Use this row only if you want to make some settings the same for all ports. Use this row first to set the common settings and then make adjustments on a port-by-port basis. Note: Changes in this row are copied to all the ports as soon as you make them.

Table 41 Advanced Application > Port Authentication > 802.1x (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Active	Select this to permit 802.1x authentication on this port. You must first allow 802.1x authentication on the Switch before configuring it on each port.
Reauthentication	Specify if a subscriber has to periodically re-enter his or her username and password to stay connected to the port.
Reauthentication Timer	Specify how often a client has to re-enter his or her username and password to stay connected to the port.
Apply	Click **Apply** to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the **Save** link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to begin configuring this screen afresh.

19

Port Security

19.1 Overview

This chapter shows you how to set up port security.

Port security allows only packets with dynamically learned MAC addresses and/or configured static MAC addresses to pass through a port on the Switch. The Switch can learn up to 16K MAC addresses in total with no limit on individual ports other than the sum cannot exceed 16K.

For maximum port security, enable this feature, disable MAC address learning and configure static MAC address(es) for a port. It is not recommended you disable port security together with MAC address learning as this will result in many broadcasts. By default, MAC address learning is still enabled even though the port security is not activated.

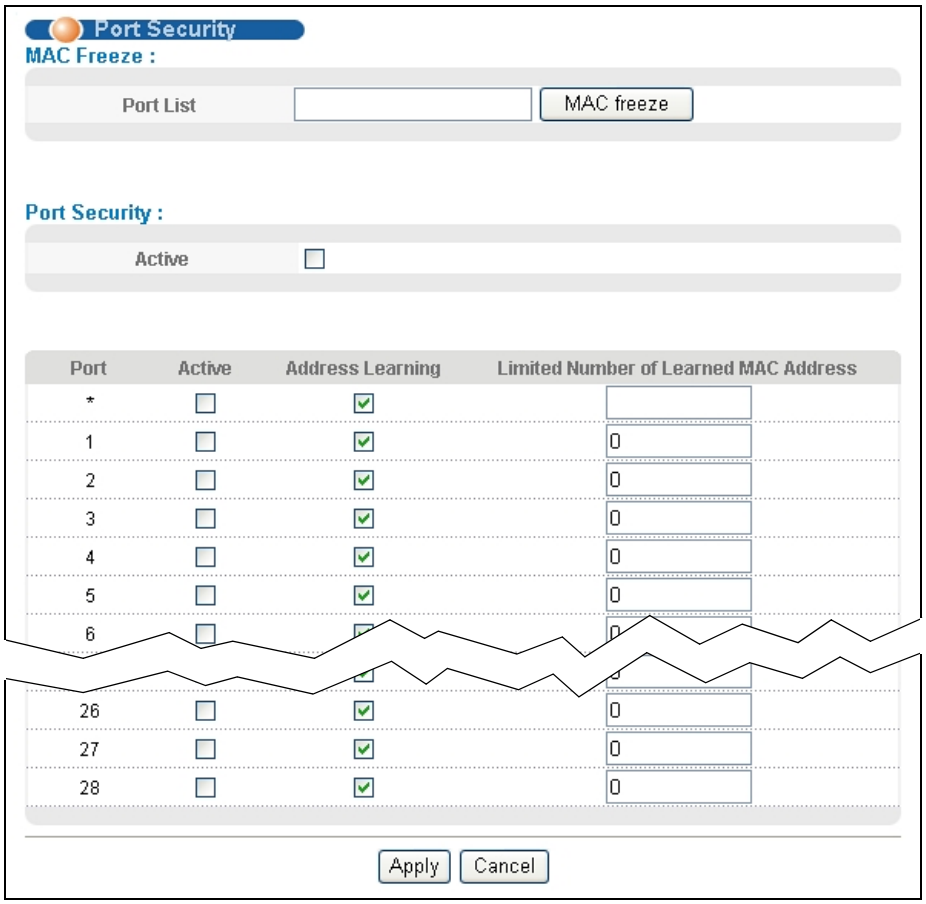
19.2 What You Can Do

Use the **Port Security** screen (Section 19.3 on page 166) to enable port security and disable MAC address learning. You can also enable the port security feature on a port.

19.3 Port Security Setup

Click **Advanced Application > Port Security** in the navigation panel to display the screen as shown.

Figure 83 Advanced Application > Port Security



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 42 Advanced Application > Port Security

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Port List	Enter the number of the port(s) (separated by a comma) on which you want to enable port security and disable MAC address learning. After you click **MAC freeze**, all previously learned MAC addresses on the specified port(s) will become static MAC addresses and display in the **Static MAC Forwarding** screen.
MAC freeze	Click **MAC freeze** to have the Switch automatically select the **Active** check boxes and clear the **Address Learning** check boxes only for the ports specified in the **Port list**.
Active	Select this option to enable port security on the Switch.
Port	This field displays the port number.

Table 42 Advanced Application > Port Security (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
*	Settings in this row apply to all ports. Use this row only if you want to make some settings the same for all ports. Use this row first to set the common settings and then make adjustments on a port-by-port basis. Note: Changes in this row are copied to all the ports as soon as you make them.
Active	Select this check box to enable the port security feature on this port. The Switch forwards packets whose MAC address(es) is in the MAC address table on this port. Packets with no matching MAC address(es) are dropped. Clear this check box to disable the port security feature. The Switch forwards all packets on this port.
Address Learning	MAC address learning reduces outgoing broadcast traffic. For MAC address learning to occur on a port, the port itself must be active with address learning enabled.
Limited Number of Learned MAC Address	Use this field to limit the number of (dynamic) MAC addresses that may be learned on a port. For example, if you set this field to "5" on port 2, then only the devices with these five learned MAC addresses may access port 2 at any one time. A sixth device would have to wait until one of the five learned MAC addresses aged out. MAC address aging out time can be set in the **Switch Setup** screen. The valid range is from "0" to "16384". "0" means this feature is disabled.
Apply	Click **Apply** to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the **Save** link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to begin configuring this screen afresh.

20

Classifier

20.1 Overview

This chapter introduces and shows you how to configure the packet classifier on the Switch. It also discusses Quality of Service (QoS) and classifier concepts as employed by the Switch.

20.2 What You Can Do

Use the **Classifier** screen (Section 20.4 on page 170) to define the classifiers and view a summary of the classifier configuration. After you define the classifier, you can specify actions (or policy) to act upon the traffic that matches the rules.

20.3 What You Need to Know

Quality of Service (QoS) refers to both a network's ability to deliver data with minimum delay, and the networking methods used to control the use of bandwidth. Without QoS, all traffic data is equally likely to be dropped when the network is congested. This can cause a reduction in network performance and make the network inadequate for time-critical application such as video-on-demand.

A classifier groups traffic into data flows according to specific criteria such as the source address, destination address, source port number, destination port number or incoming port number. For example, you can configure a classifier to select traffic from the same protocol port (such as Telnet) to form a flow.

Configure QoS on the Switch to group and prioritize application traffic and fine-tune network performance. Setting up QoS involves two separate steps:

1 Configure classifiers to sort traffic into different flows.

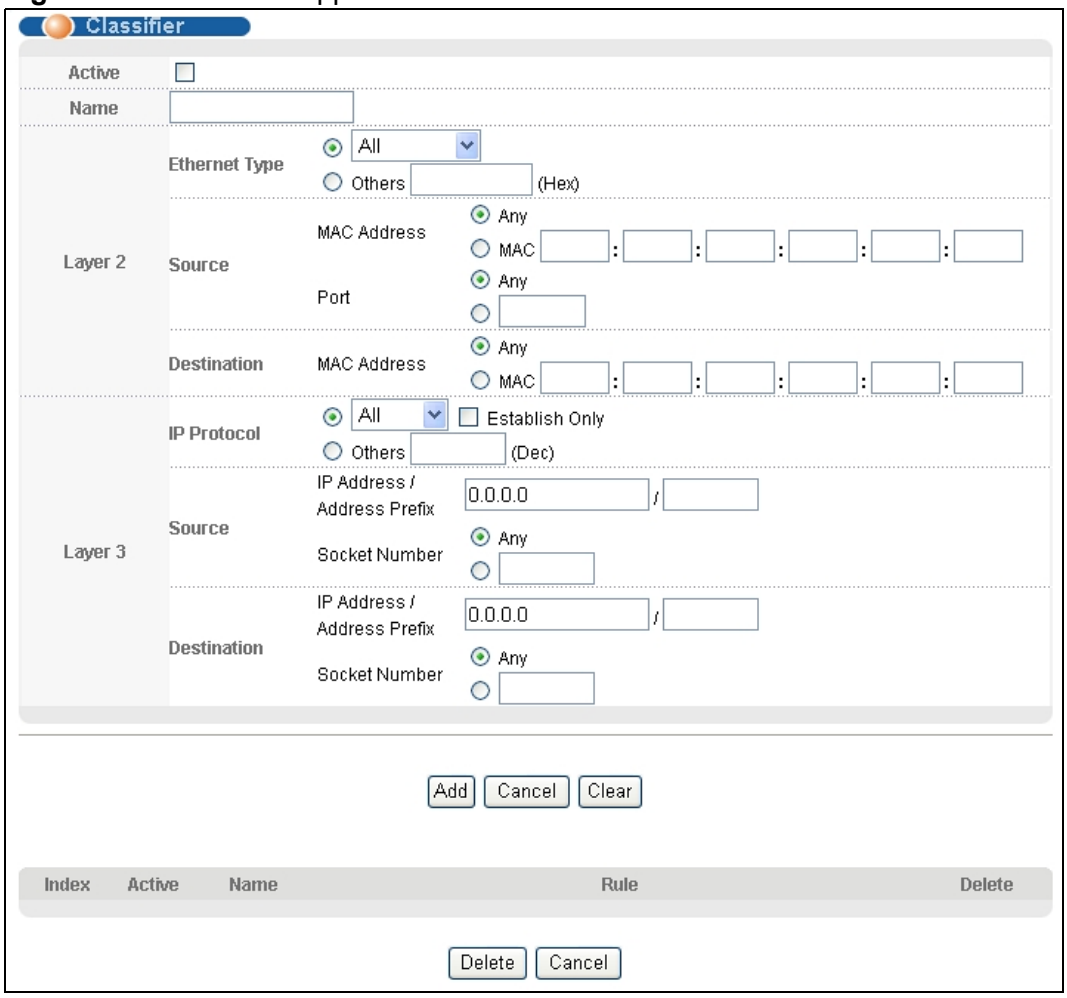
2 Configure policy rules to define actions to be performed on a classified traffic flow (refer to Chapter 21 on page 175 to configure policy rules).

20.4 Configuring the Classifier

Use the **Classifier** screen to define the classifiers. After you define the classifier, you can specify actions (or policy) to act upon the traffic that matches the rules. To configure policy rules, refer to Chapter 21 on page 175.

Click **Advanced Application** > **Classifier** in the navigation panel to display the configuration screen as shown.

Figure 84 Advanced Application > Classifier



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 43 Advanced Application > Classifier

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Active	Select this option to enable this rule.
Name	Enter a descriptive name for this rule for identifying purposes.
Layer 2 Specify the fields below to configure a layer 2 classifier.	
Ethernet Type	Select an Ethernet type or select **Other** and enter the Ethernet type number in hexadecimal value. Refer to Table 45 on page 173 for information.
Source	
MAC Address	Select **Any** to apply the rule to all MAC addresses. To specify a source, select the second choice and type a MAC address in valid MAC address format (six hexadecimal character pairs).
Port	Type the port number to which the rule should be applied. You may choose one port only or all ports (**Any**).
Destination	
MAC Address	Select **Any** to apply the rule to all MAC addresses. To specify a destination, select the second choice and type a MAC address in valid MAC address format (six hexadecimal character pairs).
Layer 3 Specify the fields below to configure a layer 3 classifier.	
IP Protocol	Select an IP protocol type or select **Other** and enter the protocol number in decimal value. Refer to Table 46 on page 173 for more information. You may select **Establish Only** for **TCP** protocol type. This means that the Switch will pick out the packets that are sent to establish TCP connections.
Source	
IP Address/ Address Prefix	Enter a source IP address in dotted decimal notation. Specify the address prefix by entering the number of ones in the subnet mask. A subnet mask can be represented in a 32-bit notation. For example, the subnet mask "255.255.255.0" can be represented as "11111111.11111111.11111111.00000000", and counting up the number of ones in this case results in 24.
Socket Number	Note: You must select either **UDP** or **TCP** in the **IP Protocol** field before you configure the socket numbers. Select **Any** to apply the rule to all TCP/UDP protocol port numbers or select the second option and enter a TCP/UDP protocol port number. Refer to Table 47 on page 173 for more information.
Destination	
IP Address/ Address Prefix	Enter a destination IP address in dotted decimal notation. Specify the address prefix by entering the number of ones in the subnet mask.

Table 43 Advanced Application > Classifier (continued)

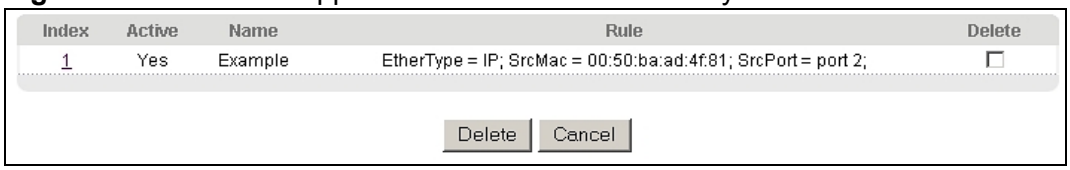
LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Socket Number	Note: You must select either **UDP** or **TCP** in the **IP Protocol** field before you configure the socket numbers. Select **Any** to apply the rule to all TCP/UDP protocol port numbers or select the second option and enter a TCP/UDP protocol port number. Refer to Table 47 on page 173 for more information.
Add	Click **Add** to insert the entry in the summary table below and save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the **Save** link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to reset the fields back to your previous configuration.
Clear	Click **Clear** to set the above fields back to the factory defaults.

20.4.1 Viewing and Editing Classifier Configuration

To view a summary of the classifier configuration, scroll down to the summary table at the bottom of the **Classifier** screen. To change the settings of a rule, click a number in the **Index** field.

Note: When two rules conflict with each other, a higher layer rule has priority over lower layer rule.

Figure 85 Advanced Application > Classifier: Summary Table



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 44 Classifier: Summary Table

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Index	This field displays the index number of the rule. Click an index number to edit the rule.
Active	This field displays **Yes** when the rule is activated and **No** when it is deactivated.
Name	This field displays the descriptive name for this rule. This is for identification purpose only.
Rule	This field displays a summary of the classifier rule's settings.
Delete	Click **Delete** to remove the selected entry from the summary table.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to clear the **Delete** check boxes.

The following table shows some other common Ethernet types and the corresponding protocol number.

Table 45 Common Ethernet Types and Protocol Numbers

ETHERNET TYPE	PROTOCOL NUMBER
IP ETHII	0800
X.75 Internet	0801
NBS Internet	0802
ECMA Internet	0803
Chaosnet	0804
X.25 Level 3	0805
XNS Compat	0807
Banyan Systems	0BAD
BBN Simnet	5208
IBM SNA	80D5
AppleTalk AARP	80F3

In the Internet Protocol there is a field, called "Protocol", to identify the next level protocol. The following table shows some common protocol types and the corresponding protocol number. Refer to http://www.iana.org/assignments/protocol-numbers for a complete list.

Table 46 Common IP Protocol Types and Protocol Numbers

PROTOCOL TYPE	PROTOCOL NUMBER
ICMP	1
TCP	6
UDP	17
EGP	8
L2TP	115

Some of the most common TCP and UDP port numbers are:

Table 47 Common TCP and UDP Port Numbers

PROTOCOL NAME	TCP/UDP PORT NUMBER
FTP	21
Telnet	23
SMTP	25
DNS	53
HTTP	80
POP3	110

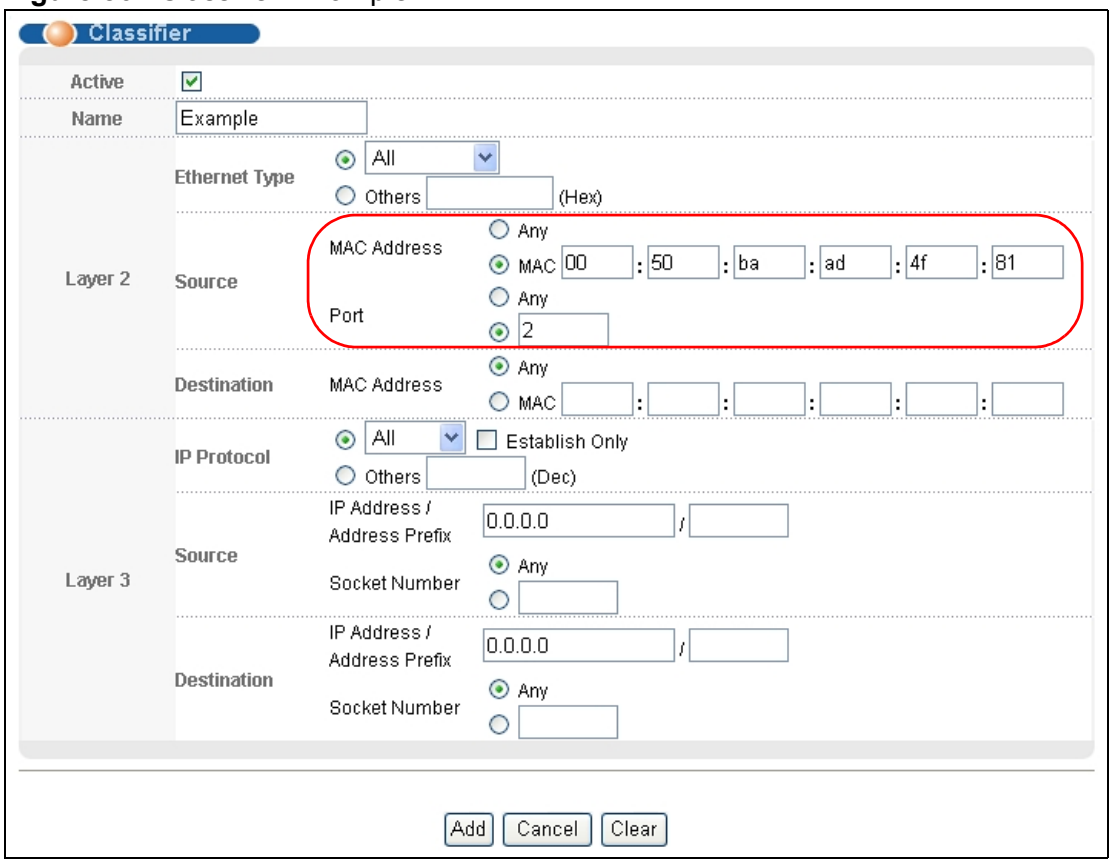
See Appendix B on page 341 for information on commonly used port numbers.

20.5 Classifier Example

The following screen shows an example where you configure a classifier that identifies all traffic from MAC address 00:50:ba:ad:4f:81 on port 2.

After you have configured a classifier, you can configure a policy (in the **Policy** screen) to define action(s) on the classified traffic flow.

Figure 86 Classifier: Example



21

Policy Rule

21.1 Policy Rules Overview

This chapter shows you how to configure policy rules.

A classifier distinguishes traffic into flows based on the configured criteria (refer to Chapter 20 on page 169 for more information). A policy rule ensures that a traffic flow gets the requested treatment in the network.

21.2 What You Can Do

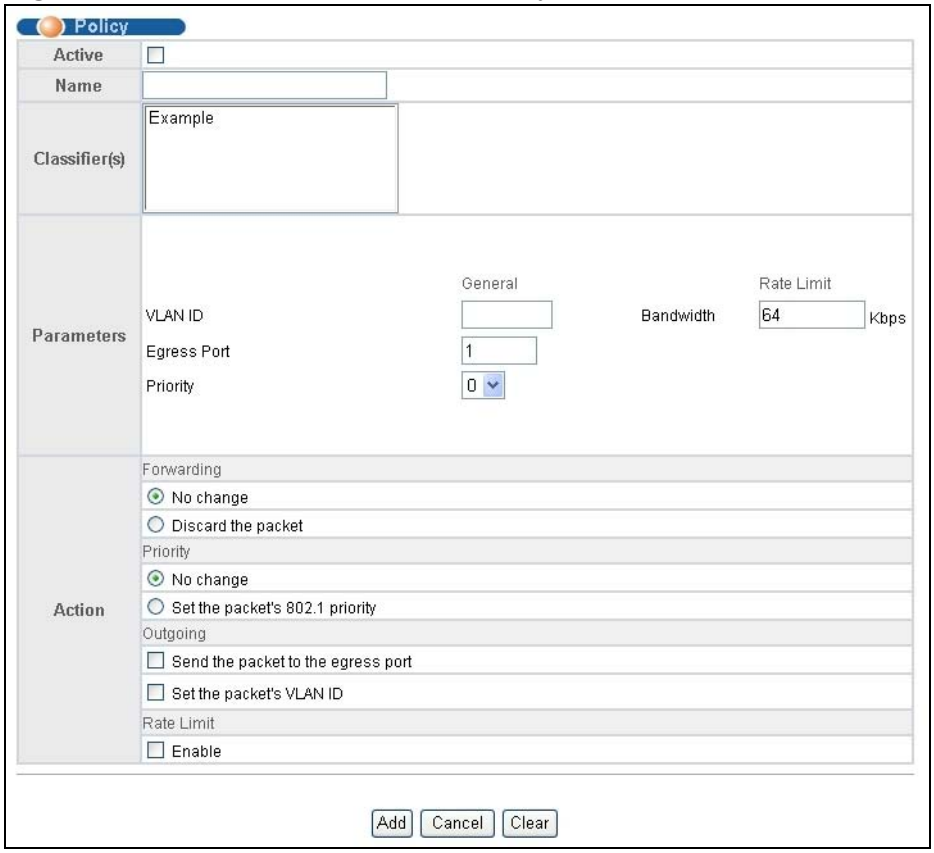
Use the **Policy** screen (Section 21.3 on page 175) to enable the policy and display the active classifier(s) you configure in the **Classifier** screen.

21.3 Configuring Policy Rules

You must first configure a classifier in the **Classifier** screen. Refer to Section 20.4 on page 170 for more information.

Click **Advanced Applications** > **Policy Rule** in the navigation panel to display the screen as shown.

Figure 87 Advanced Application > Policy Rule



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 48 Advanced Application > Policy Rule

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Active	Select this option to enable the policy.
Name	Enter a descriptive name for identification purposes.
Classifier(s)	This field displays the active classifier(s) you configure in the **Classifier** screen. Select the classifier(s) to which this policy rule applies. To select more than one classifier, press [SHIFT] and select the choices at the same time.
Parameters Set the fields below for this policy. You only have to set the field(s) that is related to the action(s) you configure in the **Action** field.	
General	
VLAN ID	Specify a VLAN ID number.
Egress Port	Type the number of an outgoing port.
Priority	Specify a priority level.

Table 48 Advanced Application > Policy Rule (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Rate Limit	You can configure the desired bandwidth available to a traffic flow. Traffic that exceeds the maximum bandwidth allocated (in cases where the network is congested) is dropped.
Bandwidth	Specify the bandwidth in kilobit per second (Kbps). Enter a number between 64 and 1000000.
Action Specify the action(s) the Switch takes on the associated classified traffic flow. Note: You can specify only one action (pair) in a policy rule. To have the Switch take multiple actions on the same traffic flow, you need to define multiple classifiers with the same criteria and apply different policy rules. Say you have several classifiers that identify the same traffic flow and you specify a different policy rule for each. If their policy actions conflict (**Discard the packet**, **Send the packet to the egress port** and **Rate Limit**), the Switch only applies the policy rules with the **Discard the packet** and **Send the packet to the egress port** actions depending on the classifier names. The longer the classifier name, the higher the classifier priority. If two classifier names are the same length, the bigger the character, the higher the classifier priority. The lowercase letters (such as a and b) have higher priority than the capitals (such as A and B) in the classifier name. For example, the classifier with the name of class 2, class a or class B takes priority over the classifier with the name of class 1 or class A. Let's say you set two classifiers (Class 1 and Class 2) and both identify all traffic from MAC address 11:22:33:44:55:66 on port 3. If Policy 1 applies to Class 1 and the action is to drop the packets, Policy 2 applies to Class 2 and the action is to foward the packets to the egress port, the Switch will forward the packets. If Policy 1 applies to Class 1 and the action is to drop the packets, Policy 2 applies to Class 2 and the action is to enable bandwidth limitation, the Switch will discard the packets immediately. If Policy 1 applies to Class 1 and the action is to foward the packets to the egress port, Policy 2 applies to Class 2 and the action is to enable bandwidth limitation, the Switch will forward the packets.	
Forwarding	Select **No change** to forward the packets. Select **Discard the packet** to drop the packets.
Priority	Select **No change** to keep the priority setting of the frames. Select **Set the packet's 802.1 priority** to replace the packet's 802.1 priority field with the value you set in the Priority field.
Outgoing	Select **Send the packet to the egress port** to send the packet to the egress port. Select **Set the packet's VLAN ID** to replace the VLAN ID of the packets with the value you configure in the **VLAN ID** field.
Rate Limit	Select **Enable** to activate bandwidth limitation on the traffic flow(s).

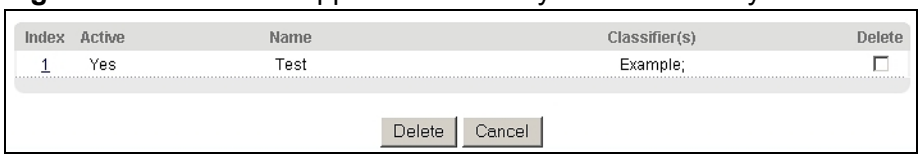
Table 48 Advanced Application > Policy Rule (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Add	Click **Add** to inset the entry to the summary table below and save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the **Save** link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to reset the fields back to your previous configuration.
Clear	Click **Clear** to set the above fields back to the factory defaults.

21.3.1 Viewing and Editing Policy Configuration

To view a summary of the classifier configuration, scroll down to the summary table at the bottom of the **Policy** screen. To change the settings of a rule, click a number in the **Index** field.

Figure 88 Advanced Application > Policy Rule: Summary Table



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

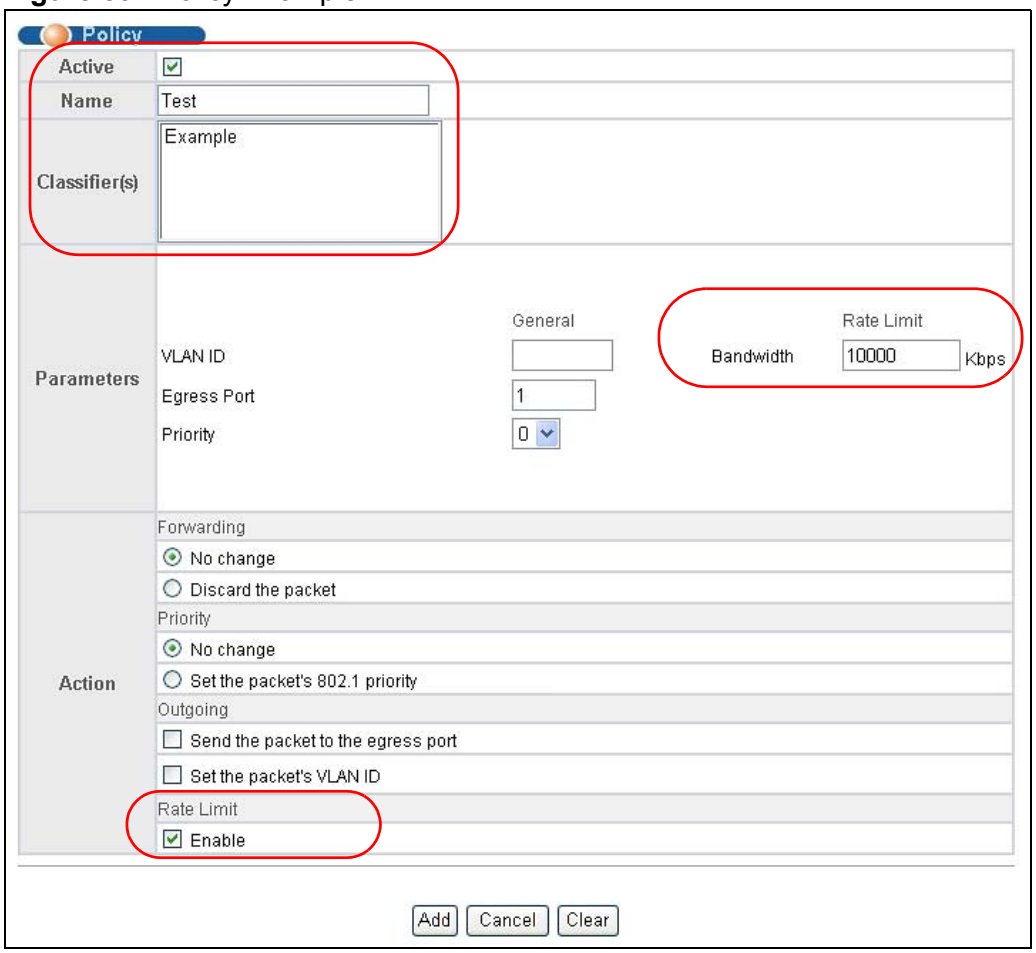
Table 49 Advanced Application > Policy Rule: Summary Table

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Index	This field displays the policy index number. Click an index number to edit the policy.
Active	This field displays **Yes** when policy is activated and **No** when is it deactivated.
Name	This field displays the name you have assigned to this policy.
Classifier(s)	This field displays the name(s) of the classifier to which this policy applies.
Delete	Click **Delete** to remove the selected entry from the summary table.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to clear the **Delete** check boxes.

21.4 Policy Example

The figure below shows an example **Policy** screen where you configure a policy to limit bandwidth on a traffic flow classified using the **Example** classifier (refer to Section 20.5 on page 174).

Figure 89 Policy Example



22

Queuing Method

22.1 Overview

This chapter introduces the queuing methods supported.

Queuing is used to help solve performance degradation when there is network congestion. Use the **Queuing Method** screen to configure queuing algorithms for outgoing traffic. See also **Priority Queue Assignment** in **Switch Setup** and **802.1p Priority** in **Port Setup** for related information.

22.2 What You Can Do

Use the **Queueing Method** screen (Section 22.4 on page 183) set priorities for the queues of the Switch. This distributes bandwidth across the different traffic queues.

22.3 What You Need to Know

Queuing algorithms allow switches to maintain separate queues for packets from each individual source or flow and prevent a source from monopolizing the bandwidth.

22.3.1 Strictly Priority Queuing

Strictly Priority Queuing (SPQ) services queues based on priority only. As traffic comes into the Switch, traffic on the highest priority queue, Q7 is transmitted first. When that queue empties, traffic on the next highest-priority queue, Q6 is transmitted until Q6 empties, and then traffic is transmitted on Q5 and so on. If higher priority queues never empty, then traffic on lower priority queues never gets sent. SP does not automatically adapt to changing network requirements.

22.3.2 Weighted Fair Queuing

Weighted Fair Queuing is used to guarantee each queue's minimum bandwidth based on its bandwidth weight (portion) (the number you configure in the Weight field) when there is traffic congestion. WFQ is activated only when a port has more traffic than it can handle. Queues with larger weights get more guaranteed bandwidth than queues with smaller weights. This queuing mechanism is highly efficient in that it divides any available bandwidth across the different traffic queues. By default, the weight for Q0 is 1, for Q1 is 2, for Q2 is 3, and so on. Guaranteed quantum is calculated as Queue Weight x 2048 bytes.

22.3.3 Weighted Round Robin Scheduling (WRR)

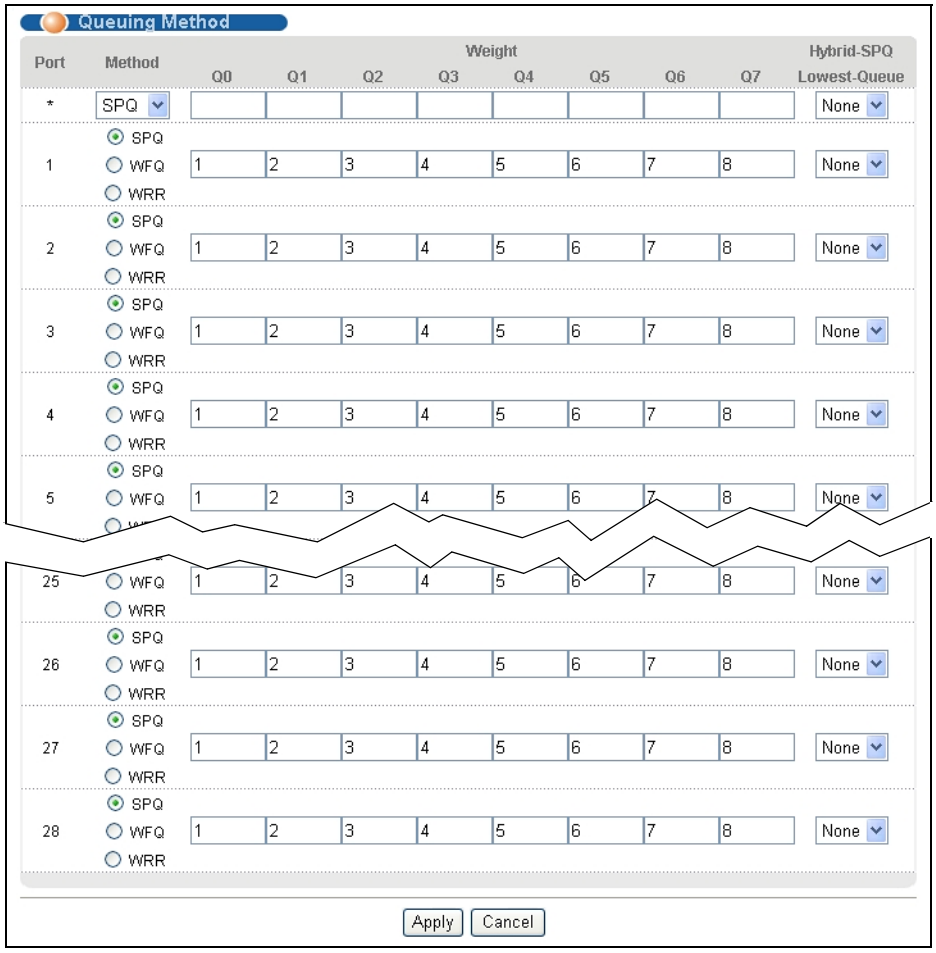
Round Robin Scheduling services queues on a rotating basis and is activated only when a port has more traffic than it can handle. A queue is a given an amount of bandwidth irrespective of the incoming traffic on that port. This queue then moves to the back of the list. The next queue is given an equal amount of bandwidth, and then moves to the end of the list; and so on, depending on the number of queues being used. This works in a looping fashion until a queue is empty.

Weighted Round Robin Scheduling (WRR) uses the same algorithm as round robin scheduling, but services queues based on their priority and queue weight (the number you configure in the queue **Weight** field) rather than a fixed amount of bandwidth. WRR is activated only when a port has more traffic than it can handle. Queues with larger weights get more service than queues with smaller weights. This queuing mechanism is highly efficient in that it divides any available bandwidth across the different traffic queues and returns to queues that have not yet emptied.

22.4 Configuring Queuing

Click **Advanced Application** > **Queuing Method** in the navigation panel.

Figure 90 Advanced Application > Queuing Method



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 50 Advanced Application > Queuing Method

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Port	This label shows the port you are configuring.
*	Settings in this row apply to all ports. Use this row only if you want to make some settings the same for all ports. Use this row first to set the common settings and then make adjustments on a port-by-port basis. Note: Changes in this row are copied to all the ports as soon as you make them.

Table 50 Advanced Application > Queuing Method (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Method	Select **SPQ** (Strictly Priority Queuing), **WFQ** (Weighted Fair Queuing) or **WRR** (Weighted Round Robin). Strictly Priority Queuing services queues based on priority only. When the highest priority queue empties, traffic on the next highest-priority queue begins. Q7 has the highest priority and Q0 the lowest. Weighted Fair Queuing is used to guarantee each queue's minimum bandwidth based on their bandwidth portion (weight) (the number you configure in the **Weight** field). Queues with larger weights get more guaranteed bandwidth than queues with smaller weights. Weighted Round Robin Scheduling services queues on a rotating basis based on their queue weight (the number you configure in the queue **Weight** field). Queues with larger weights get more service than queues with smaller weights.
Weight	When you select **WFQ** or **WRR** enter the queue weight here. Bandwidth is divided across the different traffic queues according to their weights.
Hybrid-SPQ Lowest-Queue	This field is applicable only when you select **WFQ** or **WRR**. Select a queue (**Q0** to **Q7**) to have the Switch use **SPQ** to service the subsequent queue(s) after and including the specified queue for the port. For example, if you select **Q5**, the Switch services traffic on **Q5**, **Q6** and **Q7** using **SPQ**. Select **None** to always use **WFQ** or **WRR** for the port.
Apply	Click **Apply** to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the **Save** link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to begin configuring this screen afresh.

23

VLAN Stacking

23.1 Overview

This chapter shows you how to configure VLAN stacking on your Switch. See the chapter on VLANs for more background information on Virtual LAN.

A service provider can use VLAN stacking (also known as Q-in-Q) to allow it to distinguish multiple customers VLANs, even those with the same (customer-assigned) VLAN ID, within its network.

23.2 What You Can Do

- Use the **VLAN Stacking** screen (Section 23.4 on page 186) to enable VLAN stacking on the Switch, select a service provider VLAN stacking tag type and assign service provider IDs for frames received on ports.
- Use the **SVLAN** screen (Section 23.5 on page 187) to configure up to 64 service provider's VLANs.

23.3 What You Need to Know

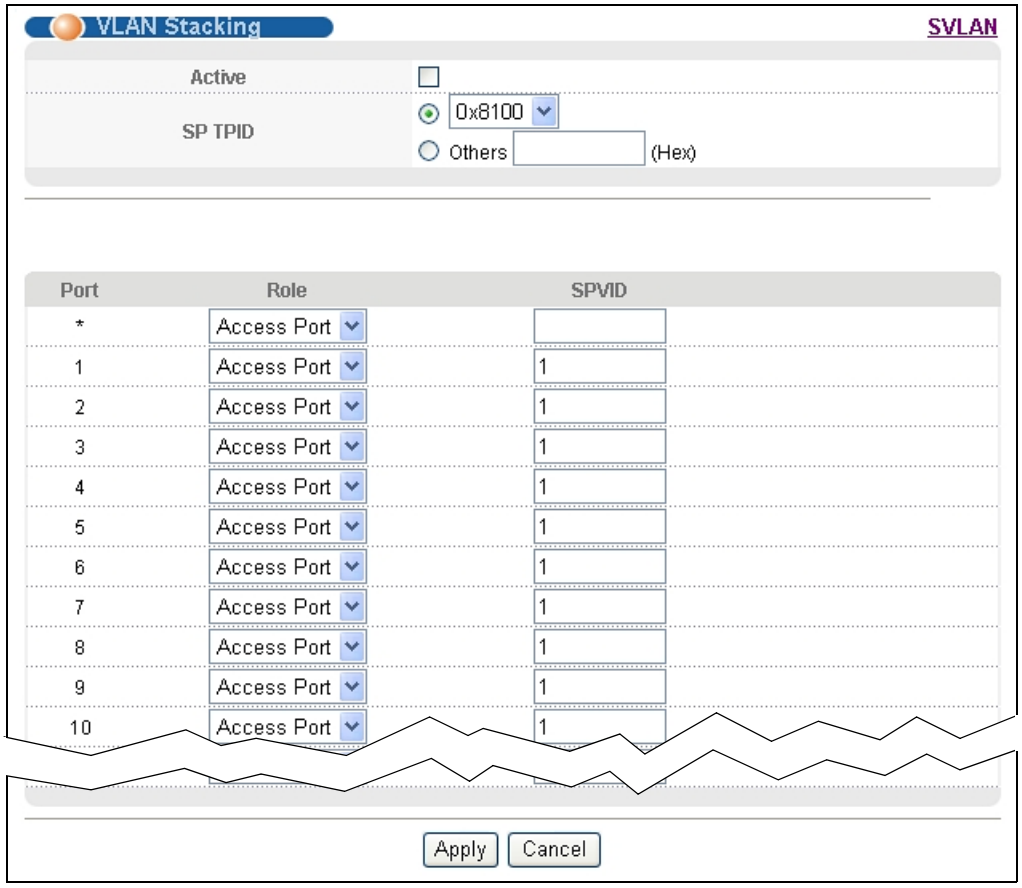
Use VLAN stacking to add an outer VLAN tag to the inner IEEE 802.1Q tagged frames that enter the network. By tagging the tagged frames ("double-tagged" frames), the service provider can manage up to 4,094 VLAN groups with each group containing up to 4,094 customer VLANs. This allows a service provider to provide different service, based on specific VLANs, for many different customers.

A service provider's customers may require a range of VLANs to handle multiple applications. A service provider's customers can assign their own inner VLAN tags on ports for these applications. The service provider can assign an outer VLAN tag for each customer. Therefore, there is no VLAN tag overlap among customers, so traffic from different customers is kept separate.

23.4 Configuring VLAN Stacking

Click **Advanced Application > VLAN Stacking** to display the screen as shown.

Figure 91 Advanced Application > VLAN Stacking



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 51 Advanced Application > VLAN Stacking

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Active	Select this checkbox to enable VLAN stacking on the Switch.
SP TPID	TPID (Tag Protocol Identifier) is a standard Ethernet type code identifying the frame and indicates whether the frame carries IEEE 802.1Q tag information. SP TPID (Service Provider Tag Protocol Identifier) is the service provider VLAN stacking tag type. Choose **0x8100** or **0x9100** from the drop-down list box or select **Others** and then enter a four-digit hexadecimal number from 0x0000 to 0xFFFF. 0x denotes a hexadecimal number. It does not have to be typed in the **Others** text field.
Port	The port number identifies the port you are configuring.

Table 51 Advanced Application > VLAN Stacking (continued)

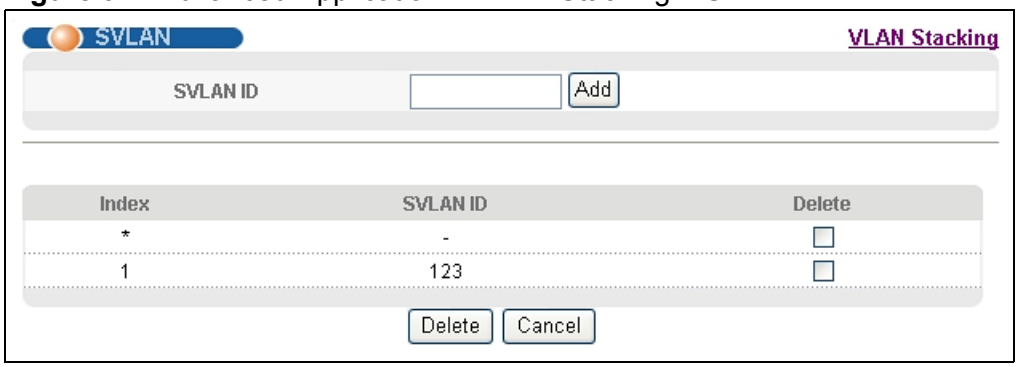
LABEL	DESCRIPTION
*	Settings in this row apply to all ports. Use this row only if you want to make some settings the same for all ports. Use this row first to set the common settings and then make adjustments on a port-by-port basis. Note: Changes in this row are copied to all the ports as soon as you make them.
Role	Select **Access Port** for ingress ports at the edge of the service provider's network. Select **Tunnel Port** (available for Gigabit ports only) for egress ports at the edge of the service provider's network. The Switch adds **SP TPID** and the corresponding ingress port's **SPVID** to all outgoing frames transmitting on the **Tunnel Port**. In order to support VLAN stacking on a port, the port must be able to allow frames of 1526 Bytes (1522 Bytes + 4 Bytes for the second tag) to pass through it.
SPVID	**SPVID** is the service provider's VLAN ID (the outer VLAN tag). Enter the service provider ID (from 1 to 4094) for frames received on this port. See Chapter 9 on page 87 for more background information on VLAN ID.
Apply	Click **Apply** to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the **Save** link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to begin configuring this screen afresh.

23.5 Configuring SVLAN

Use this screen to configure up to 64 service provider's VLANs. If an incoming frame received on a **Tunnel Port** is untagged or its service provider's VLAN ID is not configured in this screen, the Switch drops the frame.

Click the **SVLAN** link in the **VLAN Stacking** screen.

Figure 92 Advanced Application > VLAN Stacking > SVLAN



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 52 Advanced Application > VLAN Stacking > SVLAN

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
SVLAN ID	Enter a service provider's VLAN ID (from 1 to 4094) that should be carried in the incoming frames received on a **Tunnel Port**.
Add	Click **Add** to insert the entry in the summary table below and save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the **Save** link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Index	This is the index number of the entry.
SVLAN ID	This is the service VLAN ID.
Delete	Check the entry(ies) that you want to remove in the **Delete** column and then click the **Delete** button.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to clear the **Delete** check boxes.

23.6 Technical Reference

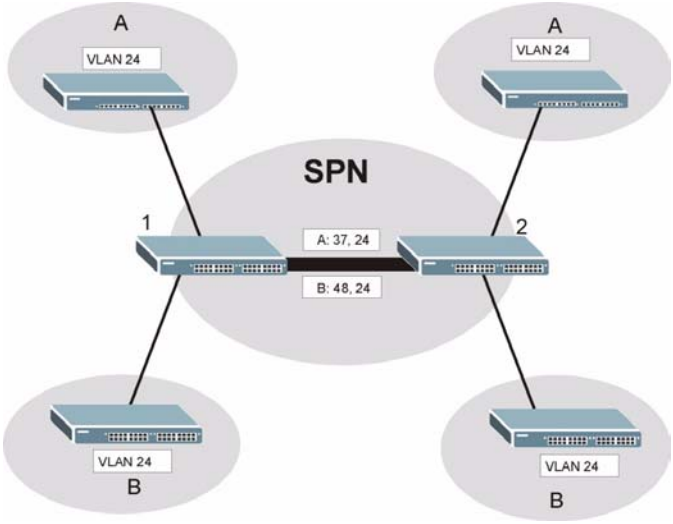
This section provides technical background information on the topics discussed in this chapter.

23.6.1 VLAN Stacking Example

In the following example figure, both **A** and **B** are Service Provider's Network (SPN) customers with VPN tunnels between their head offices and branch offices respectively. Both have an identical VLAN tag for their VLAN group. The service provider can separate these two VLANs within its network by adding tag 37 to

distinguish customer **A** and tag 48 to distinguish customer **B** at edge device **1** and then stripping those tags at edge device **2** as the data frames leave the network.

Figure 93 VLAN Stacking Example



23.6.2 VLAN Stacking Port Roles

Each port can have three VLAN stacking "roles", **Access Port** and **Tunnel Port** (the latter is for Gigabit ports only).

- Select **Access Port** for ingress ports on the service provider's edge devices (**1** and **2** in the VLAN stacking example figure). The incoming frame is treated as "untagged" and forwarded to the VLAN group that its PVID define.

Note: Static VLAN **Tx Tagging** MUST be disabled on a port where you choose **Access Port**.

- Select **Tunnel Port** (available for Gigabit ports only) for egress ports at the edge of the service provider's network. The Switch adds the configured SP TPID and the corresponding ingress port's SP VID to the outgoing frames before transmitting them on a **Tunnel Port**. All VLANs belonging to a customer can be aggregated into a single service provider's VLAN (using the outer VLAN tag defined by SP VID). See Section 23.6.3 on page 190 for information about SP TPID and SP VID.

  The Switch checks all incoming frames received on a **Tunnel Port**. The Switch drops the frame whose SP VID is not in the **SVLAN** table and/or SP TPID is different to the one configured on the Switch.

Note: Static VLAN **Tx Tagging** MUST be enabled on a port where you choose **Tunnel Port**.

Note: When you enable VLAN stacking on the Switch, the **Access Port** and **Tunnel Port** should be in the same customer VLAN (static VLAN) to communicate with each other.

23.6.3 VLAN Tag Format

A VLAN tag (service provider VLAN stacking or customer IEEE 802.1Q) consists of the following three fields.

Table 53 VLAN Tag Format

TPID	Priority	VID

TPID (Tag Protocol Identifier) is a standard Ethernet type code identifying the frame and indicates that whether the frame carries IEEE 802.1Q tag information. The value of this field is 0x8100 as defined in IEEE 802.1Q. Other vendors may use a different value, such as 0x9100.

SP TPID (Service Provider Tag Protocol Identifier) is the service provider VLAN stacking tag type.

- If the VLAN stacking port role is **Tunnel Port**, then the Switch discards all incoming frames on the service provider's edge devices (**1** and **2** in the VLAN stacking example figure) that have an **SP TPID** different to the one configured on the Switch. The Switch adds the **SP TPID** tag to all outgoing frames sent through the **Tunnel Port** on the service provider's edge devices (**1** and **2** in the VLAN stacking example figure).

Priority refers to the IEEE 802.1p standard that allows the service provider to prioritize traffic based on the class of service (CoS) the customer has paid for.

- On the Switch, configure priority level of inner IEEE 802.1Q tag in the **Port Setup** screen.
- "0" is the lowest priority level and "7" is the highest.

VID is the VLAN ID. **SP VID** is the VID for the second (service provider's) VLAN tag.

23.6.4 Frame Format

The frame format for an untagged Ethernet frame, a single-tagged IEEE 802.1Q frame (customer) and a "double-tagged" 802.1Q frame (service provider) is shown next.

Configure the fields as highlighted in the Switch **VLAN Stacking** screen.

Table 54 Single and Double Tagged 802.11Q Frame Format

Untagged Ethernet frame							DA	SA	Len/ Etype	Data	FCS
IEEE 802.1Q customer tagged frame				DA	SA	**TPID**	**Priority**	**VID**	Len/ Etype	Data	FCS
Double-tagged frame	DA	SA	**SP TPID**	**Priority**	**VID**	**TPID**	**Priority**	**VID**	Len/ Etype	Data	FCS

Table 55 802.1Q Frame

DA	Destination Address	Priority	802.1p Priority
SA	Source Address	Len/ Etype	Length and type of Ethernet frame
(SP)TPID	(Service Provider) Tag Protocol IDentifier	Data	Frame data
VID	VLAN ID	FCS	Frame Check Sequence

24

Multicast

24.1 Overview

This chapter shows you how to configure various multicast features.

Traditionally, IP packets are transmitted in one of either two ways - Unicast (1 sender to 1 recipient) or Broadcast (1 sender to everybody on the network). Multicast delivers IP packets to just a group of hosts on the network.

IGMP (Internet Group Management Protocol) is a network-layer protocol used to establish membership in a multicast group - it is not used to carry user data. Refer to RFC 1112, RFC 2236 and RFC 3376 for information on IGMP versions 1, 2 and 3 respectively.

24.2 What You Can Do

- Use the **Multicast Status** screen (Section 24.4 on page 195) to view multicast group information.
- Use the **Multicast Setting** screen (Section 24.5 on page 196) to enable IGMP snooping to forward group multicast traffic only to ports that are members of that group.
- Use the **IGMP Snooping VLAN** screen (Section 24.6 on page 198) to Configure how the Switch learns multicast group membership information and add VLANs upon which the Switch is to perform IGMP snooping.

24.3 What You Need to Know

Read on for concepts on Multicasting that can help you configure the screens in this chapter.

24.3.1 IP Multicast Addresses

In IPv4, a multicast address allows a device to send packets to a specific group of hosts (multicast group) in a different subnetwork. A multicast IP address represents a traffic receiving group, not individual receiving devices. IP addresses in the Class D range (224.0.0.0 to 239.255.255.255) are used for IP multicasting. Certain IP multicast numbers are reserved by IANA for special purposes (see the IANA web site for more information).

24.3.2 IGMP Snooping

A Switch can passively snoop on IGMP packets transferred between IP multicast routers/switches and IP multicast hosts to learn the IP multicast group membership. It checks IGMP packets passing through it, picks out the group registration information, and configures multicasting accordingly. IGMP snooping allows the Switch to learn multicast groups without you having to manually configure them.

The Switch forwards multicast traffic destined for multicast groups (that it has learned from IGMP snooping or that you have manually configured) to ports that are members of that group. IGMP snooping generates no additional network traffic, allowing you to significantly reduce multicast traffic passing through your Switch.

24.3.3 IGMP Snooping and VLANs

The Switch can perform IGMP snooping on up to 16 VLANs. You can configure the Switch to automatically learn multicast group membership of any VLANs. The Switch then performs IGMP snooping on the first 16 VLANs that send IGMP packets. This is referred to as auto mode. Alternatively, you can specify the VLANs that IGMP snooping should be performed on. This is referred to as fixed mode. In fixed mode the Switch does not learn multicast group membership of any VLANs other than those explicitly added as an IGMP snooping VLAN.

24.4 Multicast Status

Click **Advanced Applications > Multicast** to display the screen as shown. This screen shows the multicast group information. See Section 24.1 on page 193 for more information on multicasting.

Figure 94 Advanced Application > Multicast

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

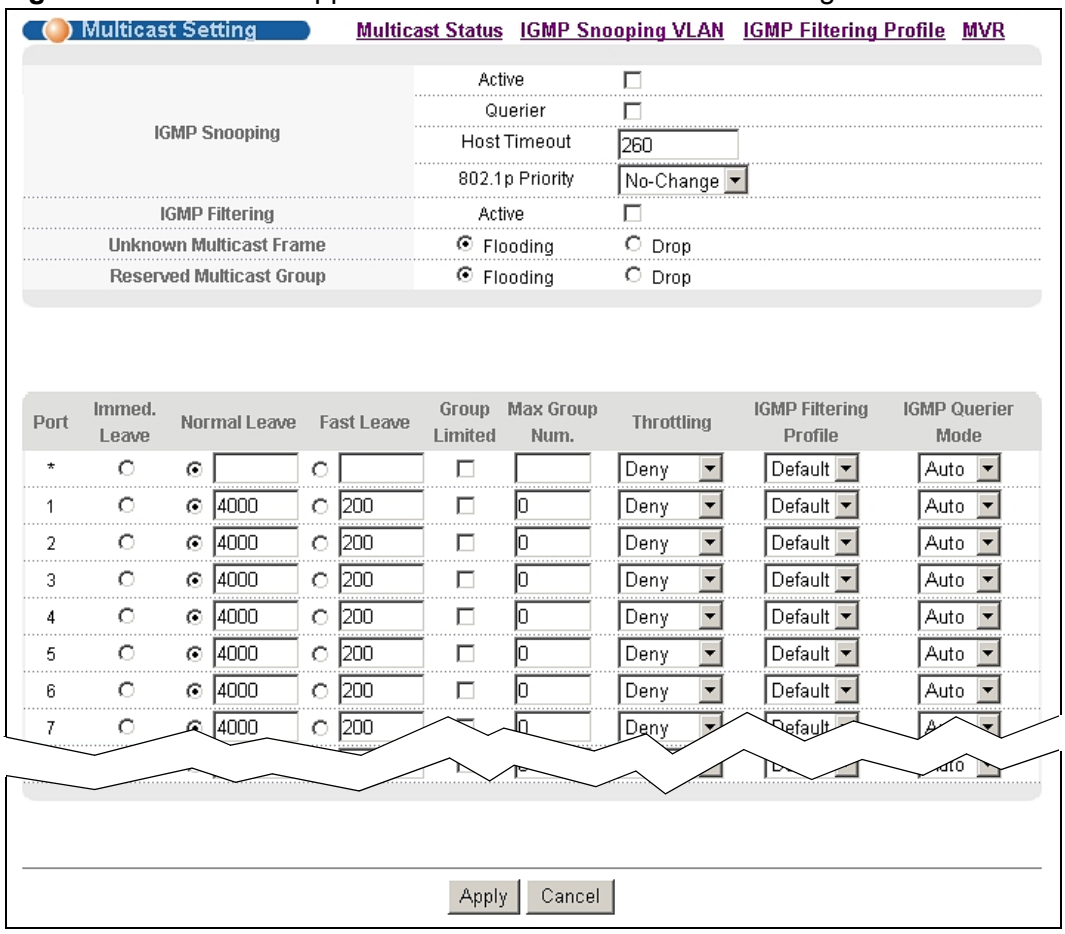
Table 56 Advanced Application > Multicast Status

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Index	This is the index number of the entry.
VID	This field displays the multicast VLAN ID.
Port	This field displays the port number that belongs to the multicast group.
Multicast Group	This field displays IP multicast group addresses.

24.5 Multicast Setting

Click **Advanced Applications > Multicast > Multicast Setting** link to display the screen as shown. See Section 24.1 on page 193 for more information on multicasting.

Figure 95 Advanced Application > Multicast > Multicast Setting



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 57 Advanced Application > Multicast > Multicast Setting

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
IGMP Snooping	Use these settings to configure IGMP Snooping.
Active	Select **Active** to enable IGMP Snooping to forward group multicast traffic only to ports that are members of that group.
Querier	Select this option to allow the Switch to send IGMP General Query messages to the VLANs with the multicast hosts attached.
Host Timeout	Specify the time (from 1 to 16,711,450) in seconds that elapses before the Switch removes an IGMP group membership entry if it does not receive report messages from the port.

Table 57 Advanced Application > Multicast > Multicast Setting (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
802.1p Priority	Select a priority level (0-7) to which the Switch changes the priority in outgoing IGMP control packets. Otherwise, select **No-Change** to not replace the priority.
Unknown Multicast Frame	Specify the action to perform when the Switch receives an unknown multicast frame. Select **Drop** to discard the frame(s). Select **Flooding** to send the frame(s) to all ports.
Reserved Multicast Group	The IP address range of 224.0.0.0 to 224.0.0.255 are reserved for multicasting on the local network only. For example, 224.0.0.1 is for all hosts on a local network segment and 224.0.0.9 is used to send RIP routing information to all RIP v2 routers on the same network segment. A multicast router will not forward a packet with the destination IP address within this range to other networks. See the IANA web site for more information. The layer 2 multicast MAC addresses used by Cisco layer 2 protocols, 01:00:0C:CC:CC:CC and 01:00:0C:CC:CC:CD, are also included in this group. Specify the action to perform when the Switch receives a frame with a reserved multicast address. Select **Drop** to discard the frame(s). Select **Flooding** to send the frame(s) to all ports.
Port	This field displays the port number.
*	Settings in this row apply to all ports. Use this row only if you want to make some settings the same for all ports. Use this row first to set the common settings and then make adjustments on a port-by-port basis. Note: Changes in this row are copied to all the ports as soon as you make them.
Immed. Leave	Select this option to set the Switch to remove this port from the multicast tree when an IGMP version 2 leave message is received on this port. Select this option if there is only one host connected to this port.
Normal Leave	Enter an IGMP normal leave timeout value (from 200 to 6,348,800) in miliseconds. Select this option to have the Switch use this timeout to update the forwarding table for the port. This defines how many seconds the Switch waits for an IGMP report before removing an IGMP snooping membership entry when an IGMP leave message is received on this port from a host.
Fast Leave	Enter an IGMP fast leave timeout value (from 200 to 6,348,800) in miliseconds. Select this option to have the Switch use this timeout to update the forwarding table for the port. This defines how many seconds the Switch waits for an IGMP report before removing an IGMP snooping membership entry when an IGMP leave message is received on this port from a host.
Group Limited	Select this option to limit the number of multicast groups this port is allowed to join.

Table 57 Advanced Application > Multicast > Multicast Setting (continued)

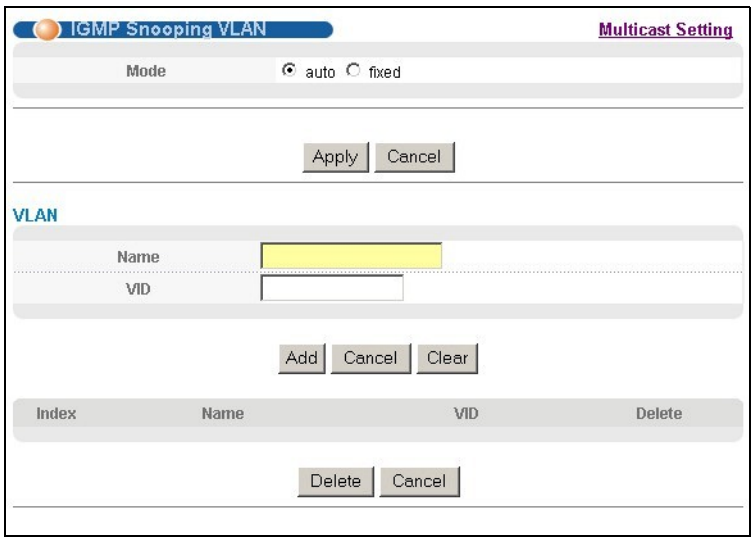
LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Max Group Num.	Enter the number of multicast groups this port is allowed to join.
Throttling	IGMP throttling controls how the Switch deals with the IGMP reports when the maximum number of the IGMP groups a port can join is reached. Select **Deny** to drop any new IGMP join report received on this port until an existing multicast forwarding table entry is aged out. Select **Replace** to replace an existing entry in the multicast forwarding table with the new IGMP report(s) received on this port.
IGMP Querier Mode	The Switch treats an IGMP query port as being connected to an IGMP multicast router (or server). The Switch forwards IGMP join or leave packets to an IGMP query port. Select **Auto** to have the Switch use the port as an IGMP query port if the port receives IGMP query packets. Select **Fixed** to have the Switch always use the port as an IGMP query port. Select this when you connect an IGMP multicast server to the port. Select **Edge** to stop the Switch from using the port as an IGMP query port. The Switch will not keep any record of an IGMP router being connected to this port. The Switch does not forward IGMP join or leave packets to this port.
Apply	Click **Apply** to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the **Save** link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to begin configuring this screen afresh.

24.6 IGMP Snooping VLAN

Click **Advanced Applications > Multicast** in the navigation panel. Click the **Multicast Setting** link and then the **IGMP Snooping VLAN** link to display the

screen as shown. See Section 24.3.3 on page 194 for more information on IGMP Snooping VLAN.

Figure 96 Advanced Application > Multicast > Multicast Setting > IGMP Snooping VLAN



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 58 Advanced Application > Multicast > Multicast Setting > IGMP Snooping VLAN

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Mode	Select **auto** to have the Switch learn multicast group membership information of any VLANs automatically. Select **fixed** to have the Switch only learn multicast group membership information of the VLAN(s) that you specify below. In either **auto** or **fixed** mode, the Switch can learn up to 16 VLANs . The Switch drops any IGMP control messages which do not belong to these 16 VLANs. Note: You must also enable IGMP snooping in the **Multicast Setting** screen first.
Apply	Click **Apply** to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the **Save** link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to begin configuring this screen afresh.
VLAN	Use this section of the screen to add VLANs upon which the Switch is to perform IGMP snooping.
Name	Enter the descriptive name of the VLAN for identification purposes.
VID	Enter the ID of a static VLAN; the valid range is between 1 and 4094.

Table 58 Advanced Application > Multicast > Multicast Setting > IGMP Snooping VLAN (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Add	Click **Add** to insert the entry in the summary table below and save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the **Save** link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to reset the fields to your previous configuration.
Clear	Click this to clear the fields.
Index	This is the number of the IGMP snooping VLAN entry in the table.
Name	This field displays the descriptive name for this VLAN group.
VID	This field displays the ID number of the VLAN group.
Delete	Check the rule(s) that you want to remove in the **Delete** column, then click the **Delete** button.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to clear the **Delete** check boxes.

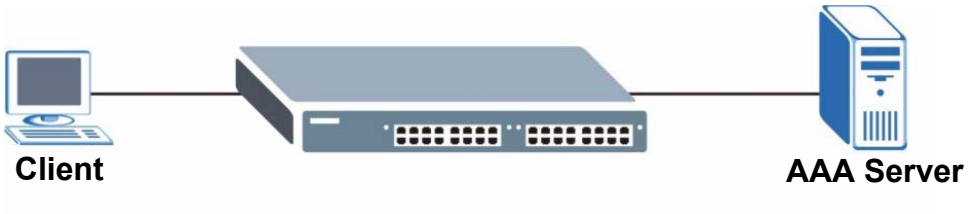
25 AAA

25.1 Overview

This chapter describes how to configure authentication and authorization settings on the Switch.

The external servers that perform authentication and authorization functions are known as AAA servers. The Switch supports RADIUS (Remote Authentication Dial-In User Service, see Section 25.3.2 on page 202) and TACACS+ (Terminal Access Controller Access-Control System Plus, see Section 25.3.2 on page 202) as external authentication and authorization servers.

Figure 97 AAA Server



25.2 What You Can Do

- Use the **AAA** screen (Section 25.4 on page 203) to enable authentication and authorization or both of them on the Switch.
- use the **Radio Server Setup** screen (Section 25.5 on page 203) to configure your RADIUS server settings.
- Use the **TACACS+ Server Setup** screen (Section 25.6 on page 206) to configure your TACACS+ authentication settings.
- Use the **AAA Setup** screen (Section 25.7 on page 208) to specify the methods used to authenticate users accessing the Switch and specify which database the Switch should use first.

25.3 What You Need to Know

Authentication is the process of determining who a user is and validating access to the Switch. The Switch can authenticate users who try to log in based on user accounts configured on the Switch itself. The Switch can also use an external authentication server to authenticate a large number of users

Authorization is the process of determining what a user is allowed to do. Different user accounts may have higher or lower privilege levels associated with them. For example, user A may have the right to create new login accounts on the Switch but user B cannot. The Switch can authorize users based on user accounts configured on the Switch itself or it can use an external server to authorize a large number of users.

25.3.1 Local User Accounts

By storing user profiles locally on the Switch, your Switch is able to authenticate and authorize users without interacting with a network AAA server. However, there is a limit on the number of users you may authenticate in this way (See Chapter 32 on page 271).

25.3.2 RADIUS and TACACS+

RADIUS and TACACS+ are security protocols used to authenticate users by means of an external server instead of (or in addition to) an internal device user database that is limited to the memory capacity of the device. In essence, RADIUS and TACACS+ authentication both allow you to validate an unlimited number of users from a central location.

The following table describes some key differences between RADIUS and TACACS+.

Table 59 RADIUS vs. TACACS+

	RADIUS	TACACS+
Transport Protocol	UDP (User Datagram Protocol)	TCP (Transmission Control Protocol)
Encryption	Encrypts the password sent for authentication.	All communication between the client (the Switch) and the TACACS server is encrypted.

25.4 AAA Screens

The **AAA** screens allow you to enable authentication and authorization or both of them on the Switch. First, configure your authentication server settings (RADIUS, TACACS+ or both) and then set up the authentication priority, activate authorization.

Click **Advanced Application** > **AAA** in the navigation panel to display the screen as shown.

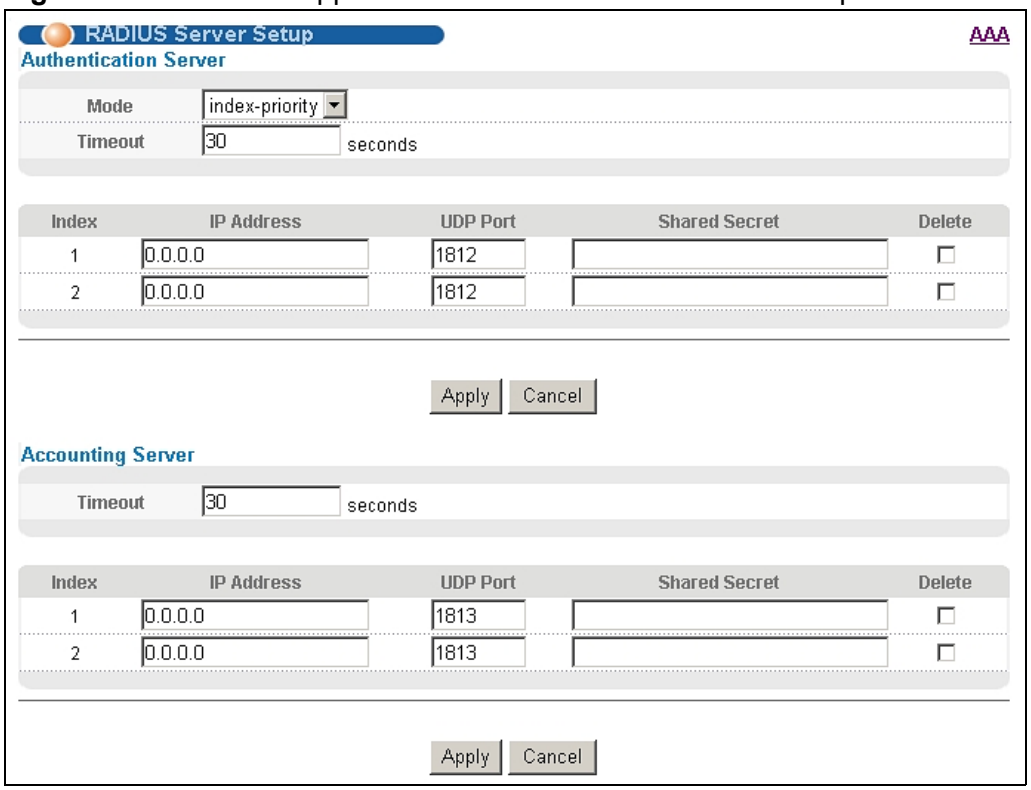
Figure 98 Advanced Application > AAA

25.5 RADIUS Server Setup

Use this screen to configure your RADIUS server settings. See Section 25.3.2 on page 202 for more information on RADIUS servers and Section 25.8.2 on page 212 for RADIUS attributes utilized by the authentication features on the Switch.

Click on the **RADIUS Server Setup** link in the **AAA** screen to view the screen as shown.

Figure 99 Advanced Application > AAA > RADIUS Server Setup



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 60 Advanced Application > AAA > RADIUS Server Setup

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Authentication Server	Use this section to configure your RADIUS authentication settings.
Mode	This field is only valid if you configure multiple RADIUS servers. Select **index-priority** and the Switch tries to authenticate with the first configured RADIUS server, if the RADIUS server does not respond then the Switch tries to authenticate with the second RADIUS server. Select **round-robin** to alternate between the RADIUS servers that it sends authentication requests to.
Timeout	Specify the amount of time in seconds that the Switch waits for an authentication request response from the RADIUS server. If you are using **index-priority** for your authentication and you are using two RADIUS servers then the timeout value is divided between the two RADIUS servers. For example, if you set the timeout value to 30 seconds, then the Switch waits for a response from the first RADIUS server for 15 seconds and then tries the second RADIUS server.
Index	This is a read-only number representing a RADIUS server entry.

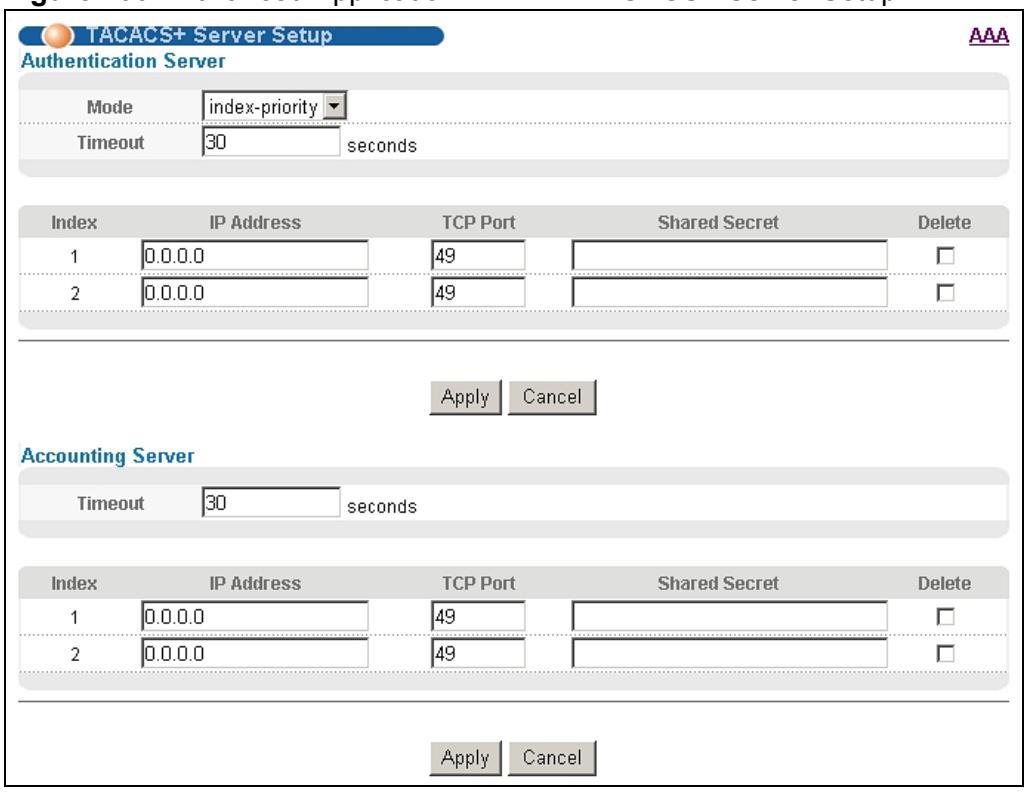
Table 60 Advanced Application > AAA > RADIUS Server Setup (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
IP Address	Enter the IP address of an external RADIUS server in dotted decimal notation.
UDP Port	The default port of a RADIUS server for authentication is **1812**. You need not change this value unless your network administrator instructs you to do so.
Shared Secret	Specify a password (up to 32 alphanumeric characters) as the key to be shared between the external RADIUS server and the Switch. This key is not sent over the network. This key must be the same on the external RADIUS server and the Switch.
Delete	Check this box if you want to remove an existing RADIUS server entry from the Switch. This entry is deleted when you click **Apply**.
Apply	Click **Apply** to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the **Save** link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to begin configuring this screen afresh.
Apply	Click **Apply** to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the **Save** link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to begin configuring this screen afresh.

25.6 TACACS+ Server Setup

Use this screen to configure your TACACS+ server settings. See Section 25.3.2 on page 202 for more information on TACACS+ servers. Click on the **TACACS+ Server Setup** link in the **AAA** screen to view the screen as shown.

Figure 100 Advanced Application > AAA > TACACS+ Server Setup



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 61 Advanced Application > AAA > TACACS+ Server Setup

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Authentication Server	Use this section to configure your TACACS+ authentication settings.
Mode	This field is only valid if you configure multiple TACACS+ servers. Select **index-priority** and the Switch tries to authenticate with the first configured TACACS+ server, if the TACACS+ server does not respond then the Switch tries to authenticate with the second TACACS+ server. Select **round-robin** to alternate between the TACACS+ servers that it sends authentication requests to.

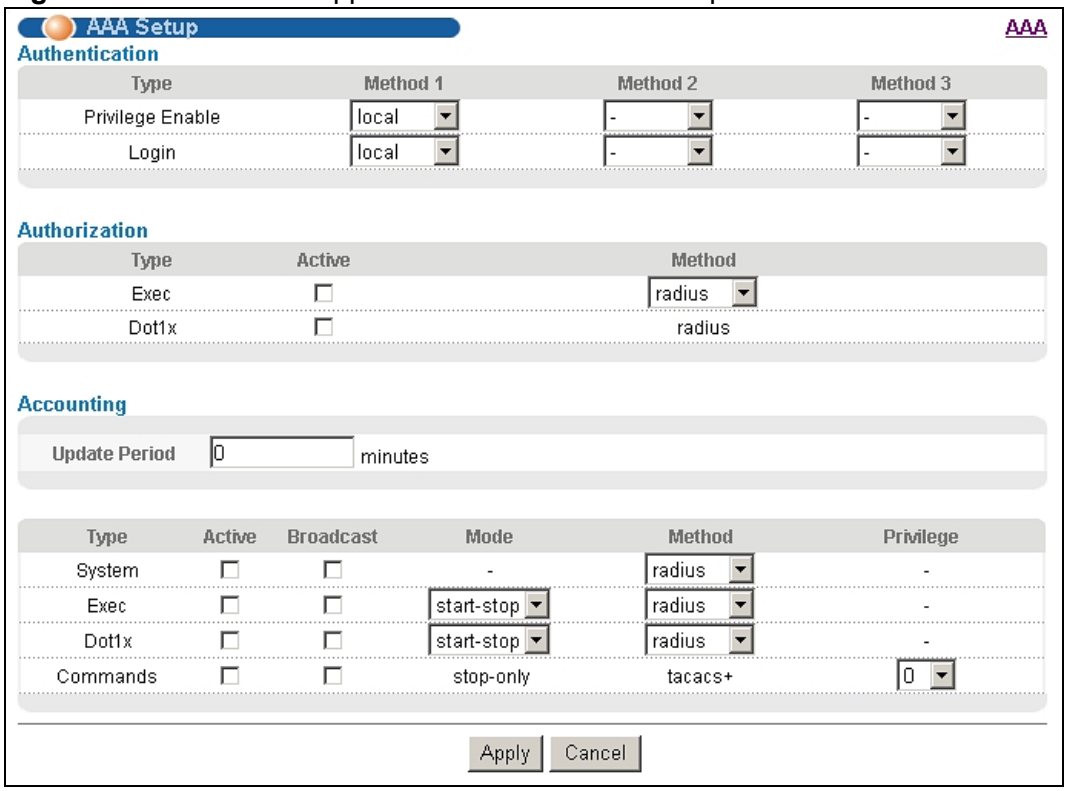
Table 61 Advanced Application > AAA > TACACS+ Server Setup (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Timeout	Specify the amount of time in seconds that the Switch waits for an authentication request response from the TACACS+ server. If you are using **index-priority** for your authentication and you are using two TACACS+ servers then the timeout value is divided between the two TACACS+ servers. For example, if you set the timeout value to 30 seconds, then the Switch waits for a response from the first TACACS+ server for 15 seconds and then tries the second TACACS+ server.
Index	This is a read-only number representing a TACACS+ server entry.
IP Address	Enter the IP address of an external TACACS+ server in dotted decimal notation.
TCP Port	The default port of a TACACS+ server for authentication is **49**. You need not change this value unless your network administrator instructs you to do so.
Shared Secret	Specify a password (up to 32 alphanumeric characters) as the key to be shared between the external TACACS+ server and the Switch. This key is not sent over the network. This key must be the same on the external TACACS+ server and the Switch.
Delete	Check this box if you want to remove an existing TACACS+ server entry from the Switch. This entry is deleted when you click **Apply**.
Apply	Click **Apply** to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the **Save** link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to begin configuring this screen afresh.
Apply	Click **Apply** to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the **Save** link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to begin configuring this screen afresh.

25.7 AAA Setup

Use this screen to configure authentication and authorization settings on the Switch. Click on the **AAA Setup** link in the **AAA** screen to view the screen as shown.

Figure 101 Advanced Application > AAA > AAA Setup



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 62 Advanced Application > AAA > AAA Setup

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Authentication	Use this section to specify the methods used to authenticate users accessing the Switch.
Privilege Enable	These fields specify which database the Switch should use (first, second and third) to authenticate access privilege level for administrator accounts (users for Switch management). Configure the access privilege of accounts via commands (See the CLI Reference Guide) for **local** authentication. The **TACACS+** and **RADIUS** are external servers. Before you specify the priority, make sure you have set up the corresponding database correctly first. You can specify up to three methods for the Switch to authenticate the access privilege level of administrators. The Switch checks the methods in the order you configure them (first **Method 1**, then **Method 2** and finally **Method 3**). You must configure the settings in the **Method 1** field. If you want the Switch to check other sources for access privilege level specify them in **Method 2** and **Method 3** fields. Select **local** to have the Switch check the access privilege configured for local authentication. Select **radius** or **tacacs+** to have the Switch check the access privilege via the external servers.
Login	These fields specify which database the Switch should use (first, second and third) to authenticate administrator accounts (users for Switch management). Configure the local user accounts in the **Access Control > Logins** screen. The TACACS+ and RADIUS are external servers. Before you specify the priority, make sure you have set up the corresponding database correctly first. You can specify up to three methods for the Switch to authenticate administrator accounts. The Switch checks the methods in the order you configure them (first **Method 1**, then **Method 2** and finally **Method 3**). You must configure the settings in the **Method 1** field. If you want the Switch to check other sources for administrator accounts, specify them in **Method 2** and **Method 3** fields. Select **local** to have the Switch check the administrator accounts configured in the **Access Control > Logins** screen. Select **radius** to have the Switch check the administrator accounts configured via your RADIUS server. Select **tacacs+** to have the Switch check the administrator accounts configured via your TACACS+ server.
Authorization	Use this section to configure authorization settings on the Switch.
Type	Set whether the Switch provides the following services to a user. • **Exec**: Allow an administrator which logs in the Switch through Telnet or SSH to have different access privilege level assigned via the external server. • **Dot1x**: Allow an IEEE 802.1x client to have different bandwidth limit or VLAN ID assigned via the external server.

Table 62 Advanced Application > AAA > AAA Setup (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Active	Select this to activate authorization for a specified event types.
Method	Select whether you want to use RADIUS or TACACS+ for authorization of specific types of events. RADIUS is the only method for IEEE 802.1x authorization.
Apply	Click **Apply** to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the **Save** link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to begin configuring this screen afresh.

25.8 Technical Reference

This section provides technical background information on the topics discussed in this chapter.

25.8.1 Vendor Specific Attribute

RFC 2865 standard specifies a method for sending vendor-specific information between a RADIUS server and a network access device (for example, the Switch). A company can create Vendor Specific Attributes (VSAs) to expand the functionality of a RADIUS server.

The Switch supports VSAs that allow you to perform the following actions based on user authentication:

- Limit bandwidth on incoming or outgoing traffic for the port the user connects to.
- Assign account privilege levels (See the CLI Reference Guide for more information on account privilege levels) for the authenticated user.

The VSAs are composed of the following:

- **Vendor-ID**: An identification number assigned to the company by the IANA (Internet Assigned Numbers Authority). ZyXEL's vendor ID is 890.
- **Vendor-Type**: A vendor specified attribute, identifying the setting you want to modify.
- **Vendor-data**: A value you want to assign to the setting.

Note: Refer to the documentation that comes with your RADIUS server on how to configure VSAs for users authenticating via the RADIUS server.

The following table describes the VSAs supported on the Switch.

Table 63 Supported VSAs

FUNCTION	ATTRIBUTE
Ingress Bandwidth Assignment	Vendor-Id = **890** Vendor-Type = **1** Vendor-data = ingress rate (Kbps in decimal format)
Egress Bandwidth Assignment	Vendor-Id = **890** Vendor-Type = **2** Vendor-data = egress rate (Kbps in decimal format)
Privilege Assignment	Vendor-ID = **890** Vendor-Type = **3** Vendor-Data = "**shell:priv-lvl=**N" or Vendor-ID = **9** (CISCO) Vendor-Type = **1** (CISCO-AVPAIR) Vendor-Data = "**shell:priv-lvl=**N" where N is a privilege level (from 0 to 14). Note: If you set the privilege level of a login account differently on the RADIUS server(s) and the Switch, the user is assigned a privilege level from the database (RADIUS or local) the Switch uses first for user authentication.

25.8.1.1 Tunnel Protocol Attribute

You can configure tunnel protocol attributes on the RADIUS server (refer to your RADIUS server documentation) to assign a port on the Switch to a VLAN based on IEEE 802.1x authentication. The port VLAN settings are fixed and untagged. This will also set the port's VID. The following table describes the values you need to configure. Note that the bolded values in the table are fixed values as defined in RFC 3580.

Table 64 Supported Tunnel Protocol Attribute

FUNCTION	ATTRIBUTE
VLAN Assignment	Tunnel-Type = **VLAN(13)** Tunnel-Medium-Type = **802(6)** Tunnel-Private-Group-ID = VLAN ID Note: You must also create a VLAN with the specified VID on the Switch.

25.8.2 Supported RADIUS Attributes

Remote Authentication Dial-In User Service (RADIUS) attributes are data used to define specific authentication elements in a user profile, which is stored on the RADIUS server. This appendix lists the RADIUS attributes supported by the Switch.

Refer to RFC 2865 for more information about RADIUS attributes used for authentication.

This section lists the attributes used by authentication functions on the Switch. In cases where the attribute has a specific format associated with it, the format is specified.

25.8.3 Attributes Used for Authentication

The following sections list the attributes sent from the Switch to the RADIUS server when performing authentication.

25.8.3.1 Attributes Used for Authenticating Privilege Access

User-Name

- The format of the User-Name attribute is **$enab**#**$**, where # is the privilege level (1-14).

User-Password

NAS-Identifier

NAS-IP-Address

25.8.3.2 Attributes Used to Login Users

User-Name

User-Password

NAS-Identifier

NAS-IP-Address

25.8.3.3 Attributes Used by the IEEE 802.1x Authentication

User-Name

NAS-Identifier

NAS-IP-Address

NAS-Port

NAS-Port-Type

- This value is set to **Ethernet(15)** on the Switch.

Calling-Station-Id

Frame-MTU

EAP-Message

State

Message-Authenticator

26

IP Source Guard

26.1 Overview

Use IP source guard to filter unauthorized DHCP and ARP packets in your network.

IP source guard uses a binding table to distinguish between authorized and unauthorized DHCP and ARP packets in your network. A binding contains these key attributes:

- MAC address
- VLAN ID
- IP address
- Port number

When the Switch receives a DHCP or ARP packet, it looks up the appropriate MAC address, VLAN ID, IP address, and port number in the binding table. If there is a binding, the Switch forwards the packet. If there is not a binding, the Switch discards the packet.

26.2 What You Can Do

- Use the **IP Source Guard** screen (Section 26.4 on page 216) to look at the current bindings for DHCP snooping and ARP inspection.
- Use the **IP Source Guard Static Binding** screen (Section 26.5 on page 217) to manage static bindings for DHCP snooping and ARP inspection.
- Use the **DHCP Snooping** screen (Section 26.6 on page 219) to look at various statistics about the DHCP snooping database.
- Use this **DHCP Snooping Configure** screen (Section 26.7 on page 222) to enable DHCP snooping on the Switch (not on specific VLAN), specify the VLAN where the default DHCP server is located, and configure the DHCP snooping database.
- Use the **DHCP Snooping Port Configure** screen (Section 26.7.1 on page 224) to specify whether ports are trusted or untrusted ports for DHCP snooping.

- Use the **DHCP VLAN Configure** screen (Section 26.7.2 on page 225) to enable DHCP snooping on each VLAN and to specify whether or not the Switch adds DHCP relay agent option 82 information to DHCP requests that the Switch relays to a DHCP server for each VLAN.
- Use the **ARP Inspection Status** screen (Section 26.8 on page 227) to look at the current list of MAC address filters that were created because the Switch identified an unauthorized ARP packet.
- Use the **ARP Inspection VLAN Status** screen (Section 26.9 on page 228) to look at various statistics about ARP packets in each VLAN.
- Use the **ARP Inspection Log Status** screen (Section 26.10 on page 229) to look at log messages that were generated by ARP packets and that have not been sent to the syslog server yet.
- Use the **ARP Inspection Configure** screen (Section 26.11 on page 230) to enable ARP inspection on the Switch. You can also configure the length of time the Switch stores records of discarded ARP packets and global settings for the ARP inspection log.
- Use the **ARP Inspection Port Configure** screen (Section 26.11.1 on page 232) to specify whether ports are trusted or untrusted ports for ARP inspection.
- Use the **ARP Inspection VLAN Configure** screen (Section 26.11.2 on page 234) to enable ARP inspection on each VLAN and to specify when the Switch generates log messages for receiving ARP packets from each VLAN.

26.3 What You Need to Know

The Switch builds the binding table by snooping DHCP packets (dynamic bindings) and from information provided manually by administrators (static bindings).

IP source guard consists of the following features:

- Static bindings. Use this to create static bindings in the binding table.
- DHCP snooping. Use this to filter unauthorized DHCP packets on the network and to build the binding table dynamically.
- ARP inspection. Use this to filter unauthorized ARP packets on the network.

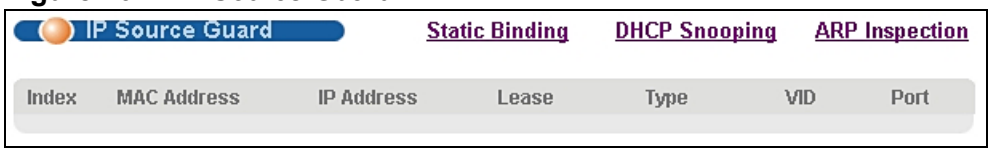
If you want to use dynamic bindings to filter unauthorized ARP packets (typical implementation), you have to enable DHCP snooping before you enable ARP inspection.

26.4 IP Source Guard

Use this screen to look at the current bindings for DHCP snooping and ARP inspection. Bindings are used by DHCP snooping and ARP inspection to distinguish

between authorized and unauthorized packets in the network. The Switch learns the bindings by snooping DHCP packets (dynamic bindings) and from information provided manually by administrators (static bindings). To open this screen, click **Advanced Application > IP Source Guard**.

Figure 102 IP Source Guard



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 65 IP Source Guard

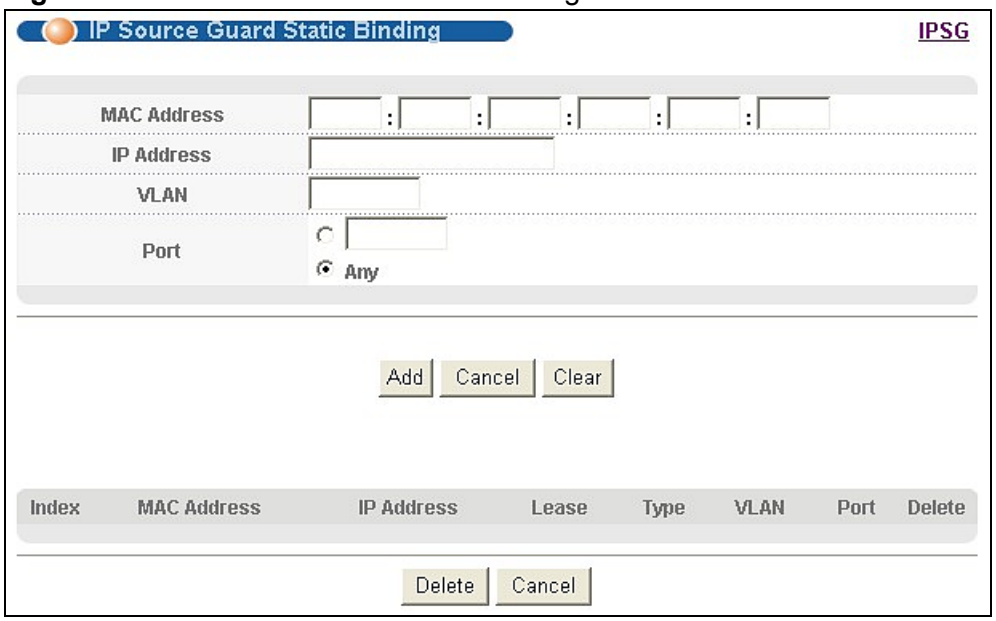
LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Index	This field displays a sequential number for each binding.
MAC Address	This field displays the source MAC address in the binding.
IP Address	This field displays the IP address assigned to the MAC address in the binding.
Lease	This field displays how many days, hours, minutes, and seconds the binding is valid; for example, **2d3h4m5s** means the binding is still valid for 2 days, 3 hours, 4 minutes, and 5 seconds. This field displays **infinity** if the binding is always valid (for example, a static binding).
Type	This field displays how the Switch learned the binding. **static**: This binding was learned from information provided manually by an administrator. **dhcp-snooping**: This binding was learned by snooping DHCP packets.
VID	This field displays the source VLAN ID in the binding.
Port	This field displays the port number in the binding. If this field is blank, the binding applies to all ports.

26.5 IP Source Guard Static Binding

Use this screen to manage static bindings for DHCP snooping and ARP inspection. Static bindings are uniquely identified by the MAC address and VLAN ID. Each MAC address and VLAN ID can only be in one static binding. If you try to create a static binding with the same MAC address and VLAN ID as an existing static binding, the

new static binding replaces the original one. To open this screen, click **Advanced Application > IP Source Guard > Static Binding**.

Figure 103 IP Source Guard Static Binding



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 66 IP Source Guard Static Binding

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
MAC Address	Enter the source MAC address in the binding.
IP Address	Enter the IP address assigned to the MAC address in the binding.
VLAN	Enter the source VLAN ID in the binding.
Port	Specify the port(s) in the binding. If this binding has one port, select the first radio button and enter the port number in the field to the right. If this binding applies to all ports, select **Any**.
Add	Click this to create the specified static binding or to update an existing one.
Cancel	Click this to reset the values above based on the last selected static binding or, if not applicable, to clear the fields above.
Clear	Click this to clear the fields above.
Index	This field displays a sequential number for each binding.
MAC Address	This field displays the source MAC address in the binding.
IP Address	This field displays the IP address assigned to the MAC address in the binding.
Lease	This field displays how long the binding is valid.
Type	This field displays how the Switch learned the binding. **static**: This binding was learned from information provided manually by an administrator.
VLAN	This field displays the source VLAN ID in the binding.

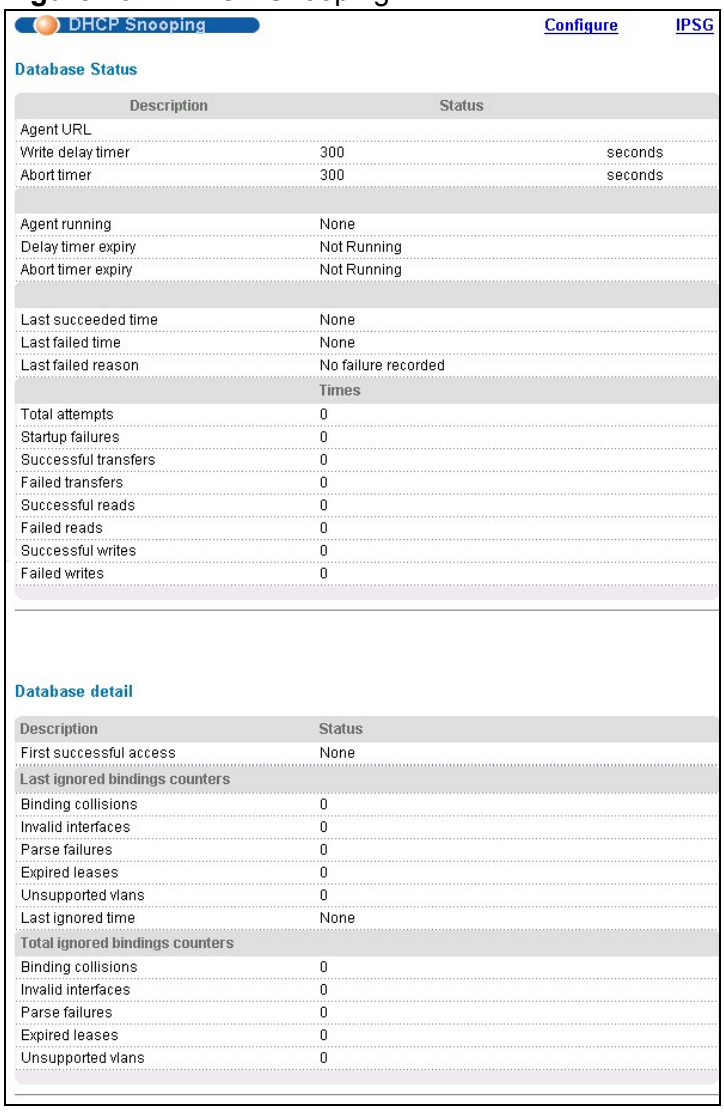
Table 66 IP Source Guard Static Binding (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Port	This field displays the port number in the binding. If this field is blank, the binding applies to all ports.
Delete	Select this, and click **Delete** to remove the specified entry.
Cancel	Click this to clear the **Delete** check boxes above.

26.6 DHCP Snooping

Use this screen to look at various statistics about the DHCP snooping database. To open this screen, click **Advanced Application > IP Source Guard > DHCP Snooping**.

Figure 104 DHCP Snooping



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 67 DHCP Snooping

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Database Status	This section displays the current settings for the DHCP snooping database. You can configure them in the **DHCP Snooping Configure** screen. See Section 26.7 on page 222.
Agent URL	This field displays the location of the DHCP snooping database.
Write delay timer	This field displays how long (in seconds) the Switch tries to complete a specific update in the DHCP snooping database before it gives up.
Abort timer	This field displays how long (in seconds) the Switch waits to update the DHCP snooping database after the current bindings change.
	This section displays information about the current update and the next update of the DHCP snooping database.
Agent running	This field displays the status of the current update or access of the DHCP snooping database. **none**: The Switch is not accessing the DHCP snooping database. **read**: The Switch is loading dynamic bindings from the DHCP snooping database. **write**: The Switch is updating the DHCP snooping database.
Delay timer expiry	This field displays how much longer (in seconds) the Switch tries to complete the current update before it gives up. It displays **Not Running** if the Switch is not updating the DHCP snooping database right now.
Abort timer expiry	This field displays when (in seconds) the Switch is going to update the DHCP snooping database again. It displays **Not Running** if the current bindings have not changed since the last update.
	This section displays information about the last time the Switch updated the DHCP snooping database.
Last succeeded time	This field displays the last time the Switch updated the DHCP snooping database successfully.
Last failed time	This field displays the last time the Switch updated the DHCP snooping database unsuccessfully.
Last failed reason	This field displays the reason the Switch updated the DHCP snooping database unsuccessfully.
	This section displays historical information about the number of times the Switch successfully or unsuccessfully read or updated the DHCP snooping database.
Total attempts	This field displays the number of times the Switch has tried to access the DHCP snooping database for any reason.
Startup failures	This field displays the number of times the Switch could not create or read the DHCP snooping database when the Switch started up or a new URL is configured for the DHCP snooping database.

Table 67 DHCP Snooping (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Successful transfers	This field displays the number of times the Switch read bindings from or updated the bindings in the DHCP snooping database successfully.
Failed transfers	This field displays the number of times the Switch was unable to read bindings from or update the bindings in the DHCP snooping database.
Successful reads	This field displays the number of times the Switch read bindings from the DHCP snooping database successfully.
Failed reads	This field displays the number of times the Switch was unable to read bindings from the DHCP snooping database.
Successful writes	This field displays the number of times the Switch updated the bindings in the DHCP snooping database successfully.
Failed writes	This field displays the number of times the Switch was unable to update the bindings in the DHCP snooping database.
Database detail	
First successful access	This field displays the first time the Switch accessed the DHCP snooping database for any reason.
Last ignored bindings counters	This section displays the number of times and the reasons the Switch ignored bindings the last time it read bindings from the DHCP binding database. You can clear these counters by restarting the Switch or using CLI commands. See the CLI Reference Guide.
Binding collisions	This field displays the number of bindings the Switch ignored because the Switch already had a binding with the same MAC address and VLAN ID.
Invalid interfaces	This field displays the number of bindings the Switch ignored because the port number was a trusted interface or does not exist anymore.
Parse failures	This field displays the number of bindings the Switch ignored because the Switch was unable to understand the binding in the DHCP binding database.
Expired leases	This field displays the number of bindings the Switch ignored because the lease time had already expired.
Unsupported vlans	This field displays the number of bindings the Switch ignored because the VLAN ID does not exist anymore.
Last ignored time	This field displays the last time the Switch ignored any bindings for any reason from the DHCP binding database.
Total ignored bindings counters	This section displays the reasons the Switch has ignored bindings any time it read bindings from the DHCP binding database. You can clear these counters by restarting the Switch or using CLI commands. See the CLI Reference Guide.
Binding collisions	This field displays the number of bindings the Switch has ignored because the Switch already had a binding with the same MAC address and VLAN ID.
Invalid interfaces	This field displays the number of bindings the Switch has ignored because the port number was a trusted interface or does not exist anymore.

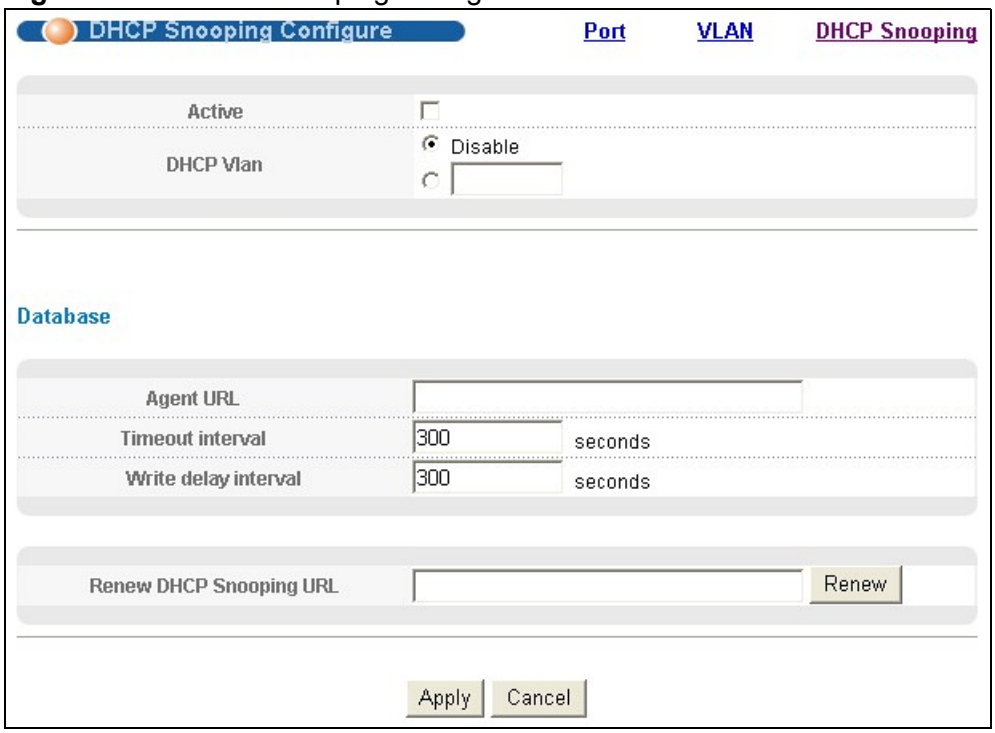
Table 67 DHCP Snooping (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Parse failures	This field displays the number of bindings the Switch has ignored because the Switch was unable to understand the binding in the DHCP binding database.
Expired leases	This field displays the number of bindings the Switch has ignored because the lease time had already expired.
Unsupported vlans	This field displays the number of bindings the Switch has ignored because the VLAN ID does not exist anymore.

26.7 DHCP Snooping Configure

Use this screen to enable DHCP snooping on the Switch (not on specific VLAN), specify the VLAN where the default DHCP server is located, and configure the DHCP snooping database. The DHCP snooping database stores the current bindings on a secure, external TFTP server so that they are still available after a restart. To open this screen, click **Advanced Application > IP Source Guard > DHCP Snooping > Configure**.

Figure 105 DHCP Snooping Configure



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 68 DHCP Snooping Configure

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Active	Select this to enable DHCP snooping on the Switch. You still have to enable DHCP snooping on specific VLAN and specify trusted ports. Note: If DHCP is enabled and there are no trusted ports, DHCP requests will not succeed.
DHCP Vlan	Select a VLAN ID if you want the Switch to forward DHCP packets to DHCP servers on a specific VLAN. Note: You have to enable DHCP snooping on the DHCP VLAN too. You can enable **Option82** in the **DHCP Snooping VLAN Configure** screen (Section 26.7.2 on page 225) to help the DHCP servers distinguish between DHCP requests from different VLAN. Select **Disable** if you do not want the Switch to forward DHCP packets to a specific VLAN.
Database	If **Timeout interval** is greater than **Write delay interval**, it is possible that the next update is scheduled to occur before the current update has finished successfully or timed out. In this case, the Switch waits to start the next update until it completes the current one.
Agent URL	Enter the location of the DHCP snooping database. The location should be expressed like this: **tftp://{domain name or IP address}/directory, if applicable/file name**; for example, **tftp://192.168.10.1/database.txt**.
Timeout interval	Enter how long (10-65535 seconds) the Switch tries to complete a specific update in the DHCP snooping database before it gives up.
Write delay interval	Enter how long (10-65535 seconds) the Switch waits to update the DHCP snooping database the first time the current bindings change after an update. Once the next update is scheduled, additional changes in current bindings are automatically included in the next update.
Renew DHCP Snooping URL	Enter the location of a DHCP snooping database, and click **Renew** if you want the Switch to load it. You can use this to load dynamic bindings from a different DHCP snooping database than the one specified in **Agent URL**. When the Switch loads dynamic bindings from a DHCP snooping database, it does not discard the current dynamic bindings first. If there is a conflict, the Switch keeps the dynamic binding in volatile memory and updates the **Binding collisions** counter in the **DHCP Snooping** screen (Section 26.6 on page 219).

Table 68 DHCP Snooping Configure (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Apply	Click **Apply** to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the **Save** link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click this to reset the values in this screen to their last-saved values.

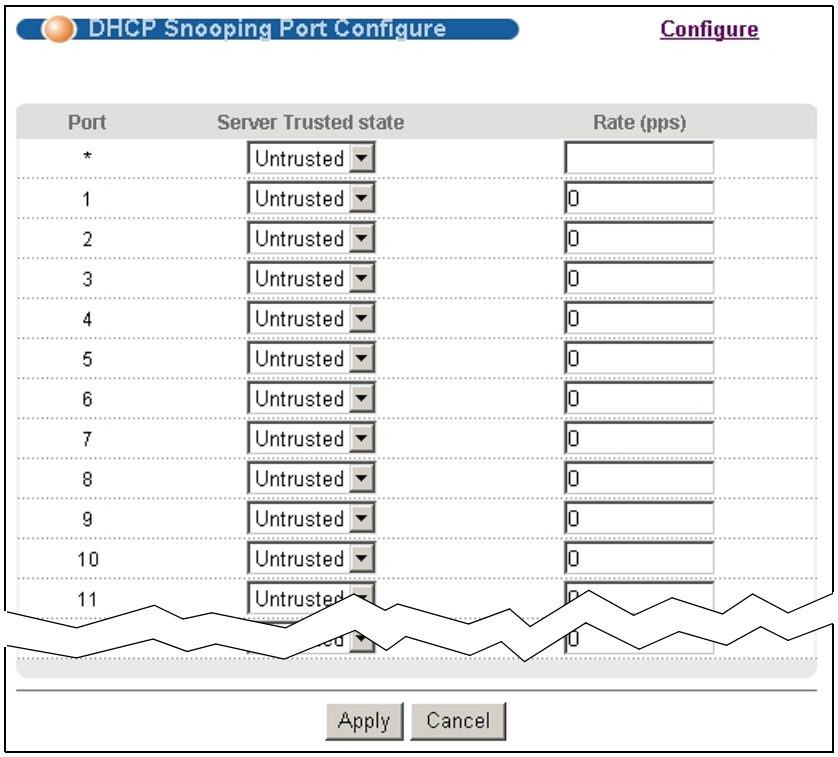
26.7.1 DHCP Snooping Port Configure

Use this screen to specify whether ports are trusted or untrusted ports for DHCP snooping.

Note: If DHCP snooping is enabled but there are no trusted ports, DHCP requests cannot reach the DHCP server.

You can also specify the maximum number for DHCP packets that each port (trusted or untrusted) can receive each second. To open this screen, click **Advanced Application > IP Source Guard > DHCP Snooping > Configure > Port**.

Figure 106 DHCP Snooping Port Configure



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 69 DHCP Snooping Port Configure

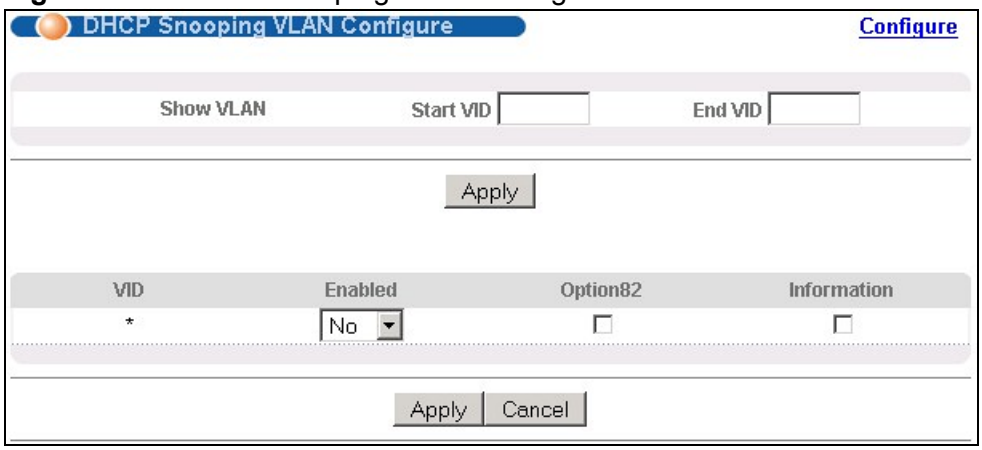
LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Port	This field displays the port number. If you configure the * port, the settings are applied to all of the ports.
Server Trusted state	Select whether this port is a trusted port (**Trusted**) or an untrusted port (**Untrusted**). Trusted ports are connected to DHCP servers or other switches, and the Switch discards DHCP packets from trusted ports only if the rate at which DHCP packets arrive is too high. Untrusted ports are connected to subscribers, and the Switch discards DHCP packets from untrusted ports in the following situations: • The packet is a DHCP server packet (for example, OFFER, ACK, or NACK). • The source MAC address and source IP address in the packet do not match any of the current bindings. • The packet is a RELEASE or DECLINE packet, and the source MAC address and source port do not match any of the current bindings. • The rate at which DHCP packets arrive is too high.
Rate (pps)	Specify the maximum number for DHCP packets (1-2048) that the Switch receives from each port each second. The Switch discards any additional DHCP packets. Enter 0 to disable this limit, which is recommended for trusted ports.
Apply	Click **Apply** to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the **Save** link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click this to reset the values in this screen to their last-saved values.

26.7.2 DHCP Snooping VLAN Configure

Use this screen to enable DHCP snooping on each VLAN and to specify whether or not the Switch adds DHCP relay agent option 82 information (Chapter 31 on page 261) to DHCP requests that the Switch relays to a DHCP server for each VLAN. To

open this screen, click **Advanced Application > IP Source Guard > DHCP Snooping > Configure > VLAN**.

Figure 107 DHCP Snooping VLAN Configure



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

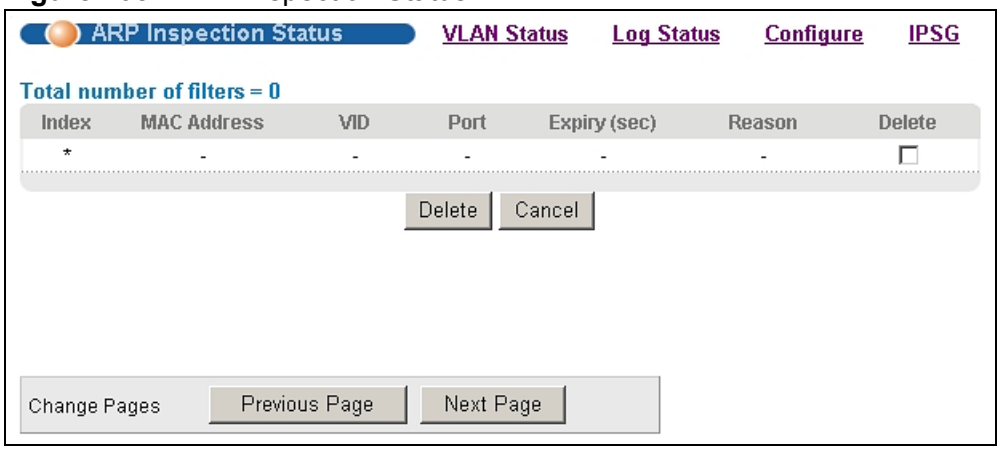
Table 70 DHCP Snooping VLAN Configure

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Show VLAN	Use this section to specify the VLANs you want to manage in the section below.
Start VID	Enter the lowest VLAN ID you want to manage in the section below.
End VID	Enter the highest VLAN ID you want to manage in the section below.
Apply	Click this to display the specified range of VLANs in the section below.
VID	This field displays the VLAN ID of each VLAN in the range specified above. If you configure the * VLAN, the settings are applied to all VLANs.
Enabled	Select **Yes** to enable DHCP snooping on the VLAN. You still have to enable DHCP snooping on the Switch and specify trusted ports. Note: If DHCP is enabled and there are no trusted ports, DHCP requests will not succeed.
Option82	Select this to have the Switch add the slot number, port number and VLAN ID to DHCP requests that it broadcasts to the DHCP VLAN, if specified, or VLAN. You can specify the DHCP VLAN in the **DHCP Snooping Configure** screen. See Section 26.7 on page 222.
Information	Select this to have the Switch add the system name to DHCP requests that it broadcasts to the DHCP VLAN, if specified, or VLAN. You can configure the system name in the **General Setup** screen. See Chapter 8 on page 71. You can specify the DHCP VLAN in the **DHCP Snooping Configure** screen. See Section 26.7 on page 222.
Apply	Click **Apply** to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the **Save** link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click this to reset the values in this screen to their last-saved values.

26.8 ARP Inspection Status

Use this screen to look at the current list of MAC address filters that were created because the Switch identified an unauthorized ARP packet. When the Switch identifies an unauthorized ARP packet, it automatically creates a MAC address filter to block traffic from the source MAC address and source VLAN ID of the unauthorized ARP packet. To open this screen, click **Advanced Application > IP Source Guard > ARP Inspection**.

Figure 108 ARP Inspection Status



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 71 ARP Inspection Status

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Total number of filters	This field displays the current number of MAC address filters that were created because the Switch identified unauthorized ARP packets.
Index	This field displays a sequential number for each MAC address filter.
MAC Address	This field displays the source MAC address in the MAC address filter.
VID	This field displays the source VLAN ID in the MAC address filter.
Port	This field displays the source port of the discarded ARP packet.
Expiry (sec)	This field displays how long (in seconds) the MAC address filter remains in the Switch. You can also delete the record manually (**Delete**).
Reason	This field displays the reason the ARP packet was discarded. **MAC+VLAN**: The MAC address and VLAN ID were not in the binding table. **IP**: The MAC address and VLAN ID were in the binding table, but the IP address was not valid. **Port**: The MAC address, VLAN ID, and IP address were in the binding table, but the port number was not valid.
Delete	Select this, and click **Delete** to remove the specified entry.

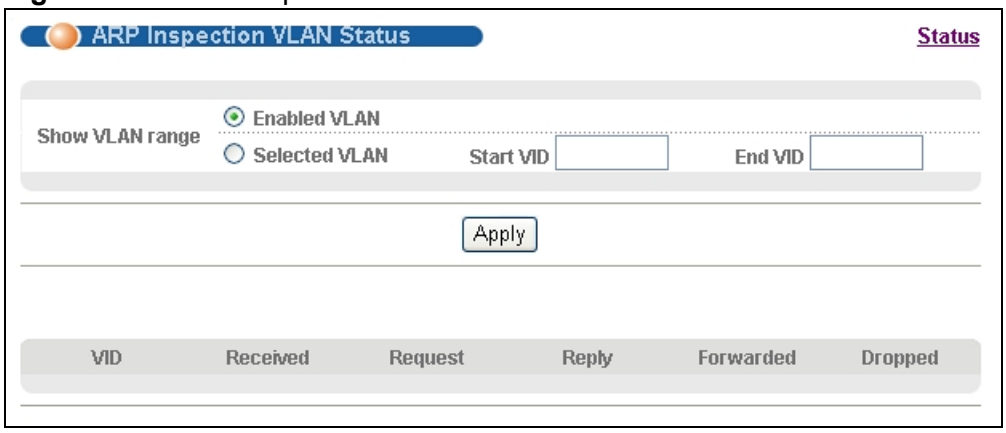
Table 71 ARP Inspection Status (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Cancel	Click this to clear the **Delete** check boxes above.
Change Pages	Click **Previous** or **Next** to show the previous/next screen if all status information cannot be seen in one screen.

26.9 ARP Inspection VLAN Status

Use this screen to look at various statistics about ARP packets in each VLAN. To open this screen, click **Advanced Application > IP Source Guard > ARP Inspection > VLAN Status**.

Figure 109 ARP Inspection VLAN Status



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 72 ARP Inspection VLAN Status

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Show VLAN range	Use this section to specify the VLANs you want to look at in the section below.
Enabled VLAN	Select this to look at all the VLANs on which ARP inspection is enabled in the section below.
Selected VLAN	Select this to look at all the VLANs in a specific range in the section below. Then, enter the lowest VLAN ID (**Start VID**) and the highest VLAN ID (**End VID**) you want to look at.
Apply	Click this to display the specified range of VLANs in the section below.
VID	This field displays the VLAN ID of each VLAN in the range specified above.
Received	This field displays the total number of ARP packets received from the VLAN since the Switch last restarted.
Request	This field displays the total number of ARP Request packets received from the VLAN since the Switch last restarted.

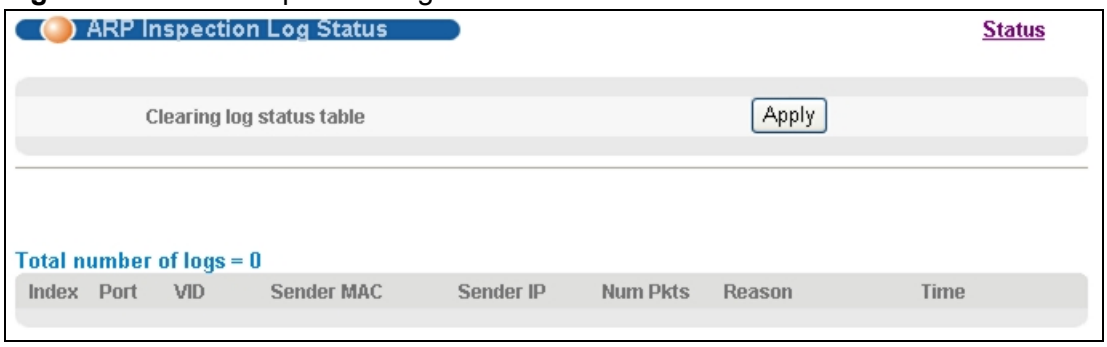
Table 72 ARP Inspection VLAN Status

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Reply	This field displays the total number of ARP Reply packets received from the VLAN since the Switch last restarted.
Forwarded	This field displays the total number of ARP packets the Switch forwarded for the VLAN since the Switch last restarted.
Dropped	This field displays the total number of ARP packets the Switch discarded for the VLAN since the Switch last restarted.

26.10 ARP Inspection Log Status

Use this screen to look at log messages that were generated by ARP packets and that have not been sent to the syslog server yet. To open this screen, click **Advanced Application > IP Source Guard > ARP Inspection > Log Status**.

Figure 110 ARP Inspection Log Status



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 73 ARP Inspection Log Status

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Clearing log status table	Click **Apply** to remove all the log messages that were generated by ARP packets and that have not been sent to the syslog server yet.
Total number of logs	This field displays the number of log messages that were generated by ARP packets and that have not been sent to the syslog server yet. If one or more log messages are dropped due to unavailable buffer, there is an entry called **overflow** with the current number of dropped log messages.
Index	This field displays a sequential number for each log message.
Port	This field displays the source port of the ARP packet.
VID	This field displays the source VLAN ID of the ARP packet.
Sender MAC	This field displays the source MAC address of the ARP packet.
Sender IP	This field displays the source IP address of the ARP packet.

Table 73 ARP Inspection Log Status (continued)

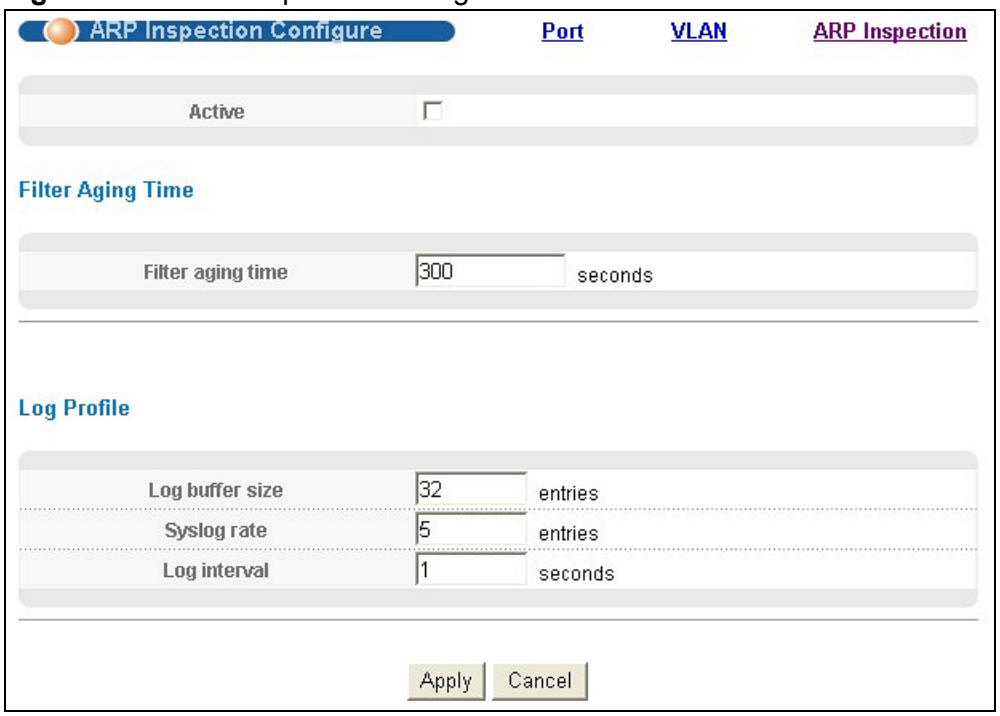
LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Num Pkts	This field displays the number of ARP packets that were consolidated into this log message. The Switch consolidates identical log messages generated by ARP packets in the log consolidation interval into one log message. You can configure this interval in the **ARP Inspection Configure** screen. See Section 26.11 on page 230.
Reason	This field displays the reason the log message was generated. **dhcp deny**: An ARP packet was discarded because it violated a dynamic binding with the same MAC address and VLAN ID. **static deny**: An ARP packet was discarded because it violated a static binding with the same MAC address and VLAN ID. **deny**: An ARP packet was discarded because there were no bindings with the same MAC address and VLAN ID. **dhcp permit**: An ARP packet was forwarded because it matched a dynamic binding. **static permit**: An ARP packet was forwarded because it matched a static binding. In the **ARP Inspection VLAN Configure** screen, you can configure the Switch to generate log messages when ARP packets are discarded or forwarded based on the VLAN ID of the ARP packet. See Section 26.11.2 on page 234.
Time	This field displays when the log message was generated.

26.11 ARP Inspection Configure

Use this screen to enable ARP inspection on the Switch. You can also configure the length of time the Switch stores records of discarded ARP packets and global

settings for the ARP inspection log. To open this screen, click **Advanced Application > IP Source Guard > ARP Inspection > Configure**.

Figure 111 ARP Inspection Configure



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 74 ARP Inspection Configure

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Active	Select this to enable ARP inspection on the Switch. You still have to enable ARP inspection on specific VLAN and specify trusted ports.
Filter Aging Time	
Filter aging time	This setting has no effect on existing MAC address filters. Enter how long (1~2147483647 seconds) the MAC address filter remains in the Switch after the Switch identifies an unauthorized ARP packet. The Switch automatically deletes the MAC address filter afterwards. Enter 0 if you want the MAC address filter to be permanent.
Log Profile	
Log buffer size	Enter the maximum number (1~1024) of log messages that were generated by ARP packets and have not been sent to the syslog server yet. Make sure this number is appropriate for the specified **Syslog rate** and **Log interval**. If the number of log messages in the Switch exceeds this number, the Switch stops recording log messages and simply starts counting the number of entries that were dropped due to unavailable buffer. Click **Clearing log status table** in the **ARP Inspection Log Status** screen to clear the log and reset this counter. See Section 26.10 on page 229.

Table 74 ARP Inspection Configure (continued)

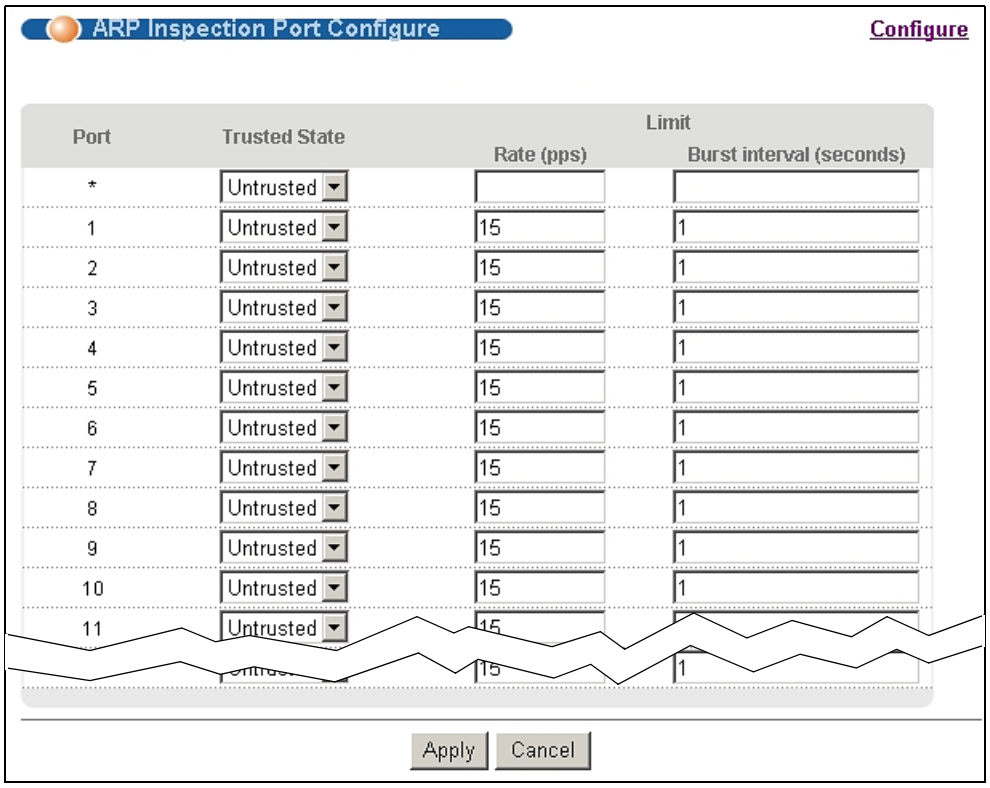
LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Syslog rate	Enter the maximum number of syslog messages the Switch can send to the syslog server in one batch. This number is expressed as a rate because the batch frequency is determined by the **Log Interval**. You must configure the syslog server (Chapter 35 on page 303) to use this. Enter 0 if you do not want the Switch to send log messages generated by ARP packets to the syslog server. The relationship between **Syslog rate** and **Log interval** is illustrated in the following examples: • 4 invalid ARP packets per second, **Syslog rate** is 5, **Log interval** is 1: the Switch sends 4 syslog messages every second. • 6 invalid ARP packets per second, **Syslog rate** is 5, **Log interval** is 2: the Switch sends 5 syslog messages every 2 seconds.
Log interval	Enter how often (1-86400 seconds) the Switch sends a batch of syslog messages to the syslog server. Enter 0 if you want the Switch to send syslog messages immediately. See **Syslog rate** for an example of the relationship between **Syslog rate** and **Log interval**.
Apply	Click **Apply** to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the **Save** link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click this to reset the values in this screen to their last-saved values.

26.11.1 ARP Inspection Port Configure

Use this screen to specify whether ports are trusted or untrusted ports for ARP inspection. You can also specify the maximum rate at which the Switch receives

ARP packets on each untrusted port. To open this screen, click **Advanced Application > IP Source Guard > ARP Inspection > Configure > Port**.

Figure 112 ARP Inspection Port Configure



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 75 ARP Inspection Port Configure

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Port	This field displays the port number. If you configure the * port, the settings are applied to all of the ports.
Trusted State	Select whether this port is a trusted port (**Trusted**) or an untrusted port (**Untrusted**). The Switch does not discard ARP packets on trusted ports for any reason. The Switch discards ARP packets on untrusted ports in the following situations: • The sender's information in the ARP packet does not match any of the current bindings. • The rate at which ARP packets arrive is too high. You can specify the maximum rate at which ARP packets can arrive on untrusted ports.
Limit	These settings have no effect on trusted ports.
Rate (pps)	Specify the maximum rate (1-2048 packets per second) at which the Switch receives ARP packets from each port. The Switch discards any additional ARP packets. Enter 0 to disable this limit.

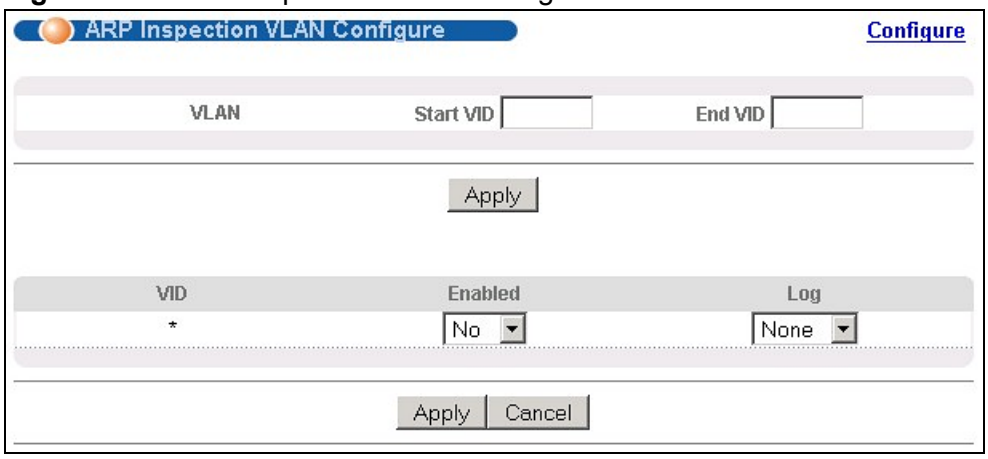
Table 75 ARP Inspection Port Configure (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Burst interval (seconds)	The burst interval is the length of time over which the rate of ARP packets is monitored for each port. For example, if the rate is 15 pps and the burst interval is 1 second, then the Switch accepts a maximum of 15 ARP packets in every one-second interval. If the burst interval is 5 seconds, then the Switch accepts a maximum of 75 ARP packets in every five-second interval. Enter the length (1-15 seconds) of the burst interval.
Apply	Click **Apply** to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the **Save** link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click this to reset the values in this screen to their last-saved values.

26.11.2 ARP Inspection VLAN Configure

Use this screen to enable ARP inspection on each VLAN and to specify when the Switch generates log messages for receiving ARP packets from each VLAN. To open this screen, click **Advanced Application > IP Source Guard > ARP Inspection > Configure > VLAN**.

Figure 113 ARP Inspection VLAN Configure



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 76 ARP Inspection VLAN Configure

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
VLAN	Use this section to specify the VLANs you want to manage in the section below.
Start VID	Enter the lowest VLAN ID you want to manage in the section below.
End VID	Enter the highest VLAN ID you want to manage in the section below.
Apply	Click this to display the specified range of VLANs in the section below.

Table 76 ARP Inspection VLAN Configure (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
VID	This field displays the VLAN ID of each VLAN in the range specified above. If you configure the ***** VLAN, the settings are applied to all VLANs.
Enabled	Select **Yes** to enable ARP inspection on the VLAN. Select **No** to disable ARP inspection on the VLAN.
Log	Specify when the Switch generates log messages for receiving ARP packets from the VLAN. **None**: The Switch does not generate any log messages when it receives an ARP packet from the VLAN. **Deny**: The Switch generates log messages when it discards an ARP packet from the VLAN. **Permit**: The Switch generates log messages when it forwards an ARP packet from the VLAN. **All**: The Switch generates log messages every time it receives an ARP packet from the VLAN.
Apply	Click **Apply** to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the **Save** link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click this to reset the values in this screen to their last-saved values.

26.12 Technical Reference

This section provides technical background information on the topics discussed in this chapter.

26.12.1 DHCP Snooping Overview

Use DHCP snooping to filter unauthorized DHCP packets on the network and to build the binding table dynamically. This can prevent clients from getting IP addresses from unauthorized DHCP servers.

26.12.1.1 Trusted vs. Untrusted Ports

Every port is either a trusted port or an untrusted port for DHCP snooping. This setting is independent of the trusted/untrusted setting for ARP inspection. You can also specify the maximum number for DHCP packets that each port (trusted or untrusted) can receive each second.

Trusted ports are connected to DHCP servers or other switches. The Switch discards DHCP packets from trusted ports only if the rate at which DHCP packets arrive is too high. The Switch learns dynamic bindings from trusted ports.

Note: If DHCP is enabled and there are no trusted ports, DHCP requests will not succeed.

Untrusted ports are connected to subscribers. The Switch discards DHCP packets from untrusted ports in the following situations:

- The packet is a DHCP server packet (for example, OFFER, ACK, or NACK).
- The source MAC address and source IP address in the packet do not match any of the current bindings.
- The packet is a RELEASE or DECLINE packet, and the source MAC address and source port do not match any of the current bindings.
- The rate at which DHCP packets arrive is too high.

26.12.1.2 DHCP Snooping Database

The Switch stores the binding table in volatile memory. If the Switch restarts, it loads static bindings from permanent memory but loses the dynamic bindings, in which case the devices in the network have to send DHCP requests again. As a result, it is recommended you configure the DHCP snooping database.

The DHCP snooping database maintains the dynamic bindings for DHCP snooping and ARP inspection in a file on an external TFTP server. If you set up the DHCP snooping database, the Switch can reload the dynamic bindings from the DHCP snooping database after the Switch restarts.

You can configure the name and location of the file on the external TFTP server. The file has the following format:

Figure 114 DHCP Snooping Database File Format

```
<initial-checksum>
TYPE DHCP-SNOOPING
VERSION 1
BEGIN
<binding-1> <checksum-1>
<binding-2> <checksum-1-2>
...
...
<binding-n> <checksum-1-2-..-n>
END
```

The <initial-checksum> helps distinguish between the bindings in the latest update and the bindings from previous updates. Each binding consists of 72 bytes, a space, and another checksum that is used to validate the binding when it is

read. If the calculated checksum is not equal to the checksum in the file, that binding and all others after it are ignored.

26.12.1.3 DHCP Relay Option 82 Information

The Switch can add information to DHCP requests that it does not discard. This provides the DHCP server more information about the source of the requests. The Switch can add the following information:

- Slot ID (1 byte), port ID (1 byte), and source VLAN ID (2 bytes)
- System name (up to 32 bytes)

This information is stored in an Agent Information field in the option 82 field of the DHCP headers of client DHCP request frames. See Chapter 31 on page 261 for more information about DHCP relay option 82.

When the DHCP server responds, the Switch removes the information in the Agent Information field before forwarding the response to the original source.

You can configure this setting for each source VLAN. This setting is independent of the DHCP relay settings (Chapter 31 on page 261).

26.12.1.4 Configuring DHCP Snooping

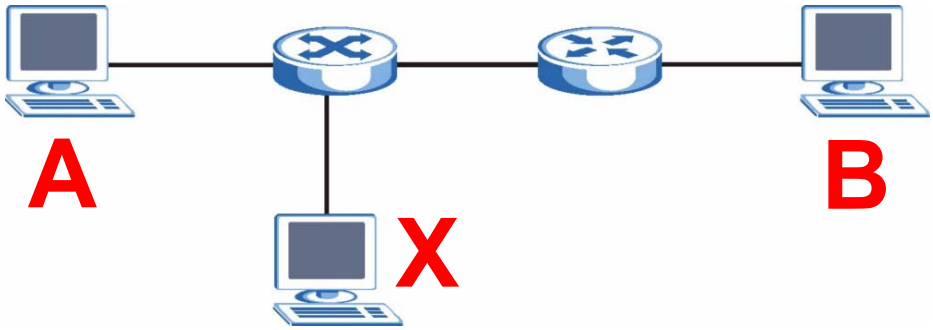
Follow these steps to configure DHCP snooping on the Switch.

1. Enable DHCP snooping on the Switch.
2. Enable DHCP snooping on each VLAN, and configure DHCP relay option 82.
3. Configure trusted and untrusted ports, and specify the maximum number of DHCP packets that each port can receive per second.
4. Configure static bindings.

26.12.2 ARP Inspection Overview

Use ARP inspection to filter unauthorized ARP packets on the network. This can prevent many kinds of man-in-the-middle attacks, such as the one in the following example.

Figure 115 Example: Man-in-the-middle Attack



In this example, computer **B** tries to establish a connection with computer **A**. Computer **X** is in the same broadcast domain as computer **A** and intercepts the ARP request for computer **A**. Then, computer **X** does the following things:

- It pretends to be computer **A** and responds to computer **B**.
- It pretends to be computer **B** and sends a message to computer **A**.

As a result, all the communication between computer **A** and computer **B** passes through computer **X**. Computer **X** can read and alter the information passed between them.

26.12.2.1 ARP Inspection and MAC Address Filters

When the Switch identifies an unauthorized ARP packet, it automatically creates a MAC address filter to block traffic from the source MAC address and source VLAN ID of the unauthorized ARP packet. You can configure how long the MAC address filter remains in the Switch.

These MAC address filters are different than regular MAC address filters (Chapter 12 on page 115).

- They are stored only in volatile memory.
- They do not use the same space in memory that regular MAC address filters use.
- They appear only in the **ARP Inspection** screens and commands, not in the **MAC Address Filter** screens and commands.

26.12.2.2 Trusted vs. Untrusted Ports

Every port is either a trusted port or an untrusted port for ARP inspection. This setting is independent of the trusted/untrusted setting for DHCP snooping. You can also specify the maximum rate at which the Switch receives ARP packets on untrusted ports.

The Switch does not discard ARP packets on trusted ports for any reason.

The Switch discards ARP packets on untrusted ports in the following situations:

- The sender's information in the ARP packet does not match any of the current bindings.
- The rate at which ARP packets arrive is too high.

26.12.2.3 Syslog

The Switch can send syslog messages to the specified syslog server (Chapter 35 on page 303) when it forwards or discards ARP packets. The Switch can consolidate log messages and send log messages in batches to make this mechanism more efficient.

26.12.2.4 Configuring ARP Inspection

Follow these steps to configure ARP inspection on the Switch.

1. Configure DHCP snooping. See Section 26.12.1.4 on page 237.

   Note: It is recommended you enable DHCP snooping at least one day before you enable ARP inspection so that the Switch has enough time to build the binding table.

2. Enable ARP inspection on each VLAN.

3. Configure trusted and untrusted ports, and specify the maximum number of ARP packets that each port can receive per second.

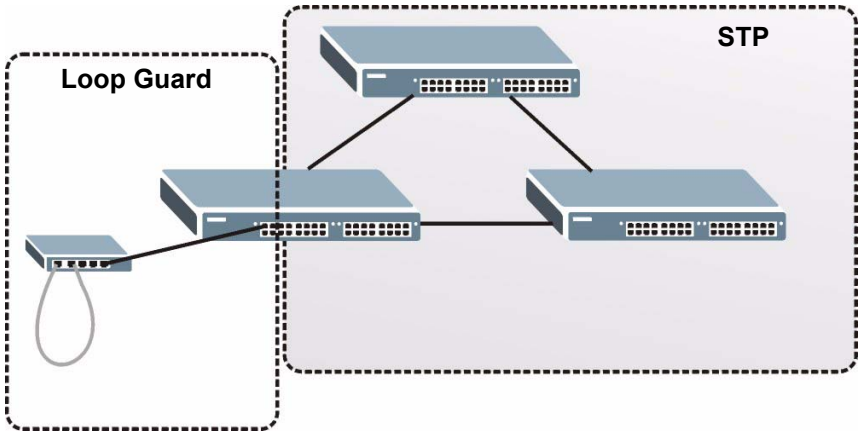
27 Loop Guard

27.1 Overview

This chapter shows you how to configure the Switch to guard against loops on the edge of your network.

Loop guard allows you to configure the Switch to shut down a port if it detects that packets sent out on that port loop back to the Switch. While you can use Spanning Tree Protocol (STP) to prevent loops in the core of your network. STP cannot prevent loops that occur on the edge of your network.

Figure 116 Loop Guard vs. STP



Refer to Section 27.3 on page 242 for more information.

27.2 What You Can Do

Use the **Loop Guard** screen (Section 27.4 on page 243) to enable loop guard on the Switch and in specific ports.

27.3 What You Need to Know

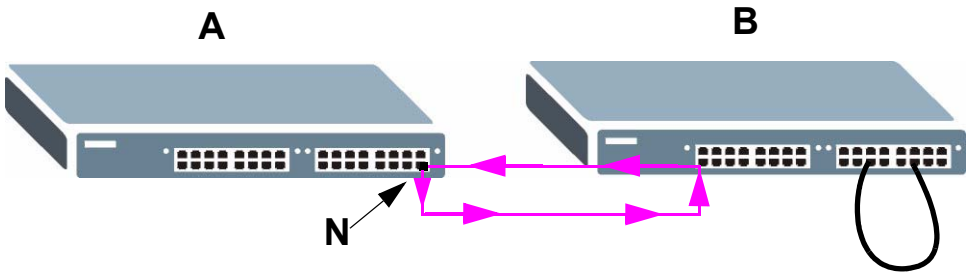
Loop guard is designed to handle loop problems on the edge of your network. This can occur when a port is connected to a Switch that is in a loop state. Loop state occurs as a result of human error. It happens when two ports on a switch are connected with the same cable. When a switch in loop state sends out broadcast messages the messages loop back to the switch and are re-broadcast again and again causing a broadcast storm.

If a switch (not in loop state) connects to a switch in loop state, then it will be affected by the switch in loop state in the following way:

- It will receive broadcast messages sent out from the switch in loop state.
- It will receive its own broadcast messages that it sends out as they loop back. It will then re-broadcast those messages again.

The following figure shows port **N** on switch **A** connected to switch **B**. Switch **B** is in loop state. When broadcast or multicast packets leave port **N** and reach switch **B**, they are sent back to port **N** on **A** as they are rebroadcast from B.

Figure 117 Switch in Loop State

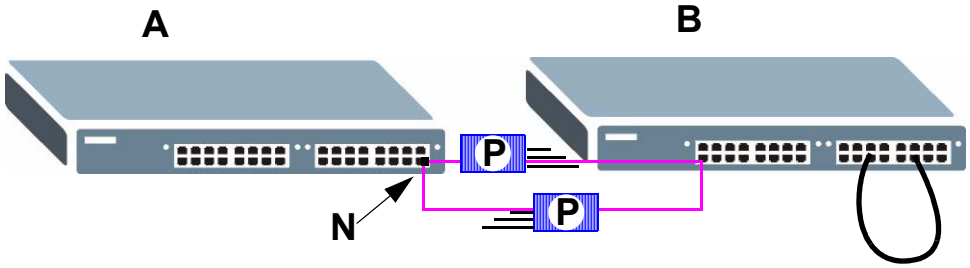


The loop guard feature checks to see if a loop guard enabled port is connected to a switch in loop state. This is accomplished by periodically sending a probe packet and seeing if the packet returns on the same port. If this is the case, the Switch will shut down the port connected to the switch in loop state.

The following figure shows a loop guard enabled port **N** on switch **A** sending a probe packet **P** to switch **B**. Since switch **B** is in loop state, the probe packet **P**

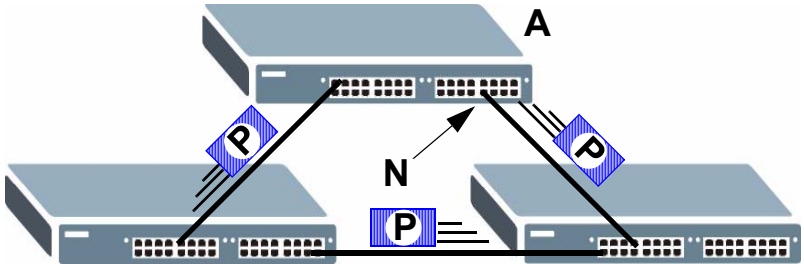
returns to port **N** on **A**. The Switch then shuts down port **N** to ensure that the rest of the network is not affected by the switch in loop state.

Figure 118 Loop Guard - Probe Packet



The Switch also shuts down port **N** if the probe packet returns to switch **A** on any other port. In other words loop guard also protects against standard network loops. The following figure illustrates three switches forming a loop. A sample path of the loop guard probe packet is also shown. In this example, the probe packet is sent from port **N** and returns on another port. As long as loop guard is enabled on port **N**. The Switch will shut down port **N** if it detects that the probe packet has returned to the Switch.

Figure 119 Loop Guard - Network Loop



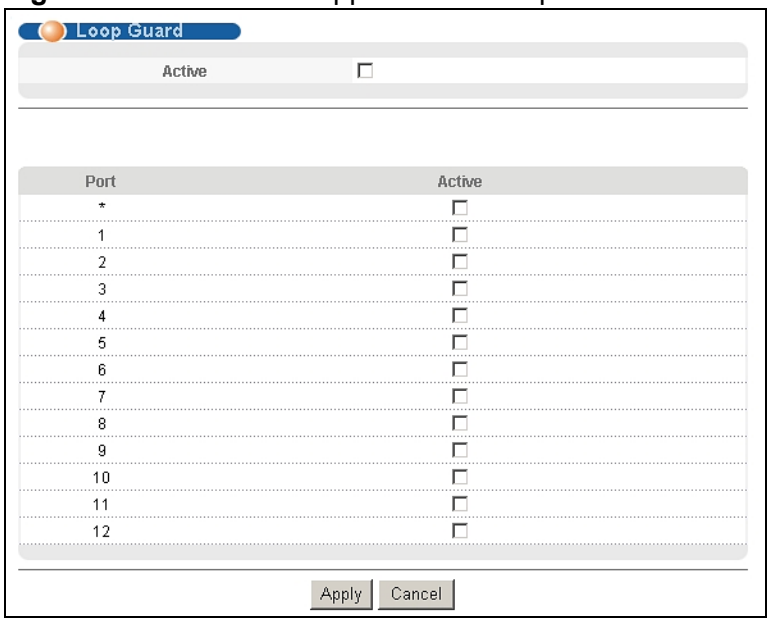
Note: After resolving the loop problem on your network you can re-activate the disabled port via the web configurator (see Section 8.8 on page 81) or via commands (See the CLI Reference Guide).

27.4 Loop Guard Setup

Click **Advanced Application** > **Loop Guard** in the navigation panel to display the screen as shown.

Note: The loop guard feature can not be enabled on the ports that have Spanning Tree Protocol (RSTP, MRSTP or MSTP) enabled.

Figure 120 Advanced Application > Loop Guard



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 77 Advanced Application > Loop Guard

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Active	Select this option to enable loop guard on the Switch. The Switch generates syslog, internal log messages as well as SNMP traps when it shuts down a port via the loop guard feature.
Port	This field displays the port number.
*	Use this row to make the setting the same for all ports. Use this row first and then make adjustments on a port-by-port basis. Note: Changes in this row are copied to all the ports as soon as you make them.
Active	Select this check box to enable the loop guard feature on this port. The Switch sends probe packets from this port to check if the switch it is connected to is in loop state. If the switch that this port is connected is in loop state the Switch will shut down this port. Clear this check box to disable the loop guard feature.
Apply	Click **Apply** to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the **Save** link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to begin configuring this screen afresh.

28

Layer 2 Protocol Tunneling

28.1 Overview

This chapter shows you how to configure layer 2 protocol tunneling on the Switch.

Layer 2 protocol tunneling (L2PT) is used on the service provider's edge devices.

28.2 What You Can Do

Use the **Layer 2 Protocol Tunnel** screen (Section 28.4 on page 247) to enable layer 2 protocol tunneling on the Switch and specify a MAC address with which the Switch uses to encapsulate the layer 2 protocol packets by replacing the destination MAC address in the packets.

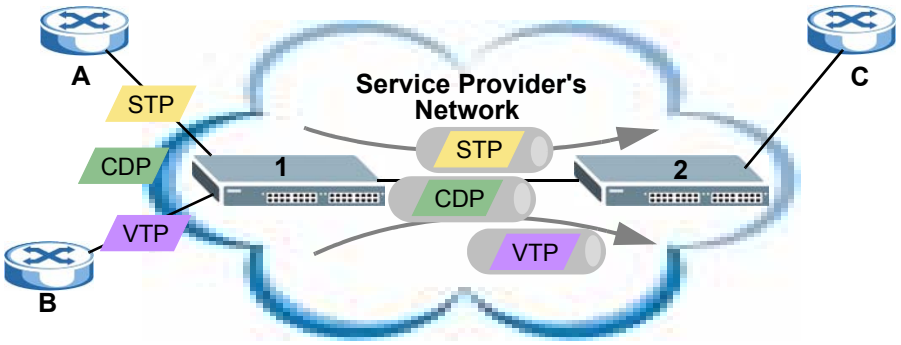
28.3 What You Need to Know

Layer 2 protocol tunneling (L2PT) is used on the service provider's edge devices.

L2PT allows edge switches (**1** and **2** in the following figure) to tunnel layer 2 STP (Spanning Tree Protocol), CDP (Cisco Discovery Protocol) and VTP (VLAN Trunking Protocol) packets between customer switches (**A**, **B** and **C** in the following figure) connected through the service provider’s network. The edge switch encapsulates

layer 2 protocol packets with a specific MAC address before sending them across the service provider's network to other edge switches.

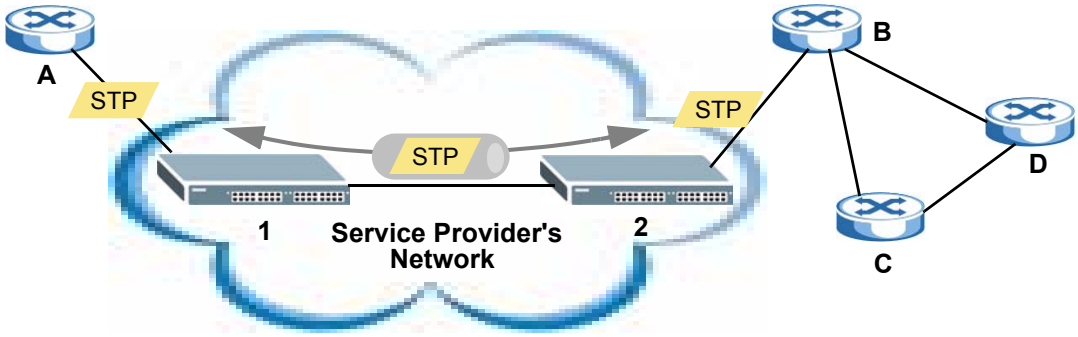
Figure 121 Layer 2 Protocol Tunneling Network Scenario



In the following example, if you enable L2PT for STP, you can have switches **A**, **B**, **C** and **D** in the same spanning tree, even though switch **A** is not directly connected to switches **B**, **C** and **D**. Topology change information can be propagated throughout the service provider's network.

To emulate a point-to-point topology between two customer switches at different sites, such as **A** and **B**, you can enable protocol tunneling on edge switches **1** and **2** for PAgP (Port Aggregation Protocol), LACP or UDLD (UniDirectional Link Detection).

Figure 122 L2PT Network Example



28.3.1 Layer 2 Protocol Tunneling Mode

Each port can have two layer 2 protocol tunneling modes, **Access** and **Tunnel**.

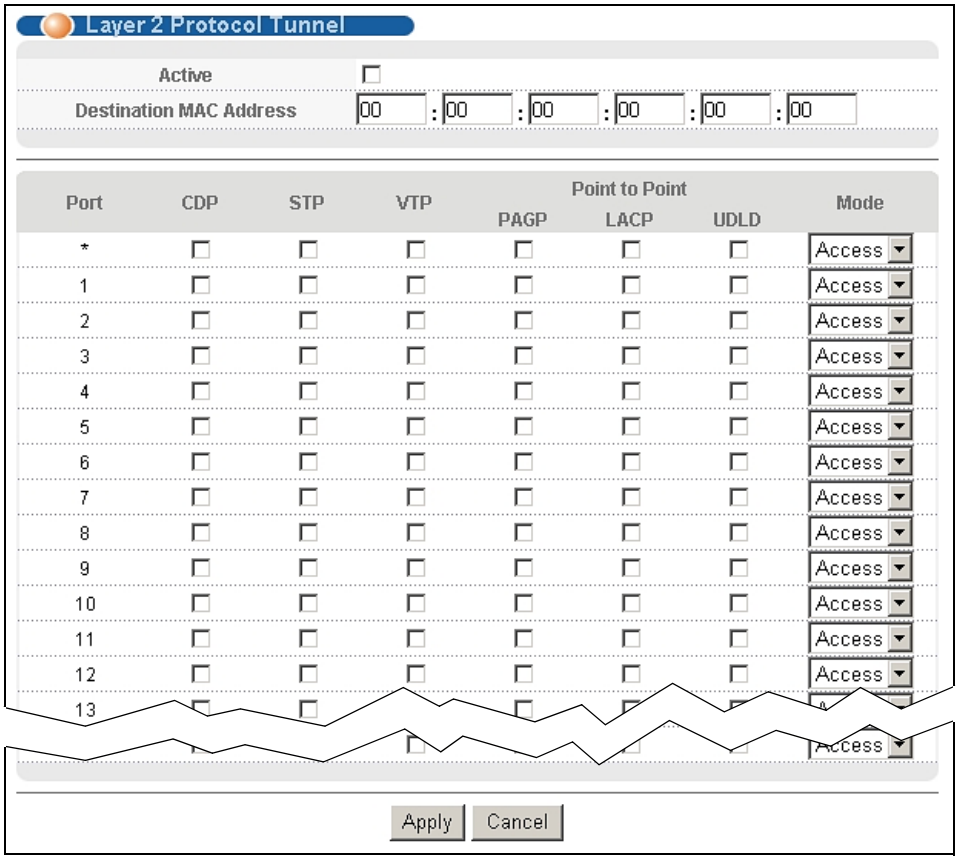
- The **Access** port is an ingress port on the service provider's edge device (**1** or **2** in Figure 122 on page 246) and connected to a customer switch (**A** or **B**). Incoming layer 2 protocol packets received on an access port are encapsulated and forwarded to the tunnel ports.

- The **Tunnel** port is an egress port at the edge of the service provider's network and connected to another service provider's switch. Incoming encapsulated layer 2 protocol packets received on a tunnel port are decapsulated and sent to an access port.

28.4 Configuring Layer 2 Protocol Tunneling

Click **Advanced Application** > **Layer 2 Protocol Tunneling** in the navigation panel to display the screen as shown.

Figure 123 Advanced Application > Layer 2 Protocol Tunneling



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 78 Advanced Application > Layer 2 Protocol Tunneling

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Active	Select this to enable layer 2 protocol tunneling on the Switch.
Destination MAC Address	Specify a MAC address with which the Switch uses to encapsulate the layer 2 protocol packets by replacing the destination MAC address in the packets. Note: The MAC address can be either a unicast MAC address or multicast MAC address. If you use a unicast MAC address, make sure the MAC address does not exist in the address table of a switch on the service provider's network. Note: All the edge switches in the service provider's network should be set to use the same MAC address for encapsulation.
Port	This field displays the port number.
*	Use this row to make the setting the same for all ports. Use this row first and then make adjustments on a port-by-port basis. Note: Changes in this row are copied to all the ports as soon as you make them.
CDP	Select this option to have the Switch tunnel CDP (Cisco Discovery Protocol) packets so that other Cisco devices can be discovered through the service provider's network.
STP	Select this option to have the Switch tunnel STP (Spanning Tree Protocol) packets so that STP can run properly across the service provider's network and spanning trees can be set up based on bridge information from all (local and remote) networks.
VTP	Select this option to have the Switch tunnel VTP (VLAN Trunking Protocol) packets so that all customer switches can use consistent VLAN configuration through the service provider's network.
Point to Point	The Switch supports PAgP (Port Aggregation Protocol), LACP (Link Aggregation Control Protocol) and UDLD (UniDirectional Link Detection) tunneling for a point-to-point topology. Both PAgP and UDLD are Cisco's proprietary data link layer protocols. PAgP is similar to LACP and used to set up a logical aggregation of Ethernet ports automatically. UDLD is to determine the link's physical status and detect a unidirectional link.
PAGP	Select this option to have the Switch send PAgP packets to a peer to automatically negotiate and build a logical port aggregation.
LACP	Select this option to have the Switch send LACP packets to a peer to dynamically creates and manages trunk groups.
UDLD	Select this option to have the Switch send UDLD packets to a peer's port it connected to monitor the physical status of a link.

Table 78 Advanced Application > Layer 2 Protocol Tunneling (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Mode	Select **Access** to have the Switch encapsulate the incoming layer 2 protocol packets and forward them to the tunnel port(s). Select **Access** for ingress ports at the edge of the service provider's network. Note: You can enable L2PT services for STP, LACP, VTP, CDP, UDLD, and PAGP on the access port(s) only. Select **Tunnel** for egress ports at the edge of the service provider's network. The Switch decapsulates the encapsulated layer 2 protocol packets received on a tunnel port by changing the destination MAC address to the original one, and then forward them to an access port. If the service(s) is not enabled on an access port, the protocol packets are dropped.
Apply	Click **Apply** to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the **Save** link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to begin configuring this screen afresh.

PART IV
IP Application

Static Route (253)

Differentiated Services (257)

DHCP (261)

29

Static Route

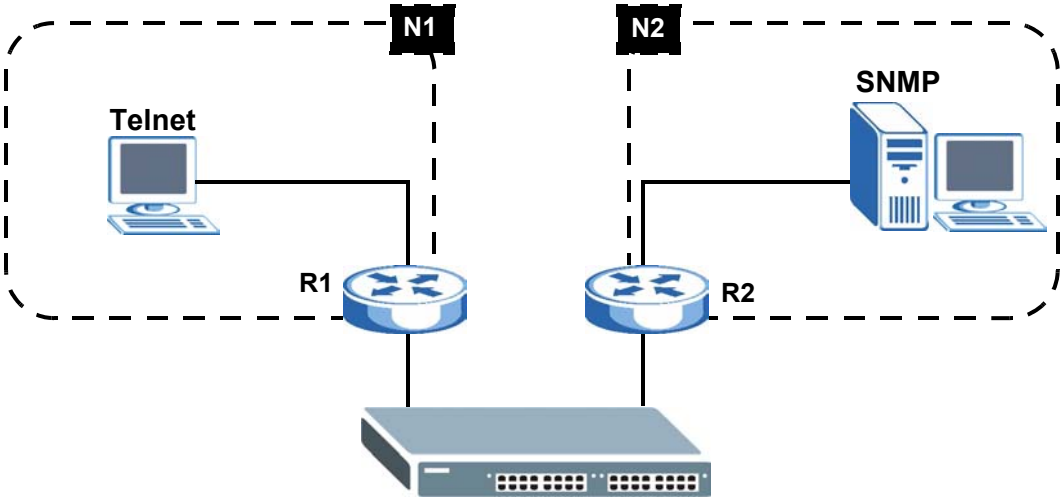
29.1 Overview

This chapter shows you how to configure static routes.

The Switch uses IP for communication with management computers, for example using HTTP, Telnet, SSH, or SNMP. Use IP static routes to have the Switch respond to remote management stations that are not reachable through the default gateway. The Switch can also use static routes to send data to a server or device that is not reachable through the default gateway, for example when sending SNMP traps or using ping to test IP connectivity.

This figure shows a **Telnet** session coming in from network **N1**. The Switch sends reply traffic to default gateway **R1** which routes it back to the manager's computer. The Switch needs a static route to tell it to use router **R2** to send traffic to an SNMP trap server on network **N2**.

Figure 124 Static Routing Overview



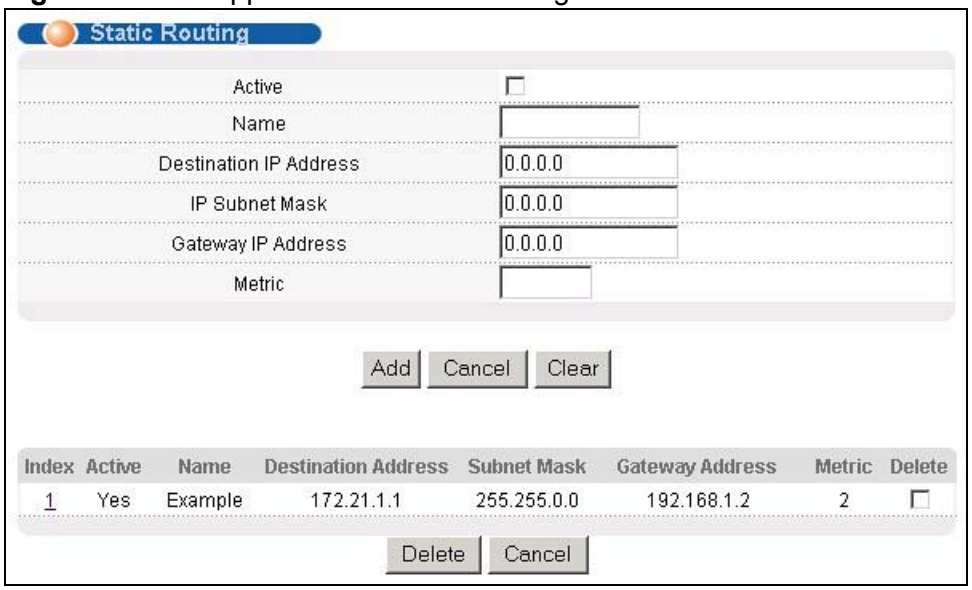
29.2 What You Can Do

Use the **Static Routing** screen (Section 29.3 on page 254) to activate/deactivate this static route.

29.3 Configuring Static Routing

Click **IP Application > Static Routing** in the navigation panel to display the screen as shown.

Figure 125 IP Application > Static Routing



The following table describes the related labels you use to create a static route.

Table 79 IP Application > Static Routing

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Active	This field allows you to activate/deactivate this static route.
Name	Enter a descriptive name (up to 10 printable ASCII characters) for identification purposes.
Destination IP Address	This parameter specifies the IP network address of the final destination.
IP Subnet Mask	Enter the subnet mask for this destination. Routing is always based on network number. If you need to specify a route to a single host, use a subnet mask of 255.255.255.255 in the subnet mask field to force the network number to be identical to the host ID.
Gateway IP Address	Enter the IP address of the gateway. The gateway is an immediate neighbor of your Switch that will forward the packet to the destination. The gateway must be a router on the same segment as your Switch.

Table 79 IP Application > Static Routing (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Metric	The metric represents the "cost" of transmission for routing purposes. IP routing uses hop count as the measurement of cost, with a minimum of 1 for directly connected networks. Enter a number that approximates the cost for this link. The number need not be precise, but it must be between 1 and 15. In practice, 2 or 3 is usually a good number.
Add	Click **Add** to insert a new static route to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the **Save** link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to reset the above fields to your previous configuration.
Clear	Click **Clear** to set the above fields back to the factory defaults.
Index	This field displays the index number of the route. Click a number to edit the static route entry.
Active	This field displays **Yes** when the static route is activated and **NO** when it is deactivated.
Name	This field displays the descriptive name for this route. This is for identification purposes only.
Destination Address	This field displays the IP network address of the final destination.
Subnet Mask	This field displays the subnet mask for this destination.
Gateway Address	This field displays the IP address of the gateway. The gateway is an immediate neighbor of your Switch that will forward the packet to the destination.
Metric	This field displays the cost of transmission for routing purposes.
Delete	Click **Delete** to remove the selected entry from the summary table.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to clear the **Delete** check boxes.

30

Differentiated Services

30.1 Overview

This chapter shows you how to configure Differentiated Services (DiffServ) on the Switch.

Quality of Service (QoS) is used to prioritize source-to-destination traffic flows. All packets in the flow are given the same priority. You can use CoS (class of service) to give different priorities to different packet types.

DiffServ is a class of service (CoS) model that marks packets so that they receive specific per-hop treatment at DiffServ-compliant network devices along the route based on the application types and traffic flow. Packets are marked with DiffServ Code Points (DSCPs) indicating the level of service desired. This allows the intermediary DiffServ-compliant network devices to handle the packets differently depending on the code points without the need to negotiate paths or remember state information for every flow. In addition, applications do not have to request a particular service or give advanced notice of where the traffic is going.

30.2 What You Can Do

- Use the **DiffServ** screen (Section 30.4 on page 259) to activate DiffServ to apply marking rules or IEEE 802.1p priority mapping on the Switch.
- Use the **DSCP** screen (Section 30.5.1 on page 260) to change the DSCP-IEEE 802.1p mapping.

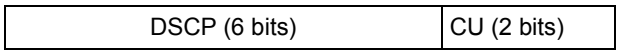
30.3 What You Need to Know

Read on for concepts on Differentiated Services that can help you configure the screens in this chapter.

30.3.1 DSCP and Per-Hop Behavior

DiffServ defines a new DS (Differentiated Services) field to replace the Type of Service (ToS) field in the IP header. The DS field contains a 6-bit DSCP field which can define up to 64 service levels and the remaining 2 bits are defined as currently unused (CU). The following figure illustrates the DS field.

Figure 126 DiffServ: Differentiated Service Field



DSCP is backward compatible with the three precedence bits in the ToS octet so that non-DiffServ compliant, ToS-enabled network device will not conflict with the DSCP mapping.

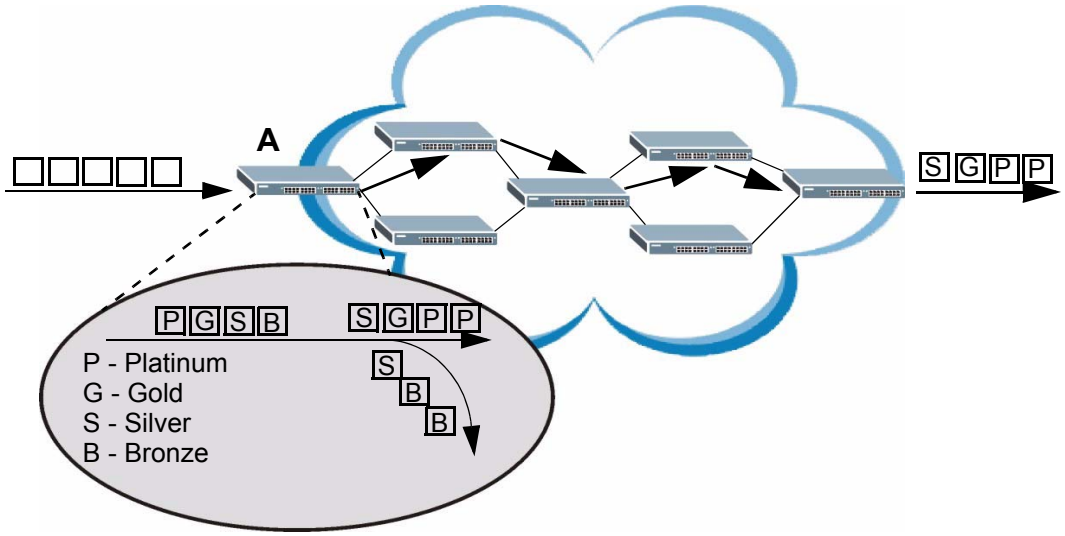
The DSCP value determines the PHB (Per-Hop Behavior), that each packet gets as it is forwarded across the DiffServ network. Based on the marking rule different kinds of traffic can be marked for different priorities of forwarding. Resources can then be allocated according to the DSCP values and the configured policies.

30.3.2 DiffServ Network Example

The following figure depicts a DiffServ network consisting of a group of directly connected DiffServ-compliant network devices. The boundary node (**A** in Figure 127) in a DiffServ network classifies (marks with a DSCP value) the incoming packets into different traffic flows (**Platinum**, **Gold**, **Silver**, **Bronze**) based on the configured marking rules. A network administrator can then apply various traffic policies to the traffic flows. An example traffic policy, is to give higher drop precedence to one traffic flow over others. In our example, packets in the **Bronze**

traffic flow are more likely to be dropped when congestion occurs than the packets in the **Platinum** traffic flow as they move across the DiffServ network.

Figure 127 DiffServ Network

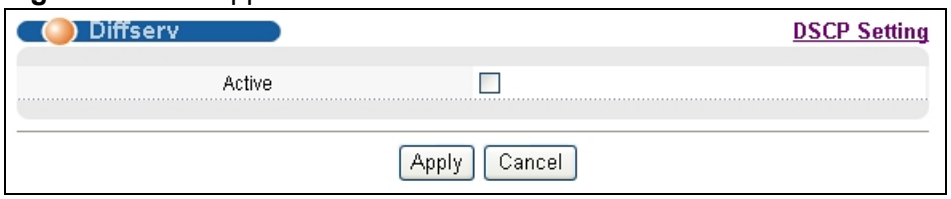


30.4 Activating DiffServ

Activate DiffServ to apply marking rules or IEEE 802.1p priority mapping on the Switch.

Click **IP Application** > **DiffServ** in the navigation panel to display the screen as shown.

Figure 128 IP Application > DiffServ



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 80 IP Application > DiffServ

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Active	Select this option to enable DiffServ on the Switch.
Apply	Click **Apply** to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the **Save** link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to begin configuring this screen afresh.

30.5 DSCP-to-IEEE 802.1p Priority Settings

You can configure the DSCP to IEEE 802.1p mapping to allow the Switch to prioritize all traffic based on the incoming DSCP value according to the DiffServ to IEEE 802.1p mapping table.

The following table shows the default DSCP-to-IEEE802.1p mapping.

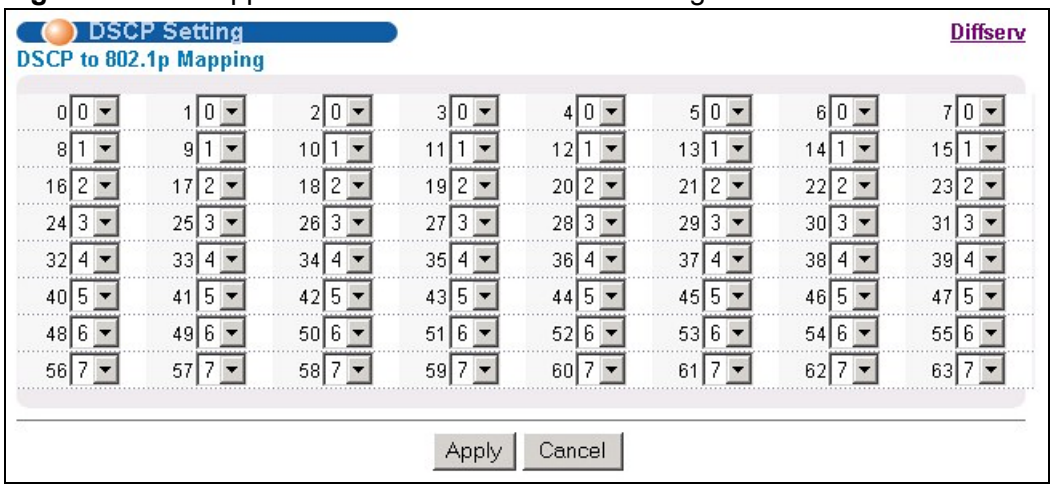
Table 81 Default DSCP-IEEE 802.1p Mapping

DSCP VALUE	0 – 7	8 – 15	16 – 23	24 – 31	32 – 39	40 – 47	48 – 55	56 – 63
IEEE 802.1p	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7

30.5.1 Configuring DSCP Settings

To change the DSCP-IEEE 802.1p mapping click the **DSCP Setting** link in the **DiffServ** screen to display the screen as shown next.

Figure 129 IP Application > DiffServ > DSCP Setting



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 82 IP Application > DiffServ > DSCP Setting

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
0 … 63	This is the DSCP classification identification number. To set the IEEE 802.1p priority mapping, select the priority level from the drop-down list box.
Apply	Click **Apply** to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the **Save** link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to begin configuring this screen afresh.

31 DHCP

31.1 DHCP Overview

This chapter shows you how to configure the DHCP feature.

DHCP (Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol RFC 2131 and RFC 2132) allows individual computers to obtain TCP/IP configuration at start-up from a server. You can configure the Switch as a DHCP server or a DHCP relay agent. When configured as a server, the Switch provides the TCP/IP configuration for the clients. If you configure the Switch as a relay agent, then the Switch forwards DHCP requests to DHCP server on your network. If you don't configure the Switch as a DHCP server or relay agent then you must have a DHCP server in the broadcast domain of the client computers or else the client computers must be configured manually.

31.2 What You Can Do

- Use the **DHCP Status** screen (Section 31.4 on page 263) to display the relay mode.
- Use the **DHCP Relay** screen (Section 31.5 on page 264) to enable and configure global DHCP relay.
- Use the **VLAN Setting** screen (Section 31.6 on page 265) to configure your DHCP settings based on the VLAN domain of the DHCP clients.

31.3 What You Need to Know

Read on for concepts on DHCP that can help you configure the screens in this chapter.

31.3.1 DHCP Modes

If there is already a DHCP server on your network, then you can configure the Switch as a DHCP relay agent. When the Switch receives a request from a

computer on your network, it contacts the DHCP server for the necessary IP information, and then relays the assigned information back to the computer.

31.3.2 DHCP Configuration Options

The DHCP configuration on the Switch is divided into **Global** and **VLAN** screens. The screen you should use for configuration depends on the DHCP services you want to offer the DHCP clients on your network. Choose the configuration screen based on the following criteria:

- **Global**: The Switch forwards all DHCP requests to the same DHCP server.
- **VLAN**: The Switch is configured on a VLAN by VLAN basis. The Switch can be configured to relay DHCP requests to different DHCP servers for clients in different VLAN.

31.3.3 DHCP Relay

Configure DHCP relay on the Switch if the DHCP clients and the DHCP server are not in the same broadcast domain. During the initial IP address leasing, the Switch helps to relay network information (such as the IP address and subnet mask) between a DHCP client and a DHCP server. Once the DHCP client obtains an IP address and can connect to the network, network information renewal is done between the DHCP client and the DHCP server without the help of the Switch.

The Switch can be configured as a global DHCP relay. This means that the Switch forwards all DHCP requests from all domains to the same DHCP server. You can also configure the Switch to relay DHCP information based on the VLAN membership of the DHCP clients.

31.3.4 DHCP Relay Agent Information

The Switch can add information about the source of client DHCP requests that it relays to a DHCP server by adding **Relay Agent Information**. This helps provide authentication about the source of the requests. The DHCP server can then provide an IP address based on this information. Please refer to RFC 3046 for more details.

The DHCP **Relay Agent Information** feature adds an Agent Information field to the **Option 82** field. The **Option 82** field is in the DHCP headers of client DHCP request frames that the Switch relays to a DHCP server.

Relay Agent Information can include the **System Name** of the Switch if you select this option. You can change the **System Name** in **Basic Settings** > **General Setup**.

The following describes the DHCP relay information that the Switch sends to the DHCP server:

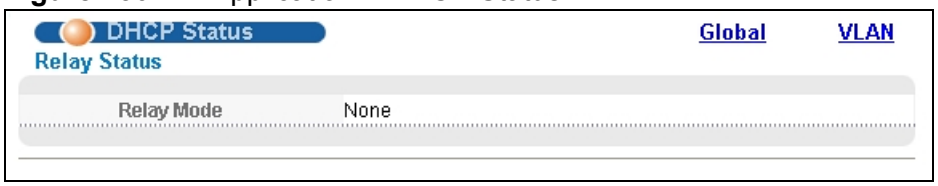
Table 83 Relay Agent Information

FIELD LABELS	DESCRIPTION
Slot ID	(1 byte) This value is always 0 for stand-alone switches.
Port ID	(1 byte) This is the port that the DHCP client is connected to.
VLAN ID	(2 bytes) This is the VLAN that the port belongs to.
Information	(up to 64 bytes) This optional, read-only field is set according to system name set in **Basic Settings > General Setup.**

31.4 DHCP Status

Click **IP Application** > **DHCP** in the navigation panel. The **DHCP Status** screen displays.

Figure 130 IP Application > DHCP Status



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

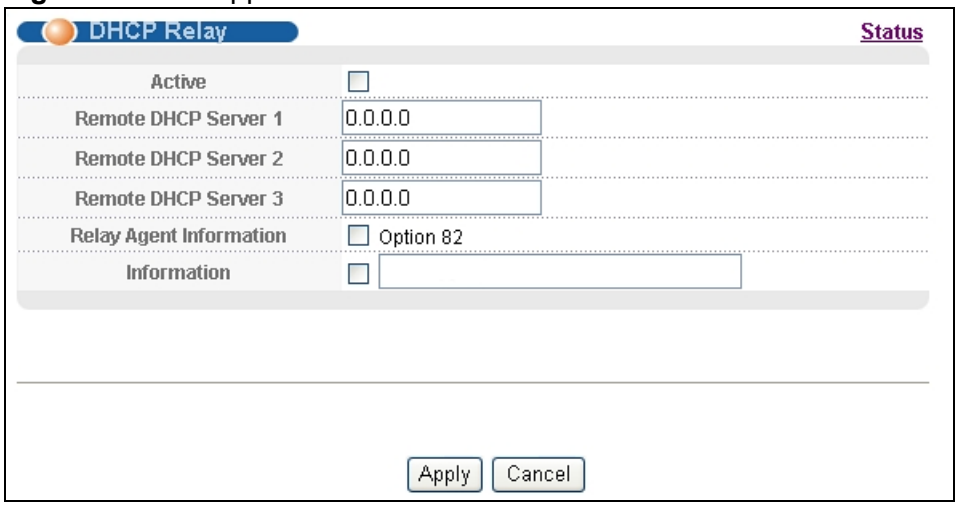
Table 84 IP Application > DHCP

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Relay Mode	This field displays: • **None**: if the Switch is not configured as a DHCP relay agent. • **Global**: if the Switch is configured as a DHCP relay agent only. • **VLAN**: followed by a VLAN ID if it is configured as a relay agent for specific VLAN(s).

31.5 Configuring DHCP Global Relay

Configure global DHCP relay in the **DHCP Relay** screen. Click **IP Application > DHCP** in the navigation panel and click the **Global** link to display the screen as shown.

Figure 131 IP Application > DHCP > Global



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

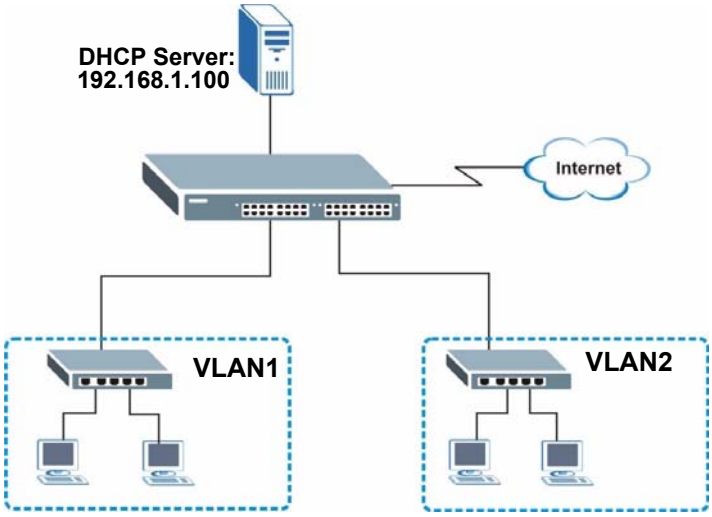
Table 85 IP Application > DHCP > Global

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Active	Select this check box to enable DHCP relay.
Remote DHCP Server 1 .. 3	Enter the IP address of a DHCP server in dotted decimal notation.
Relay Agent Information	Select the **Option 82** check box to have the Switch add information (slot number, port number and VLAN ID) to client DHCP requests that it relays to a DHCP server.
Information	This read-only field displays the system name you configure in the **General Setup** screen. Select the check box for the Switch to add the system name to the client DHCP requests that it relays to a DHCP server.
Apply	Click **Apply** to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the **Save** link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to begin configuring this screen afresh.

31.5.1 Global DHCP Relay Configuration Example

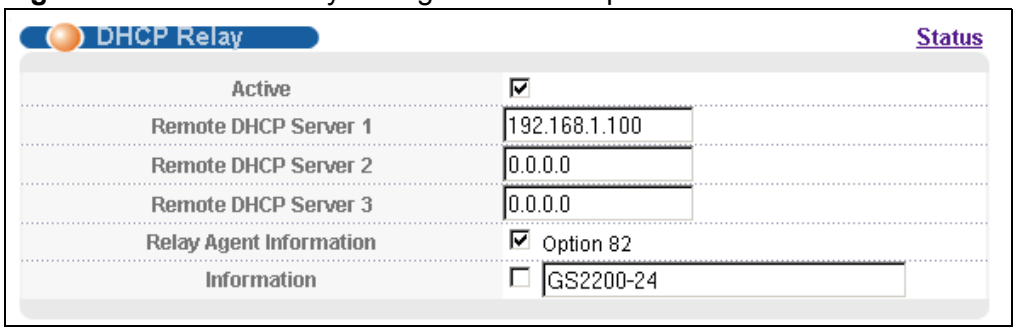
The following figure shows a network example where the Switch is used to relay DHCP requests for the **VLAN1** and **VLAN2** domains. There is only one DHCP server that services the DHCP clients in both domains.

Figure 132 Global DHCP Relay Network Example



Configure the **DHCP Relay** screen as shown. Make sure you select the **Option 82** check box to set the Switch to send additional information (such as the VLAN ID) together with the DHCP requests to the DHCP server. This allows the DHCP server to assign the appropriate IP address according to the VLAN ID.

Figure 133 DHCP Relay Configuration Example



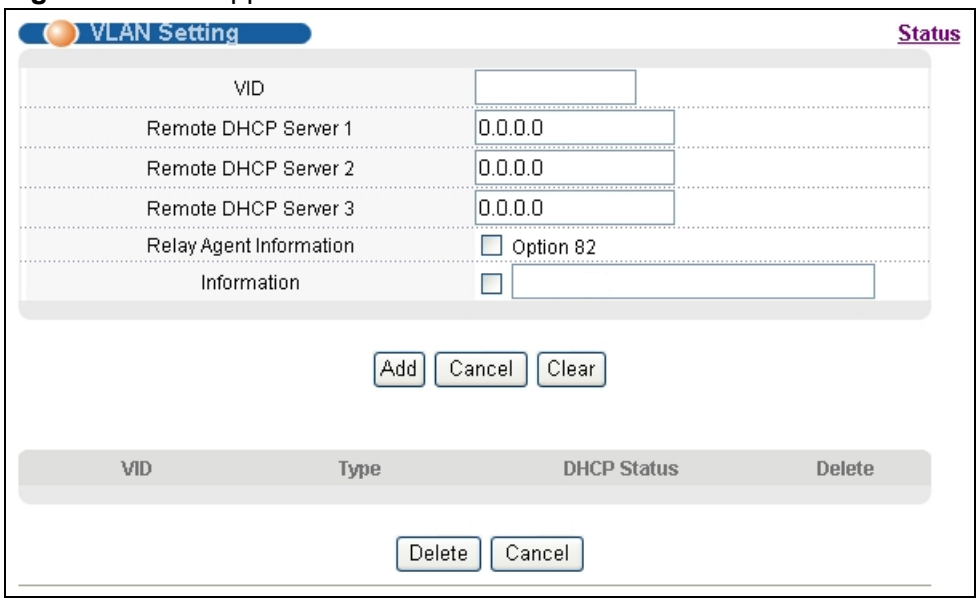
31.6 Configuring DHCP VLAN Settings

Use this screen to configure your DHCP settings based on the VLAN domain of the DHCP clients. Click **IP Application** > **DHCP** in the navigation panel, then click the **VLAN** link In the **DHCP Status** screen that displays.

Note: You must set up a management IP address for each VLAN that you want to configure DHCP settings for on the Switch.

See Section 8.7 on page 78 for information on how to set up management IP addresses for VLANs.

Figure 134 IP Application > DHCP > VLAN



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 86 IP Application > DHCP > VLAN

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
VID	Enter the ID number of the VLAN to which these DHCP settings apply.
Remote DHCP Server 1 .. 3	Enter the IP address of a DHCP server in dotted decimal notation.
Relay Agent Information	Select the **Option 82** check box to have the Switch add information (slot number, port number and VLAN ID) to client DHCP requests that it relays to a DHCP server.
Information	This read-only field displays the system name you configure in the **General Setup** screen. Select the check box for the Switch to add the system name to the client DHCP requests that it relays to a DHCP server.
Add	Click **Add** to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the **Save** link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to begin configuring this screen afresh.
Clear	Click this to clear the fields above.
VID	This field displays the ID number of the VLAN group to which this DHCP settings apply.

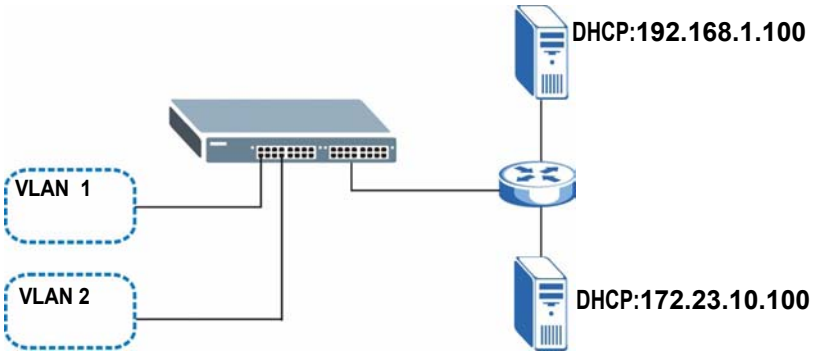
Table 86 IP Application > DHCP > VLAN (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Type	This field displays the DHCP mode (**Relay**).
DHCP Status	For DHCP relay configuration, this field displays the first remote DHCP server IP address.
Delete	Select the configuration entries you want to remove and click **Delete** to remove them.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to clear the **Delete** check boxes.

31.6.1 Example: DHCP Relay for Two VLANs

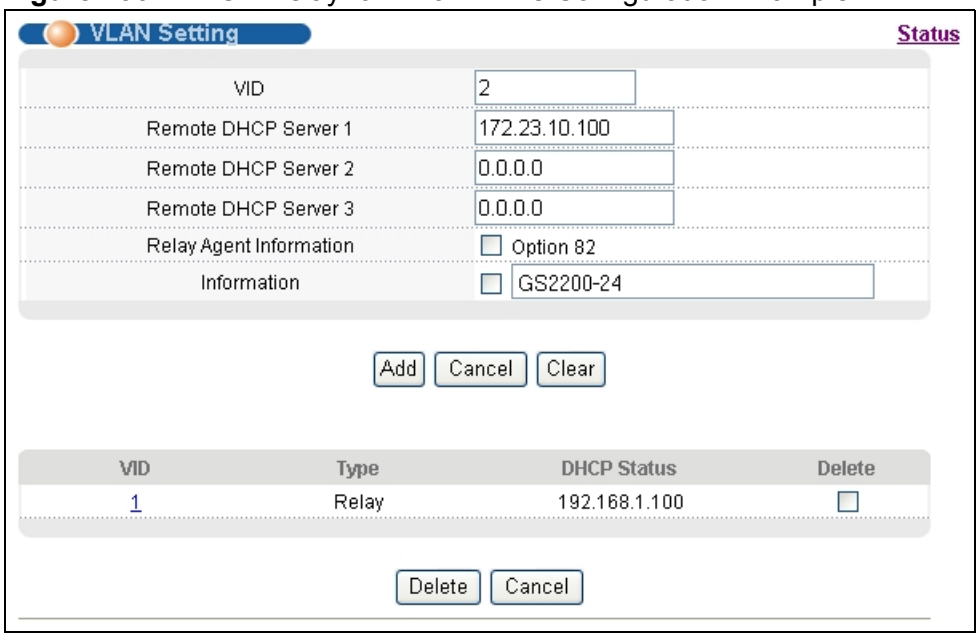
The following example displays two VLANs (VIDs 1 and 2) for a campus network. Two DHCP servers are installed to serve each VLAN. The system is set up to forward DHCP requests from the dormitory rooms (VLAN 1) to the DHCP server with an IP address of 192.168.1.100. Requests from the academic buildings (VLAN 2) are sent to the other DHCP server with an IP address of 172.23.10.100.

Figure 135 DHCP Relay for Two VLANs



For the example network, configure the **VLAN Setting** screen as shown.

Figure 136 DHCP Relay for Two VLANs Configuration Example



PART V
Management

Maintenance (271)

Access Control (279)

Diagnostic (301)

Syslog (303)

Cluster Management (307)

MAC Table (315)

ARP Table (319)

Configure Clone (321)

32

Maintenance

32.1 Overview

This chapter explains how to configure the screens that let you maintain the firmware and configuration files.

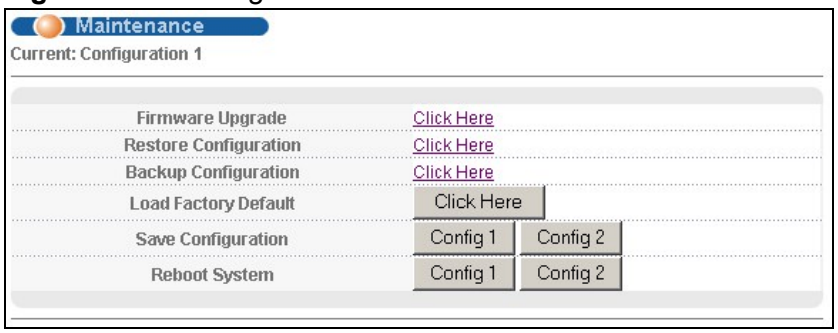
32.2 What You Can Do

- Use the **Maintenance** screen (Section 32.3 on page 271) to upload the latest firmware.
- Use the **Firmware Upgrade** screen (Section 32.4 on page 274) to upload the latest firmware.
- Use the **Restore Configuration** screen (Section 32.5 on page 274) to upload a stored device configuration file.
- Use the **Backup Configuration** screen (Section 32.6 on page 275) to save your configurations for later use.

32.3 The Maintenance Screen

Use this screen to manage firmware and your configuration files. Click **Management** > **Maintenance** in the navigation panel to open the following screen.

Figure 137 Management > Maintenance



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 87 Management > Maintenance

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Current	This field displays which configuration (**Configuration 1** or **Configuration 2**) is currently operating on the Switch.
Firmware Upgrade	Click **Click Here** to go to the **Firmware Upgrade** screen.
Restore Configuration	Click **Click Here** to go to the **Restore Configuration** screen.
Backup Configuration	Click **Click Here** to go to the **Backup Configuration** screen.
Load Factory Default	Click **Click Here** to reset the configuration to the factory default settings.
Save Configuration	Click **Config 1** to save the current configuration settings to **Configuration 1** on the Switch. Click **Config 2** to save the current configuration settings to **Configuration 2** on the Switch.
Reboot System	Click **Config 1** to reboot the system and load **Configuration 1** on the Switch. Click **Config 2** to reboot the system and load **Configuration 2** on the Switch. Note: Make sure to click the **Save** button in any screen to save your settings to the current configuration on the Switch.

32.3.1 Load Factory Default

Follow the steps below to reset the Switch back to the factory defaults.

1 In the **Maintenance** screen, click the **Click Here** button next to **Load Factory Default** to clear all Switch configuration information you configured and return to the factory defaults.

2 Click **OK** to reset all Switch configurations to the factory defaults.

Figure 138 Load Factory Default: Start

3 In the web configurator, click the **Save** button in the top of the screen to make the changes take effect. If you want to access the Switch web configurator again, you may need to change the IP address of your computer to be in the same subnet as that of the default Switch IP address (192.168.1.1).

32.3.2 Save Configuration

Click **Config 1** to save the current configuration settings permanently to **Configuration 1** on the Switch.

Click **Config 2** to save the current configuration settings to **Configuration 2** on the Switch.

Alternatively, click Save on the top right-hand corner in any screen to save the configuration changes to the current configuration.

Note: Clicking the **Apply** or **Add** button does NOT save the changes permanently. All unsaved changes are erased after you reboot the Switch.

32.3.3 Reboot System

Reboot System allows you to restart the Switch without physically turning the power off. It also allows you to load configuration one (**Config 1**) or configuration two (**Config 2**) when you reboot. Follow the steps below to reboot the Switch.

1 In the **Maintenance** screen, click the **Config 1** button next to **Reboot System** to reboot and load configuration one. The following screen displays.

Figure 139 Reboot System: Confirmation

2 Click **OK** again and then wait for the Switch to restart. This takes up to two minutes. This does not affect the Switch's configuration.

Click **Config 2** and follow steps 1 to 2 to reboot and load configuration two on the Switch.

32.4 Firmware Upgrade

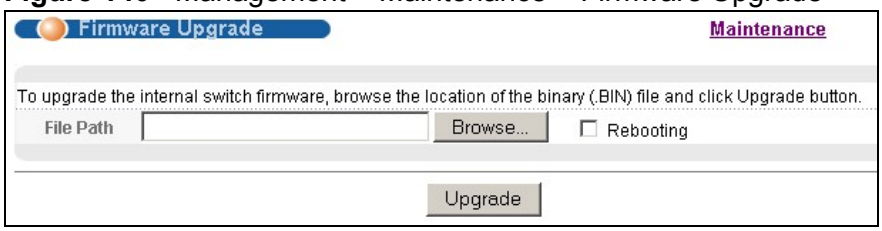
Use the following screen to upgrade your Switch to the latest firmware.

Make sure you have downloaded (and unzipped) the correct model firmware and version to your computer before uploading to the device.

Be sure to upload the correct model firmware as uploading the wrong model firmware may damage your device.

Click **Management** > **Maintenance** > **Firmware Upgrade** to view the screen as shown next.

Figure 140 Management > Maintenance > Firmware Upgrade



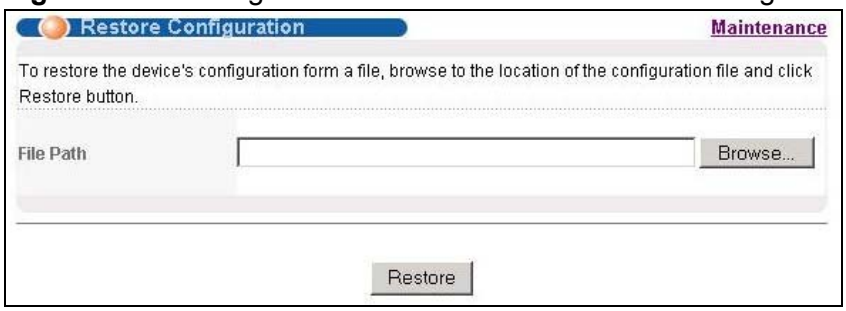
Type the path and file name of the firmware file you wish to upload to the Switch in the **File Path** text box or click **Browse** to locate it. Select the **Rebooting** checkbox if you want to reboot the Switch and apply the new firmware immediately. (Firmware upgrades are only applied after a reboot). Click **Upgrade** to load the new firmware.

After the firmware upgrade process is complete, see the **System Info** screen to verify your current firmware version number.

32.5 Restore a Configuration File

Use this screen to restore a previously saved configuration from your computer to the Switch using the **Restore Configuration** screen.

Figure 141 Management > Maintenance > Restore Configuration


Restore Configuration
Maintenance
To restore the device's configuration form a file, browse to the location of the configuration file and click Restore button.
File Path
Browse...
Restore

Type the path and file name of the configuration file you wish to restore in the **File Path** text box or click **Browse** to locate it. After you have specified the file, click **Restore**. "config" is the name of the configuration file on the Switch, so your backup configuration file is automatically renamed when you restore using this screen.

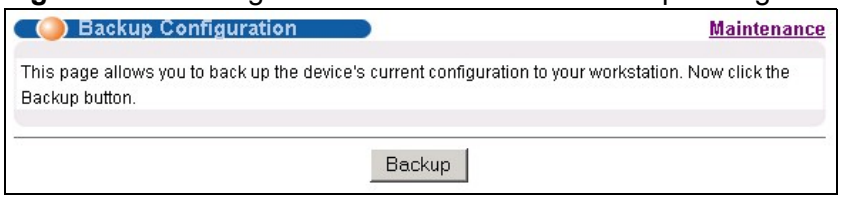
32.6 Backup a Configuration File

Use this screen to save and store your current device settings.

Backing up your Switch configurations allows you to create various "snap shots" of your device from which you may restore at a later date.

Back up your current Switch configuration to a computer using the **Backup Configuration** screen.

Figure 142 Management > Maintenance > Backup Configuration


Backup Configuration
Maintenance
This page allows you to back up the device's current configuration to your workstation. Now click the Backup button.
Backup

Follow the steps below to back up the current Switch configuration to your computer in this screen.

1 Click **Backup**.

2 Click **Save** to display the **Save As** screen.

3 Choose a location to save the file on your computer from the **Save in** drop-down list box and type a descriptive name for it in the **File name** list box. Click **Save** to save the configuration file to your computer.

32.7 Technical Reference

This section provides technical background information on the topics discussed in this chapter.

32.7.1 FTP Command Line

This section shows some examples of uploading to or downloading files from the Switch using FTP commands. First, understand the filename conventions.

32.7.2 Filename Conventions

The configuration file (also known as the romfile or ROM) contains the factory default settings in the screens such as password, Switch setup, IP Setup, and so on. Once you have customized the Switch's settings, they can be saved back to your computer under a filename of your choosing.

ZyNOS (ZyXEL Network Operating System sometimes referred to as the "ras" file) is the system firmware and has a "bin" filename extension.

Table 88 Filename Conventions

FILE TYPE	INTERNAL NAME	EXTERNAL NAME	DESCRIPTION
Configuration File	config	*.cfg	This is the configuration filename on the Switch. Uploading the config file replaces the specified configuration file system, including your Switch configurations, system-related data (including the default password), the error log and the trace log.
Firmware	ras	*.bin	This is the generic name for the ZyNOS firmware on the Switch.

32.7.2.1 Example FTP Commands

```
ftp> put firmware.bin ras
```

This is a sample FTP session showing the transfer of the computer file "firmware.bin" to the Switch.

```
ftp> get config config.cfg
```

This is a sample FTP session saving the current configuration to a file called "config.cfg" on your computer.

If your (T)FTP client does not allow you to have a destination filename different than the source, you will need to rename them as the Switch only recognizes "config" and "ras". Be sure you keep unaltered copies of both files for later use.

Be sure to upload the correct model firmware as uploading the wrong model firmware may damage your device.

32.7.3 FTP Command Line Procedure

1. Launch the FTP client on your computer.
2. Enter `open`, followed by a space and the IP address of your Switch.
3. Press [ENTER] when prompted for a username.
4. Enter your password as requested (the default is "1234").
5. Enter `bin` to set transfer mode to binary.
6. Use `put` to transfer files from the computer to the Switch, for example, `put firmware.bin ras` transfers the firmware on your computer (firmware.bin) to the Switch and renames it to "ras". Similarly, `put config.cfg config` transfers the configuration file on your computer (config.cfg) to the Switch and renames it to "config". Likewise `get config config.cfg` transfers the configuration file on the Switch to your computer and renames it to "config.cfg". See Table 88 on page 276 for more information on filename conventions.
7. Enter `quit` to exit the ftp prompt.

32.7.4 GUI-based FTP Clients

The following table describes some of the commands that you may see in GUI-based FTP clients.

General Commands for GUI-based FTP Clients

COMMAND	DESCRIPTION
Host Address	Enter the address of the host server.
Login Type	Anonymous. This is when a user I.D. and password is automatically supplied to the server for anonymous access. Anonymous logins will work only if your ISP or service administrator has enabled this option. Normal. The server requires a unique User ID and Password to login.
Transfer Type	Transfer files in either ASCII (plain text format) or in binary mode. Configuration and firmware files should be transferred in binary mode.

General Commands for GUI-based FTP Clients (continued)

COMMAND	DESCRIPTION
Initial Remote Directory	Specify the default remote directory (path).
Initial Local Directory	Specify the default local directory (path).

32.7.5 FTP Restrictions

FTP will not work when:

- FTP service is disabled in the **Service Access Control** screen.
- The IP address(es) in the **Remote Management** screen does not match the client IP address. If it does not match, the Switch will disconnect the FTP session immediately.

33

Access Control

33.1 Overview

This chapter describes how to control access to the Switch.

A console port and FTP are allowed one session each, Telnet and SSH share nine sessions, up to five Web sessions (five different user names and passwords) and/or limitless SNMP access control sessions are allowed.

Table 89 Access Control Overview

Console Port	SSH	Telnet	FTP	Web	SNMP
One session	Share up to nine sessions		One session	Up to five accounts	No limit

A console port access control session and Telnet access control session cannot coexist when multi-login is disabled. See the CLI Reference Guide for more information on disabling multi-login.

33.2 What You Can Do

- Use the **Access Control** screen (Section 33.3 on page 280) to display the main screen.
- Use the **SNMP** screen (Section 33.4 on page 280) to configure your SNMP settings.
- Use the **Trap Group** screen (Section 33.5 on page 283) to specify the types of SNMP traps that should be sent to each SNMP manager.
- Use the **Logins** screens (Section 33.6 on page 284) to assign which users can access the Switch via web configurator at any one time.
- Use the **Service Access Control** screen (Section 33.7 on page 285) to decide what services you may use to access the Switch.
- Use the **Remote Management** screen (Section 33.8 on page 286) to specify a group of one or more "trusted computers" from which an administrator may use a service to manage the Switch.

33.3 The Access Control Main Screen

Use this screen to display the main screen.

Click **Management** > **Access Control** in the navigation panel to display the main screen as shown.

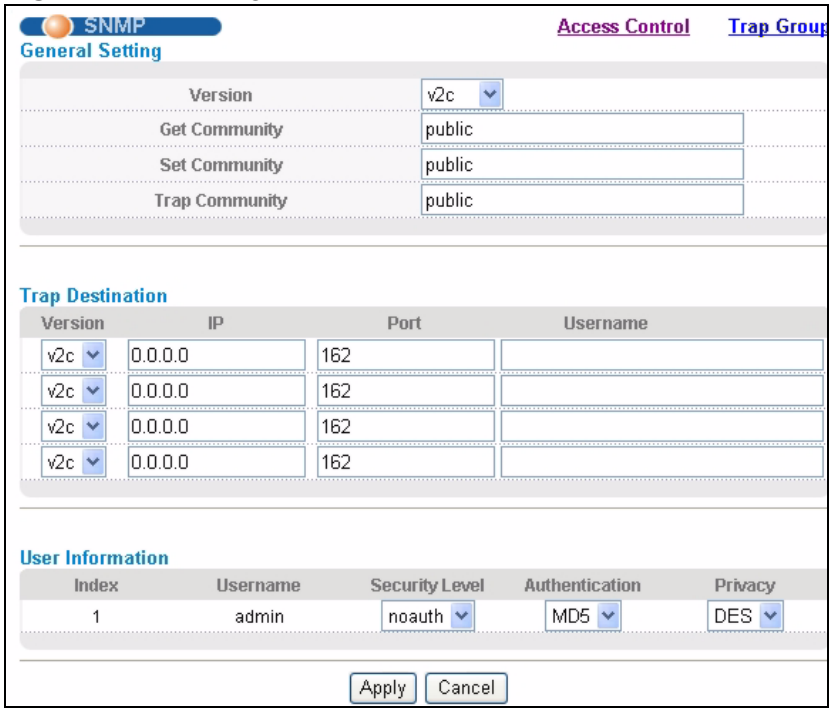
Figure 143 Management > Access Control

33.4 Configuring SNMP

Use this screen to configure your SNMP settings.

Click **Management** > **Access Control** > **SNMP** to view the screen as shown.

Figure 144 Management > Access Control > SNMP



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 90 Management > Access Control > SNMP

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
General Setting	Use this section to specify the SNMP version and community (password) values.
Version	Select the SNMP version for the Switch. The SNMP version on the Switch must match the version on the SNMP manager. Choose SNMP version 2c (**v2c**), SNMP version 3 (**v3**) or both (**v3v2c**). Note: SNMP version 2c is backwards compatible with SNMP version 1.
Get Community	Enter the **Get Community** string, which is the password for the incoming Get- and GetNext- requests from the management station. The **Get Community** string is only used by SNMP managers using SNMP version 2c or lower.
Set Community	Enter the **Set Community**, which is the password for incoming Set- requests from the management station. The **Set Community** string is only used by SNMP managers using SNMP version 2c or lower.
Trap Community	Enter the **Trap Community** string, which is the password sent with each trap to the SNMP manager. The **Trap Community** string is only used by SNMP managers using SNMP version 2c or lower.
Trap Destination	Use this section to configure where to send SNMP traps from the Switch.
Version	Specify the version of the SNMP trap messages.
IP	Enter the IP addresses of up to four managers to send your SNMP traps to.
Port	Enter the port number upon which the manager listens for SNMP traps.
Username	Enter the username to be sent to the SNMP manager along with the SNMP v3 trap. Note: This username must match an existing account on the Switch (configured in **Management** > **Access Control** > **Logins** screen).
User Information	Use this section to configure users for authentication with managers using SNMP v3. Note: Use the username and password of the login accounts you specify in this section to create accounts on the SNMP v3 manager.
Index	This is a read-only number identifying a login account on the Switch.
Username	This field displays the username of a login account on the Switch.

Table 90 Management > Access Control > SNMP (continued)

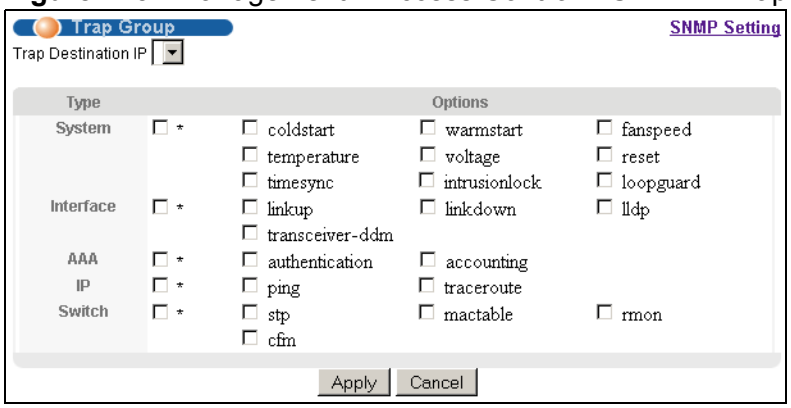
LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Security Level	Select whether you want to implement authentication and/or encryption for SNMP communication from this user. Choose: • **noauth** -to use the username as the password string to send to the SNMP manager. This is equivalent to the Get, Set and Trap Community in SNMP v2c. This is the lowest security level. • **auth** - to implement an authentication algorithm for SNMP messages sent by this user. • **priv** - to implement authentication and encryption for SNMP messages sent by this user. This is the highest security level. Note: The settings on the SNMP manager must be set at the same security level or higher than the security level settings on the Switch.
Authentication	Select an authentication algorithm. MD5 (Message Digest 5) and SHA (Secure Hash Algorithm) are hash algorithms used to authenticate SNMP data. SHA authentication is generally considered stronger than MD5, but is slower.
Privacy	Specify the encryption method for SNMP communication from this user. You can choose one of the following: • **DES** - Data Encryption Standard is a widely used (but breakable) method of data encryption. It applies a 56-bit key to each 64-bit block of data. • **AES** - Advanced Encryption Standard is another method for data encryption that also uses a secret key. AES applies a 128-bit key to 128-bit blocks of data.
Apply	Click **Apply** to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the **Save** link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to begin configuring this screen afresh.

33.5 Configuring SNMP Trap Group

Use the **Trap Group** screen to specify the types of SNMP traps that should be sent to each SNMP manager.

Click **Management** > **Access Control** > **SNMP** > **Trap Group** to view the screen as shown.

Figure 145 Management > Access Control > SNMP > Trap Group



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 91 Management > Access Control > SNMP > Trap Group

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Trap Destination IP	Select one of your configured trap destination IP addresses. These are the IP addresses of the SNMP managers. You must first configure a trap destination IP address in the **SNMP Setting** screen. Use the rest of the screen to select which traps the Switch sends to that SNMP manager.
Type	Select the categories of SNMP traps that the Switch is to send to the SNMP manager.
Options	Select the individual SNMP traps that the Switch is to send to the SNMP station. See Section on page 289 for individual trap descriptions. The traps are grouped by category. Selecting a category automatically selects all of the category's traps. Clear the check boxes for individual traps that you do not want the Switch to send to the SNMP station. Clearing a category's check box automatically clears all of the category's trap check boxes (the Switch only sends traps from selected categories).
Apply	Click **Apply** to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the **Save** link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to begin configuring this screen afresh.

33.6 Setting Up Login Accounts

Use this screen to assign which users can access the Switch via web configurator at any one time.

Up to five people (one administrator and four non-administrators) may access the Switch via web configurator at any one time.

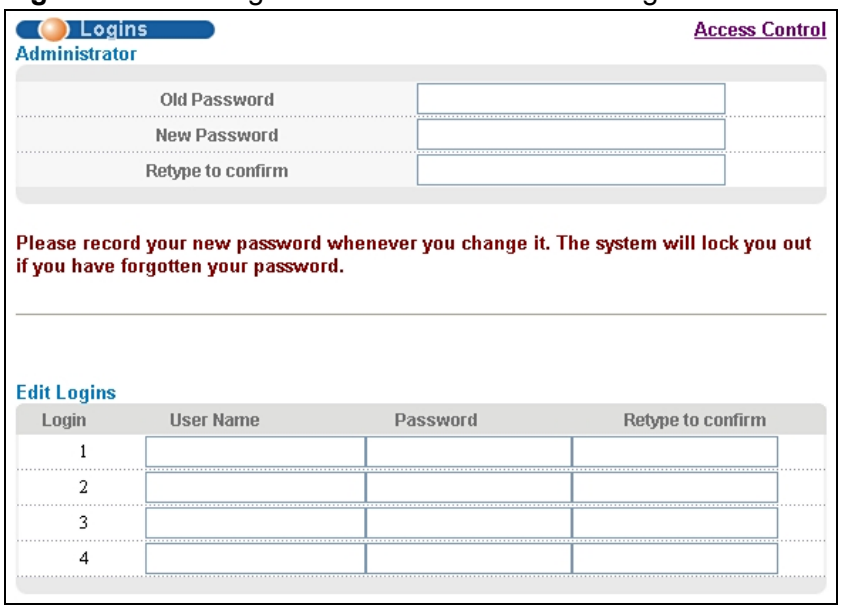
- An administrator is someone who can both view and configure Switch changes. The username for the Administrator is always **admin**. The default administrator password is **1234**.

Note: It is highly recommended that you change the default administrator password (**1234**).

- A non-administrator (username is something other than **admin**) is someone who can view but not configure Switch settings.

Click **Management** > **Access Control > Logins** to view the screen as shown next.

Figure 146 Management > Access Control > Logins



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 92 Management > Access Control > Logins

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Administrator This is the default administrator account with the "admin" user name. You cannot change the default administrator user name. Only the administrator has read/write access.	
Old Password	Type the existing system password (**1234** is the default password when shipped).
New Password	Enter your new system password.
Retype to confirm	Retype your new system password for confirmation
Edit Logins You may configure passwords for up to four users. These users have read-only access. You can give users higher privileges via the CLI. For more information on assigning privileges see the CLI Reference Guide.	
User Name	Set a user name (up to 32 ASCII characters long).
Password	Enter your new system password.
Retype to confirm	Retype your new system password for confirmation
Apply	Click **Apply** to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the **Save** link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to begin configuring this screen afresh.

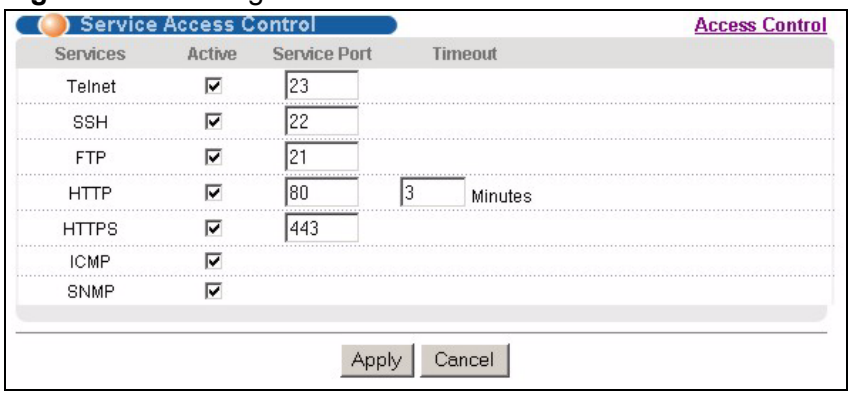
33.7 Service Port Access Control

Use this screen to decide what services you may use to access the Switch.

Service Access Control allows you to decide what services you may use to access the Switch. You may also change the default service port and configure "trusted computer(s)" for each service in the **Remote Management** screen (discussed

later). Click **Management** > **Access Control > Service Access Control** to view the screen as shown.

Figure 147 Management > Access Control > Service Access Control



The following table describes the fields in this screen.

Table 93 Management > Access Control > Service Access Control

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Services	Services you may use to access the Switch are listed here.
Active	Select this option for the corresponding services that you want to allow to access the Switch.
Service Port	For Telnet, SSH, FTP, HTTP or HTTPS services, you may change the default service port by typing the new port number in the **Server Port** field. If you change the default port number then you will have to let people (who wish to use the service) know the new port number for that service.
Timeout	Type how many minutes a management session (via the web configurator) can be left idle before the session times out. After it times out you have to log in with your password again. Very long idle timeouts may have security risks.
Apply	Click **Apply** to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the **Save** link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to begin configuring this screen afresh.

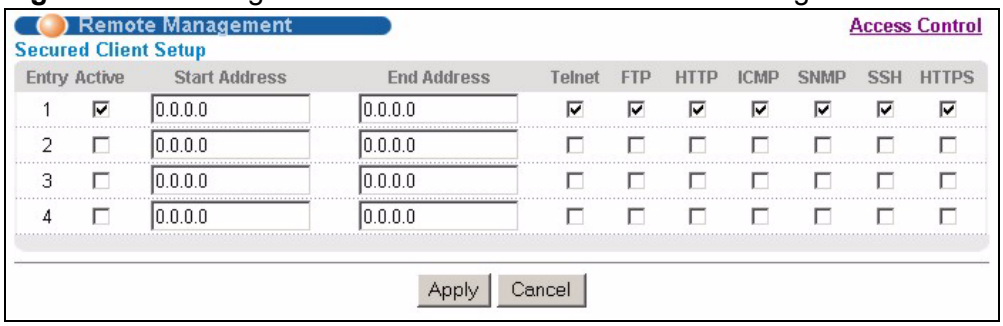
33.8 Remote Management

Use this screen to specify a group of one or more "trusted computers" from which an administrator may use a service to manage the Switch.

Click **Management** > **Access Control** > **Remote Management** to view the screen as shown next.

You can specify a group of one or more "trusted computers" from which an administrator may use a service to manage the Switch. Click **Access Control** to return to the **Access Control** screen.

Figure 148 Management > Access Control > Remote Management



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 94 Management > Access Control > Remote Management

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Entry	This is the client set index number. A "client set" is a group of one or more "trusted computers" from which an administrator may use a service to manage the Switch.
Active	Select this check box to activate this secured client set. Clear the check box if you wish to temporarily disable the set without deleting it.
Start Address End Address	Configure the IP address range of trusted computers from which you can manage this Switch. The Switch checks if the client IP address of a computer requesting a service or protocol matches the range set here. The Switch immediately disconnects the session if it does not match.
Telnet/FTP/ HTTP/ICMP/ SNMP/SSH/ HTTPS	Select services that may be used for managing the Switch from the specified trusted computers.
Apply	Click **Apply** to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the **Save** link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to begin configuring this screen afresh.

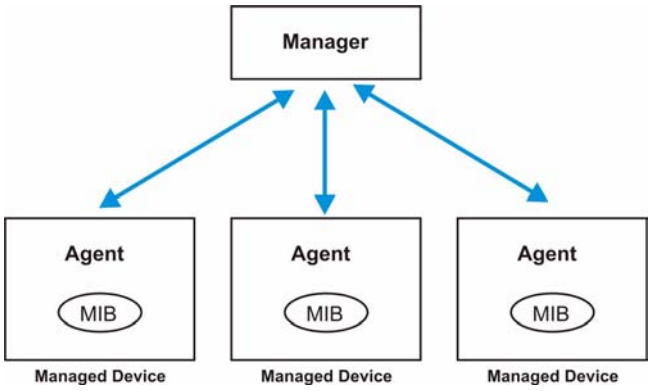
33.9 Technical Reference

This section provides technical background information on the topics discussed in this chapter.

33.9.1 About SNMP

Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP) is an application layer protocol used to manage and monitor TCP/IP-based devices. SNMP is used to exchange management information between the network management system (NMS) and a network element (NE). A manager station can manage and monitor the Switch through the network via SNMP version one (SNMPv1), SNMP version 2c or SNMP version 3. The next figure illustrates an SNMP management operation. SNMP is only available if TCP/IP is configured.

Figure 149 SNMP Management Model



An SNMP managed network consists of two main components: agents and a manager.

An agent is a management software module that resides in a managed switch (the Switch). An agent translates the local management information from the managed switch into a form compatible with SNMP. The manager is the console through which network administrators perform network management functions. It executes applications that control and monitor managed devices.

The managed devices contain object variables/managed objects that define each piece of information to be collected about a switch. Examples of variables include number of packets received, node port status and so on. A Management Information Base (MIB) is a collection of managed objects. SNMP allows a manager and agents to communicate for the purpose of accessing these objects.

SNMP itself is a simple request/response protocol based on the manager/agent model. The manager issues a request and the agent returns responses using the following protocol operations:

Table 95 SNMP Commands

COMMAND	DESCRIPTION
Get	Allows the manager to retrieve an object variable from the agent.
GetNext	Allows the manager to retrieve the next object variable from a table or list within an agent. In SNMPv1, when a manager wants to retrieve all elements of a table from an agent, it initiates a Get operation, followed by a series of GetNext operations.
Set	Allows the manager to set values for object variables within an agent.
Trap	Used by the agent to inform the manager of some events.

SNMP v3 and Security

SNMP v3 enhances security for SNMP management. SNMP managers can be required to authenticate with agents before conducting SNMP management sessions.

Security can be further enhanced by encrypting the SNMP messages sent from the managers. Encryption protects the contents of the SNMP messages. When the contents of the SNMP messages are encrypted, only the intended recipients can read them.

Supported MIBs

MIBs let administrators collect statistics and monitor status and performance.

The Switch supports the following MIBs:

- SNMP MIB II (RFC 1213)
- RFC 1157 SNMP v1
- RFC 1493 Bridge MIBs
- RFC 1643 Ethernet MIBs
- RFC 1155 SMI
- RFC 2674 SNMPv2, SNMPv2c
- RFC 1757 RMON
- SNMPv2, SNMPv2c or later version, compliant with RFC 2011 SNMPv2 MIB for IP, RFC 2012 SNMPv2 MIB for TCP, RFC 2013 SNMPv2 MIB for UDP

SNMP Traps

The Switch sends traps to an SNMP manager when an event occurs. The following tables outline the SNMP traps by category.

An OID (Object ID) that begins with "**1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.5.8**" is defined in private MIBs. Otherwise, it is a standard MIB OID.

Table 96 SNMP System Traps

OPTION	OBJECT LABEL	OBJECT ID	DESCRIPTION
coldstart	coldStart	1.3.6.1.6.3.1.1.5.1	This trap is sent when the Switch is turned on.
warmstart	warmStart	1.3.6.1.6.3.1.1.5.2	This trap is sent when the Switch restarts.
temperature	TemperatureEventOn	: 1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.5.8.55.25.2.1	This trap is sent when the temperature goes above or below the normal operating range.
	TemperatureEventClear	: 1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.5.8.55.25.2.2	This trap is sent when the temperature returns to the normal operating range.
voltage	VoltageEventOn	: 1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.5.8.55.25.2.1	This trap is sent when the voltage goes above or below the normal operating range.
	VoltageEventClear	: 1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.5.8.55.25.2.2	This trap is sent when the voltage returns to the normal operating range.
reset	UncontrolledResetEventOn	: 1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.5.8.55.25.2.1	This trap is sent when the Switch automatically resets.
	ControlledResetEventOn	: 1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.5.8.55.25.2.1	This trap is sent when the Switch resets by an administrator through a management interface.
	RebootEvent	: 1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.5.0.1	This trap is sent when the Switch reboots by an administrator through a management interface.
timesync	RTCNotUpdatedEventOn	: 1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.5.8.55.25.2.1	This trap is sent when the Switch fails to get the time and date from a time server.
	RTCNotUpdatedEventClear	: 1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.5.8.55.25.2.2	This trap is sent when the Switch gets the time and date from a time server.
intrusionlock	IntrusionLockEventOn	: 1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.5.8.55.25.2.1	This trap is sent when intrusion lock occurs on a port.
loopguard	LoopguardEventOn	: 1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.5.8.55.25.2.1	This trap is sent when loopguard shuts down a port.

Table 97 SNMP InterfaceTraps

OPTION	OBJECT LABEL	OBJECT ID	DESCRIPTION
linkup	linkUp	1.3.6.1.6.3.1.1.5.4	This trap is sent when the Ethernet link is up.
	LinkDownEventClear	: 1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.5.8.55.25 .2.2	This trap is sent when the Ethernet link is up.
linkdown	linkDown	1.3.6.1.6.3.1.1.5.3	This trap is sent when the Ethernet link is down.
	LinkDownEventOn	: 1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.5.8.55.25 .2.1	This trap is sent when the Ethernet link is down.
autonegotiation	AutonegotiationFailedEventOn	: 1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.5.8.55.25 .2.1	This trap is sent when an Ethernet interface fails to auto-negotiate with the peer Ethernet interface.
	AutonegotiationFailedEventClear	: 1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.5.8.55.25 .2.2	This trap is sent when an Ethernet interface auto-negotiates with the peer Ethernet interface.
lldp	LLDPRemoteTopologyChange	1.0.8802.1.1.2.0.0.1	This trap is sent when the LLDP (Link Layer Discovery Protocol) remote topology changes.
transceiver-ddmi	transceiverddmiEventOn	1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.5.8.55.27 .2.1	This trap is sent when one of the device operating parameters (such as transceiver temperature, laser bias current, transmitted optical power, received optical power and transceiver supply voltage) is above or below a factory set normal range.
	transceiverddmiEventClear	1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.5.8.55.27 .2.2	This trap is sent when all device operating parameters return to the normal operating range.

Table 98 AAA Traps

OPTION	OBJECT LABEL	OBJECT ID	DESCRIPTION
authentication	authenticationFailure	1.3.6.1.6.3.1.1.5.5	This trap is sent when authentication fails due to incorrect user name and/or password.
	AuthenticationFailureEventOn	: 1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.5.8.55.25.2.1	This trap is sent when authentication fails due to incorrect user name and/or password.
	RADIUSNotReachableEventOn	: 1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.5.8.55.25.2.1	This trap is sent when there is no response message from the RADIUS server.
	RADIUSNotReachableEventClear	: 1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.5.8.55.25.2.2	This trap is sent when the RADIUS server can be reached.

Table 99 SNMP IP Traps

OPTION	OBJECT LABEL	OBJECT ID	DESCRIPTION
ping	pingProbeFailed	1.3.6.1.2.1.80.0.1	This trap is sent when a single ping probe fails.
	pingTestFailed	1.3.6.1.2.1.80.0.2	This trap is sent when a ping test (consisting of a series of ping probes) fails.
	pingTestCompleted	1.3.6.1.2.1.80.0.3	This trap is sent when a ping test is completed.
traceroute	traceRoutePathChange	1.3.6.1.2.1.81.0.1	This trap is sent when path to target has changed from a previously determined path.
	traceRouteTestFailed	1.3.6.1.2.1.81.0.2	This trap is sent when a traceroute test fails.
	traceRouteTestCompleted	1.3.6.1.2.1.81.0.3	This trap is sent when a traceroute test is completed.

Table 100 SNMP Switch Traps

OPTION	OBJECT LABEL	OBJECT ID	DESCRIPTION
stp	STPNewRoot	1.3.6.1.2.1.17.0.1	This trap is sent when the STP root switch changes.
	MRSTPNewRoot	: 1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.5.8.55.32.2.1	This trap is sent when the MRSTP root switch changes.
	MSTPNewRoot	: 1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.5.8.55.107.70.1	This trap is sent when the MSTP root switch changes.
	STPTopologyChange	1.3.6.1.2.1.17.0.2	This trap is sent when the STP topology changes.
	MRSTPTopologyChange	: 1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.5.8.55.32.2.2	This trap is sent when the MRSTP topology changes.
	MSTPTopologyChange	: 1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.5.8.55.107.70.2	This trap is sent when the MSTP root switch changes.
mactable	MacTableFullEventOn	: 1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.5.8.55.25.2.1	This trap is sent when more than 99% of the MAC table is used.
	MacTableFullEventClear	: 1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.5.8.55.25.2.2	This trap is sent when less than 95% of the MAC table is used.
rmon	RmonRisingAlarm	1.3.6.1.2.1.16.0.1	This trap is sent when a variable goes over the RMON "rising" threshold.
	RmonFallingAlarm	1.3.6.1.2.1.16.0.2	This trap is sent when the variable falls below the RMON "falling" threshold.
CFM	dot1agCfmFaultAlarm	1.3.111.2.802.1.1.8.0.1	The trap is sent when the Switch detects a connectivity fault.

33.9.2 SSH Overview

Unlike Telnet or FTP, which transmit data in clear text, SSH (Secure Shell) is a secure communication protocol that combines authentication and data encryption

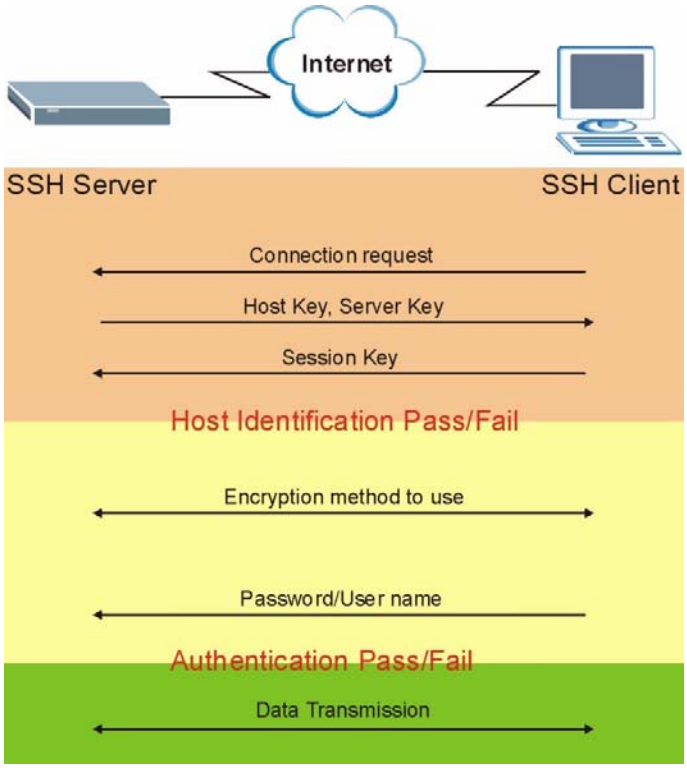
to provide secure encrypted communication between two hosts over an unsecured network.

Figure 150 SSH Communication Example

33.9.2.1 How SSH works

The following table summarizes how a secure connection is established between two remote hosts.

Figure 151 How SSH Works



1 Host Identification

The SSH client sends a connection request to the SSH server. The server identifies itself with a host key. The client encrypts a randomly generated session key with the host key and server key and sends the result back to the server.

The client automatically saves any new server public keys. In subsequent connections, the server public key is checked against the saved version on the client computer.

2 Encryption Method

Once the identification is verified, both the client and server must agree on the type of encryption method to use.

3 Authentication and Data Transmission

After the identification is verified and data encryption activated, a secure tunnel is established between the client and the server. The client then sends its authentication information (user name and password) to the server to log in to the server.

33.9.2.2 SSH Implementation on the Switch

Your Switch supports SSH version 2 using RSA authentication and three encryption methods (DES, 3DES and Blowfish). The SSH server is implemented on the Switch for remote management and file transfer on port 22. Only one SSH connection is allowed at a time.

33.9.2.3 Requirements for Using SSH

You must install an SSH client program on a client computer (Windows or Linux operating system) that is used to connect to the Switch over SSH.

33.9.3 Introduction to HTTPS

HTTPS (HyperText Transfer Protocol over Secure Socket Layer, or HTTP over SSL) is a web protocol that encrypts and decrypts web pages. Secure Socket Layer (SSL) is an application-level protocol that enables secure transactions of data by ensuring confidentiality (an unauthorized party cannot read the transferred data), authentication (one party can identify the other party) and data integrity (you know if data has been changed).

It relies upon certificates, public keys, and private keys.

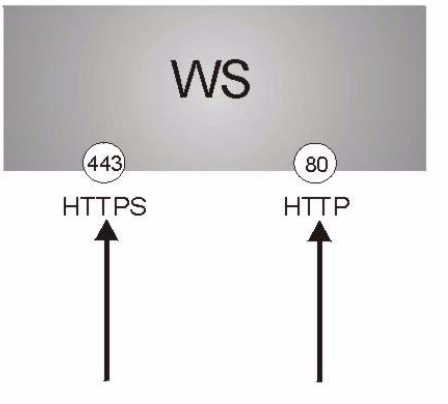
HTTPS on the Switch is used so that you may securely access the Switch using the web configurator. The SSL protocol specifies that the SSL server (the Switch) must always authenticate itself to the SSL client (the computer which requests the HTTPS connection with the Switch), whereas the SSL client only should authenticate itself when the SSL server requires it to do so. Authenticating client certificates is optional and if selected means the SSL-client must send the Switch a certificate. You must apply for a certificate for the browser from a CA that is a trusted CA on the Switch.

Please refer to the following figure.

1 HTTPS connection requests from an SSL-aware web browser go to port 443 (by default) on the Switch's WS (web server).

2 HTTP connection requests from a web browser go to port 80 (by default) on the Switch's WS (web server).

Figure 152 HTTPS Implementation



Note: If you disable **HTTP** in the **Service Access Control** screen, then the Switch blocks all HTTP connection attempts.

33.9.3.1 HTTPS Example

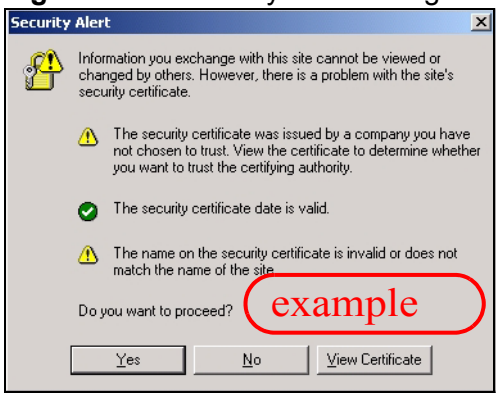
If you haven't changed the default HTTPS port on the Switch, then in your browser enter "https://Switch IP Address/" as the web site address where "Switch IP Address" is the IP address or domain name of the Switch you wish to access.

Internet Explorer Warning Messages

When you attempt to access the Switch HTTPS server, a Windows dialog box pops up asking if you trust the server certificate. Click **View Certificate** if you want to verify that the certificate is from the Switch.

You see the following **Security Alert** screen in Internet Explorer. Select **Yes** to proceed to the web configurator login screen; if you select **No**, then web configurator access is blocked.

Figure 153 Security Alert Dialog Box (Internet Explorer)


Security Alert
Information you exchange with this site cannot be viewed or changed by others. However, there is a problem with the site's security certificate.
The security certificate was issued by a company you have not chosen to trust. View the certificate to determine whether you want to trust the certifying authority.
The security certificate date is valid.
The name on the security certificate is invalid or does not match the name of the site
Do you want to proceed?
example
Yes
No
View Certificate

Netscape Navigator Warning Messages

When you attempt to access the Switch HTTPS server, a **Website Certified by an Unknown Authority** screen pops up asking if you trust the server certificate. Click **Examine Certificate** if you want to verify that the certificate is from the Switch.

If **Accept this certificate temporarily for this session** is selected, then click **OK** to continue in Netscape.

Select **Accept this certificate permanently** to import the Switch's certificate into the SSL client.

Figure 154 Security Certificate 1 (Netscape)

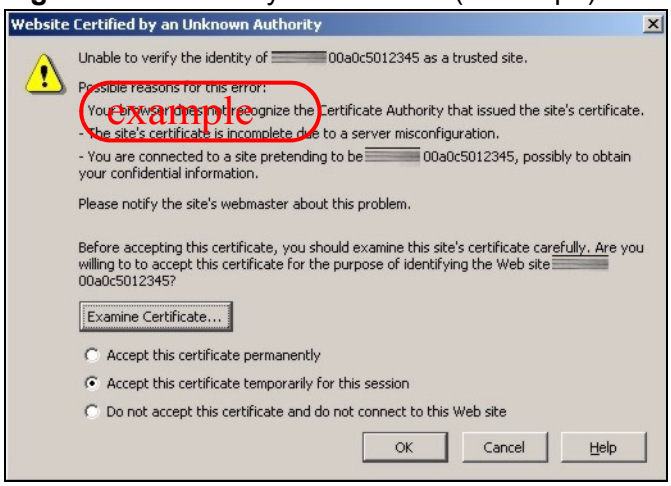
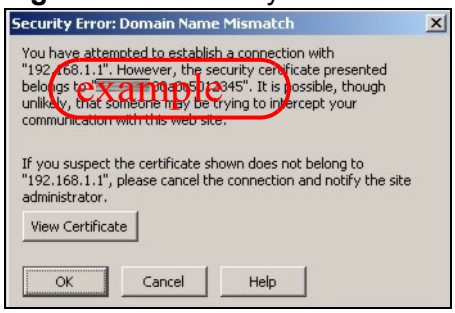

Website Certified by an Unknown Authority
Unable to verify the identity of 00a0c5012345 as a trusted site.
Possible reasons for this error:
- The site's certificate is incomplete due to a server misconfiguration.
- You are connected to a site pretending to be 00a0c5012345, possibly to obtain your confidential information.
Please notify the site's webmaster about this problem.
Before accepting this certificate, you should examine this site's certificate carefully. Are you willing to to accept this certificate for the purpose of identifying the Web site 00a0c5012345?
Examine Certificate...
Accept this certificate permanently
Accept this certificate temporarily for this session
Do not accept this certificate and do not connect to this Web site
OK
Cancel
Help

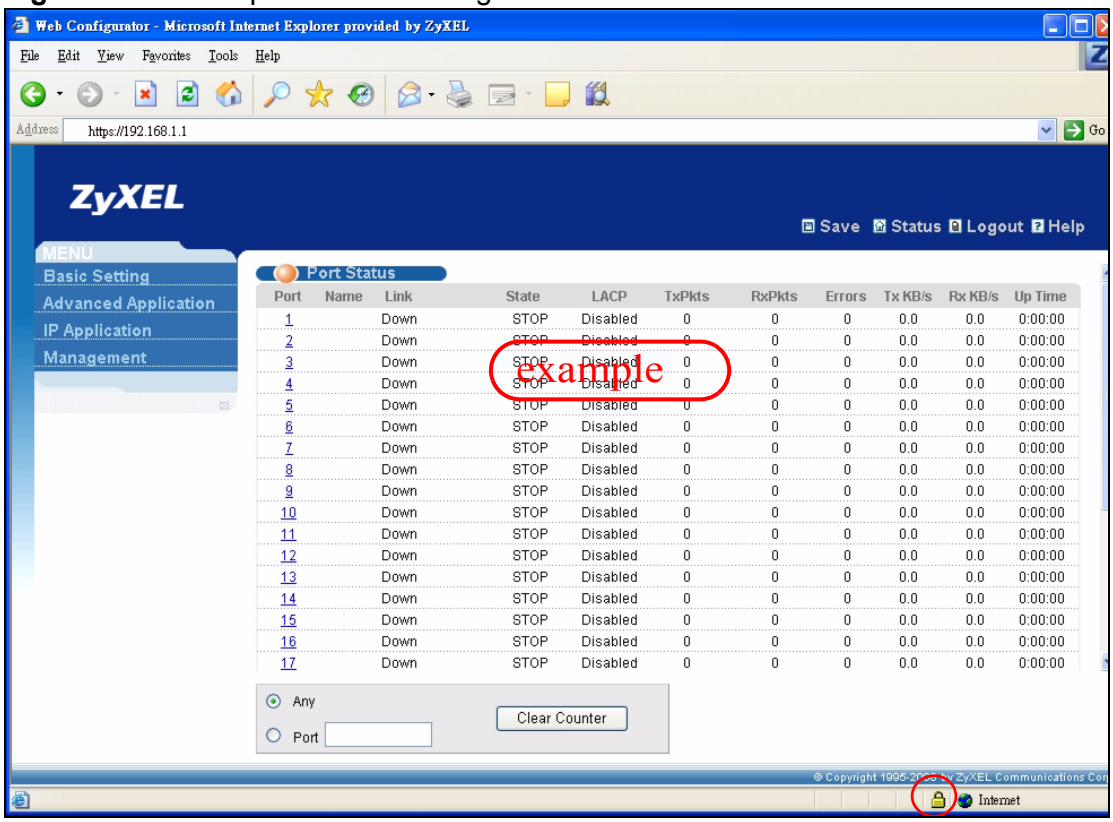
Figure 155 Security Certificate 2 (Netscape)


Security Error: Domain Name Mismatch
You have attempted to establish a connection with "192.168.1.1". However, the security certificate presented belongs to "00a0c5012345". It is possible, though unlikely, that someone may be trying to intercept your communication with this web site.
If you suspect the certificate shown does not belong to "192.168.1.1", please cancel the connection and notify the site administrator.
View Certificate
OK
Cancel
Help

33.9.3.2 The Main Screen

After you accept the certificate and enter the login username and password, the Switch main screen appears. The lock displayed in the bottom right of the browser status bar denotes a secure connection.

Figure 156 Example: Lock Denoting a Secure Connection


Web Configurator - Microsoft Internet Explorer provided by ZyXEL
File Edit View Favorites Tools Help
Address https://192.168.1.1
Go
ZyXEL
Save Status Logout Help
MENU
Basic Setting
Advanced Application
IP Application
Management
Port Status
Port Name Link State LACP TxPkts RxPkts Errors Tx KB/s Rx KB/s Up Time
1 Down STOP Disabled 0 0 0 0.0 0.0 0:00:00
2 Down STOP Disabled 0 0 0 0.0 0.0 0:00:00
3 Down STOP Disabled 0 0 0 0.0 0.0 0:00:00
4 Down STOP Disabled 0 0 0 0.0 0.0 0:00:00
5 Down STOP Disabled 0 0 0 0.0 0.0 0:00:00
6 Down STOP Disabled 0 0 0 0.0 0.0 0:00:00
7 Down STOP Disabled 0 0 0 0.0 0.0 0:00:00
8 Down STOP Disabled 0 0 0 0.0 0.0 0:00:00
9 Down STOP Disabled 0 0 0 0.0 0.0 0:00:00
10 Down STOP Disabled 0 0 0 0.0 0.0 0:00:00
11 Down STOP Disabled 0 0 0 0.0 0.0 0:00:00
12 Down STOP Disabled 0 0 0 0.0 0.0 0:00:00
13 Down STOP Disabled 0 0 0 0.0 0.0 0:00:00
14 Down STOP Disabled 0 0 0 0.0 0.0 0:00:00
15 Down STOP Disabled 0 0 0 0.0 0.0 0:00:00
16 Down STOP Disabled 0 0 0 0.0 0.0 0:00:00
17 Down STOP Disabled 0 0 0 0.0 0.0 0:00:00
example
Any
Port
Clear Counter
Internet

34

Diagnostic

34.1 Overview

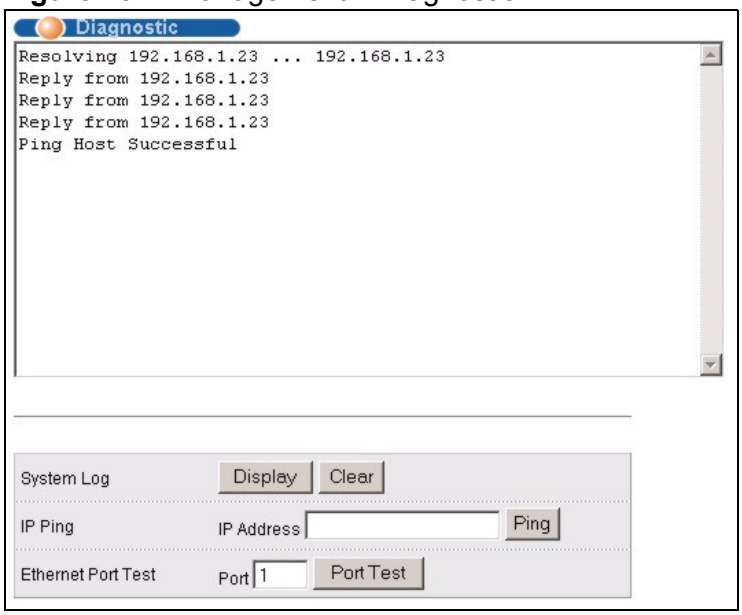
This chapter explains the **Diagnostic** screen.

Use the **Diagnostic** screen (Section 34.2 on page 301) to check system logs, ping IP addresses or perform port tests.

34.2 Diagnostic

Click **Management** > **Diagnostic** in the navigation panel to open this screen. Use this screen to check system logs, ping IP addresses or perform port tests.

Figure 157 Management > Diagnostic



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 101 Management > Diagnostic

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
System Log	Click **Display** to display a log of events in the multi-line text box. Click **Clear** to empty the text box and reset the syslog entry.
IP Ping	Type the IP address of a device that you want to ping in order to test a connection. Click **Ping** to have the Switch ping the IP address (in the field to the left).
Ethernet Port Test	Enter a port number and click **Port Test** to perform an internal loopback test.

35

Syslog

35.1 Overview

This chapter explains the syslog screens.

The syslog protocol allows devices to send event notification messages across an IP network to syslog servers that collect the event messages. A syslog-enabled device can generate a syslog message and send it to a syslog server.

Syslog is defined in RFC 3164. The RFC defines the packet format, content and system log related information of syslog messages. Each syslog message has a facility and severity level. The syslog facility identifies a file in the syslog server. Refer to the documentation of your syslog program for details. The following table describes the syslog severity levels.

Table 102 Syslog Severity Levels

CODE	SEVERITY
0	Emergency: The system is unusable.
1	Alert: Action must be taken immediately.
2	Critical: The system condition is critical.
3	Error: There is an error condition on the system.
4	Warning: There is a warning condition on the system.
5	Notice: There is a normal but significant condition on the system.
6	Informational: The syslog contains an informational message.
7	Debug: The message is intended for debug-level purposes.

35.2 What You Can Do

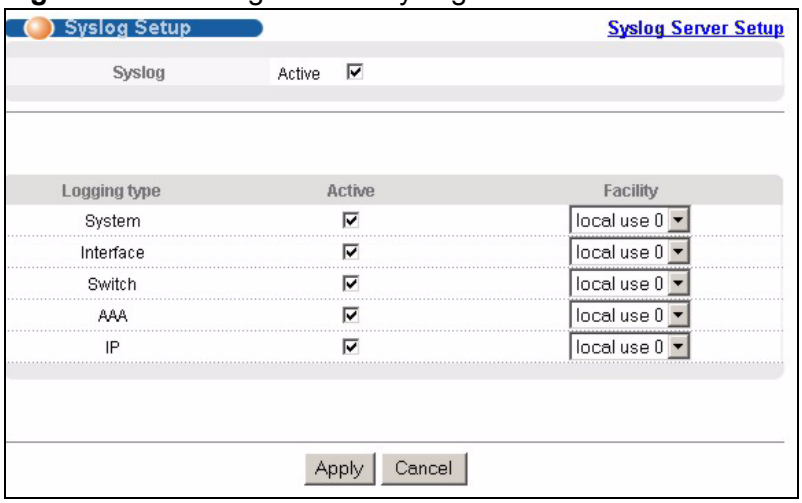
- Use the **Syslog Setup** screen (Section 35.3 on page 304) to configure the device's system logging settings.
- Use the **Syslog Server Setup** screen (Section 35.4 on page 305) to configure a list of external syslog servers.

35.3 Syslog Setup

Use this screen to configure the device's system logging settings.

Click **Management** > **Syslog** in the navigation panel to display this screen. The syslog feature sends logs to an external syslog server.

Figure 158 Management > Syslog



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

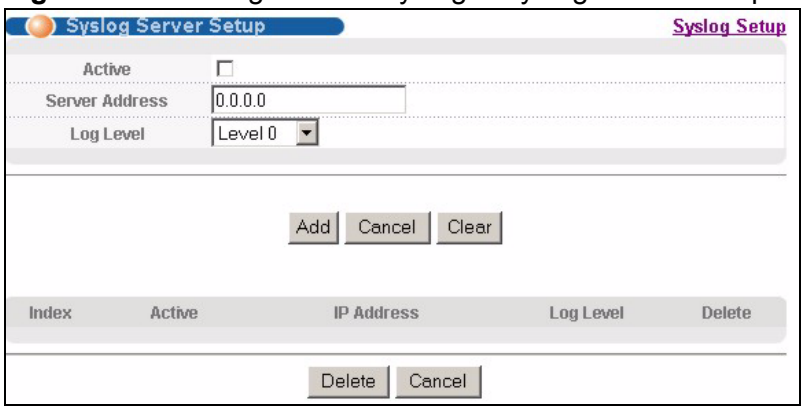
Table 103 Management > Syslog

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Syslog	Select **Active** to turn on syslog (system logging) and then configure the syslog setting
Logging Type	This column displays the names of the categories of logs that the device can generate.
Active	Select this option to set the device to generate logs for the corresponding category.
Facility	The log facility allows you to send logs to different files in the syslog server. Refer to the documentation of your syslog program for more details.
Apply	Click **Apply** to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the **Save** link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to begin configuring this screen afresh.

35.4 Syslog Server Setup

Click **Management** > **Syslog** > **Syslog Server Setup** to view the screen as shown next. Use this screen to configure a list of external syslog servers.

Figure 159 Management > Syslog > Syslog Server Setup



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 104 Management > Syslog > Syslog Server Setup

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Active	Select this check box to have the device send logs to this syslog server. Clear the check box if you want to create a syslog server entry but not have the device send logs to it (you can edit the entry later).
Server Address	Enter the IP address of the syslog server.
Log Level	Select the severity level(s) of the logs that you want the device to send to this syslog server. The lower the number, the more critical the logs are.
Add	Click **Add** to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the **Save** link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to begin configuring this screen afresh.
Clear	Click **Clear** to return the fields to the factory defaults.
Index	This is the index number of a syslog server entry. Click this number to edit the entry.
Active	This field displays **Yes** if the device is to send logs to the syslog server. **No** displays if the device is not to send logs to the syslog server.
IP Address	This field displays the IP address of the syslog server.
Log Level	This field displays the severity level of the logs that the device is to send to this syslog server.
Delete	Select an entry's **Delete** check box and click **Delete** to remove the entry.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to begin configuring this screen afresh.

36

Cluster Management

36.1 Overview

This chapter introduces cluster management.

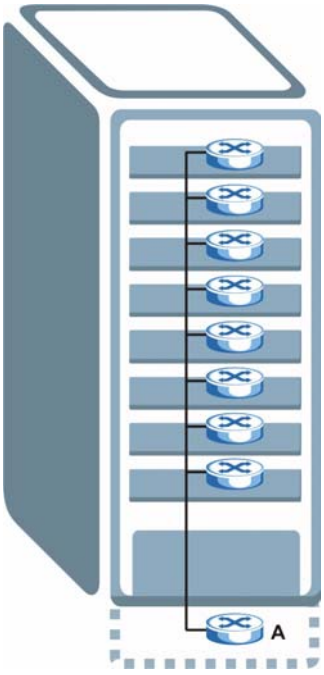
Cluster Management allows you to manage switches through one Switch, called the cluster manager. The switches must be directly connected and be in the same VLAN group so as to be able to communicate with one another.

Table 105 ZyXEL Clustering Management Specifications

Maximum number of cluster members	24
Cluster Member Models	Must be compatible with ZyXEL cluster management implementation.
Cluster Manager	The switch through which you manage the cluster member switches.
Cluster Members	The switches being managed by the cluster manager switch.

In the following example, switch **A** in the basement is the cluster manager and the other switches on the upper floors of the building are cluster members.

Figure 160 Clustering Application Example



36.2 What You Can Do

- Use the **Cluster Management** screen (Section 36.3 on page 308) to view the role of the Switch within the cluster and to access a cluster member switch's web configurator.
- Use the **Clustering Management Configuration** screen (Section 36.1 on page 307) to configure clustering management.

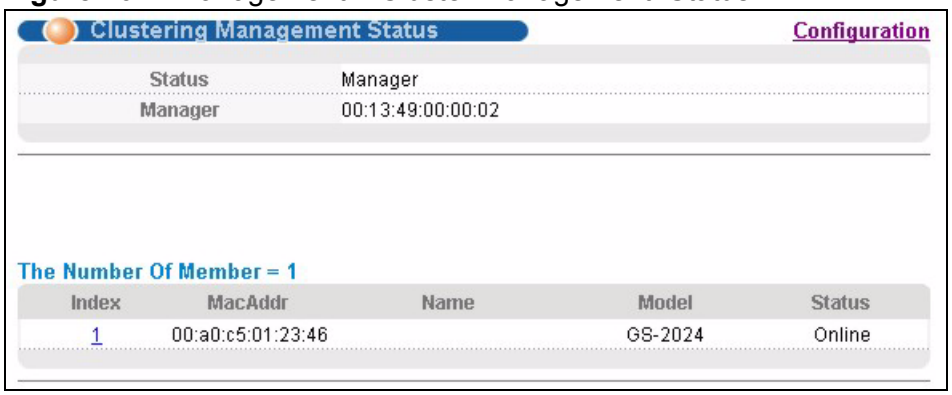
36.3 Cluster Management Status

Use this screen to view the role of the Switch within the cluster and to access a cluster member switch's web configurator.

Click **Management** > **Cluster Management** in the navigation panel to display the following screen.

Note: A cluster can only have one manager.

Figure 161 Management > Cluster Management: Status



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

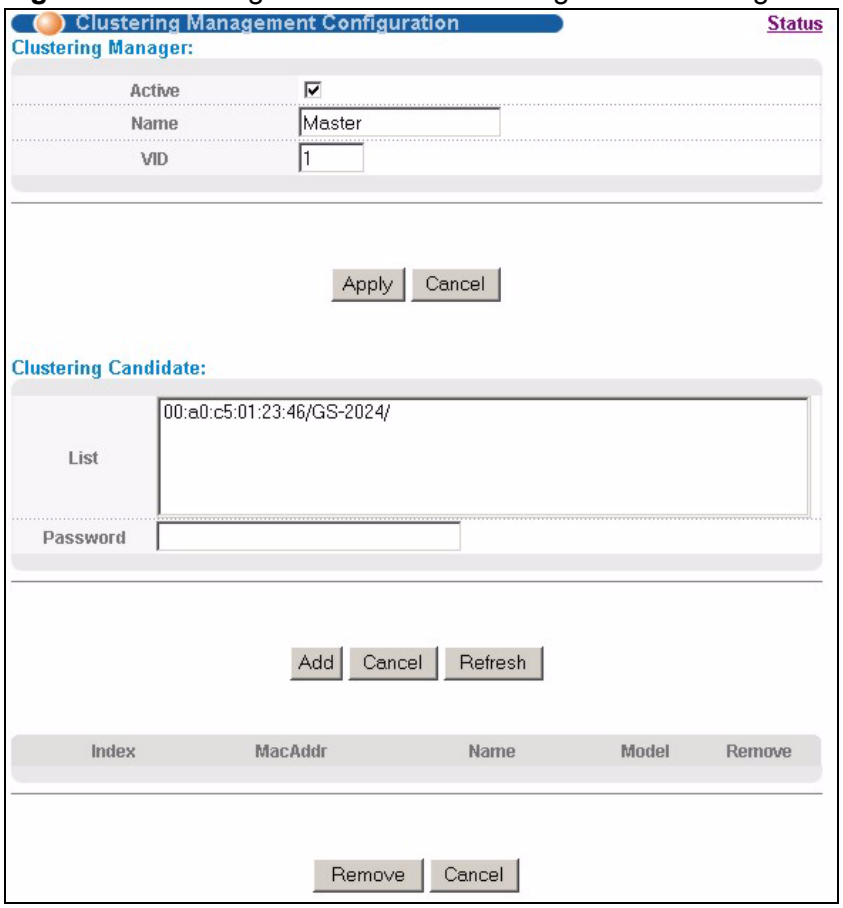
Table 106 Management > Cluster Management: Status

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Status	This field displays the role of this Switch within the cluster. **Manager** **Member** (you see this if you access this screen in the cluster member switch directly and not via the cluster manager) **None** (neither a manager nor a member of a cluster)
Manager	This field displays the cluster manager switch's hardware MAC address.
The Number of Member	This field displays the number of switches that make up this cluster. The following fields describe the cluster member switches.
Index	You can manage cluster member switches via the cluster manager switch. Each number in the **Index** column is a hyperlink leading to the cluster member switch's web configurator (see Figure 163 on page 312).
MacAddr	This is the cluster member switch's hardware MAC address.
Name	This is the cluster member switch's **System Name**.
Model	This field displays the model name.
Status	This field displays: **Online** (the cluster member switch is accessible) **Error** (for example the cluster member switch password was changed or the switch was set as the manager and so left the member list, etc.) **Offline** (the switch is disconnected - **Offline** shows approximately 1.5 minutes after the link between cluster member and manager goes down)

36.4 Clustering Management Configuration

Use this screen to configure clustering management. Click **Management** > **Cluster Management** > **Configuration** to display the next screen.

Figure 162 Management > Cluster Management > Configuration



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 107 Management > Cluster Management > Configuration

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Clustering Manager	
Active	Select **Active** to have this Switch become the cluster manager switch. A cluster can only have one manager. Other (directly connected) switches that are set to be cluster managers will not be visible in the **Clustering Candidates** list. If a switch that was previously a cluster member is later set to become a cluster manager, then its **Status** is displayed as **Error** in the **Cluster Management Status** screen and a warning icon (⚠) appears in the member summary list below.
Name	Type a name to identify the **Clustering Manager.** You may use up to 32 printable characters (spaces are allowed).

Table 107 Management > Cluster Management > Configuration (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
VID	This is the VLAN ID and is only applicable if the Switch is set to **802.1Q** VLAN. All switches must be directly connected and in the same VLAN group to belong to the same cluster. Switches that are not in the same VLAN group are not visible in the **Clustering Candidates** list. This field is ignored if the **Clustering Manager** is using **Port-based** VLAN.
Apply	Click **Apply** to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the **Save** link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to begin configuring this screen afresh.
Clustering Candidate	The following fields relate to the switches that are potential cluster members.
List	A list of suitable candidates found by auto-discovery is shown here. The switches must be directly connected. Directly connected switches that are set to be cluster managers will not be visible in the **Clustering Candidate** list. Switches that are not in the same management VLAN group will not be visible in the **Clustering Candidate** list.
Password	Each cluster member's password is its web configurator password. Select a member in the **Clustering Candidate** list and then enter its web configurator password. If that switch administrator changes the web configurator password afterwards, then it cannot be managed from the **Cluster Manager**. Its **Status** is displayed as **Error** in the **Cluster Management Status** screen and a warning icon (⚠) appears in the member summary list below. If multiple devices have the same password then hold [SHIFT] and click those switches to select them. Then enter their common web configurator password.
Add	Click **Add** to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the **Save** link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to begin configuring this screen afresh.
Refresh	Click **Refresh** to perform auto-discovery again to list potential cluster members.
The next summary table shows the information for the clustering members configured.	
Index	This is the index number of a cluster member switch.
MacAddr	This is the cluster member switch's hardware MAC address.
Name	This is the cluster member switch's **System Name**.
Model	This is the cluster member switch's model name.
Remove	Select this checkbox and then click the **Remove** button to remove a cluster member switch from the cluster.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to begin configuring this screen afresh.

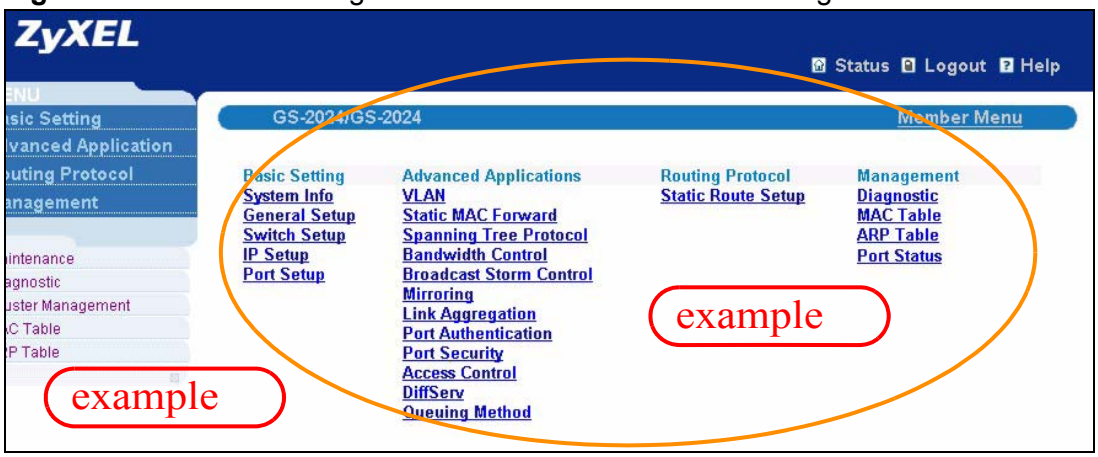
36.5 Technical Reference

This section provides technical background information on the topics discussed in this chapter.

36.5.1 Cluster Member Switch Management

Go to the **Clustering Management Status** screen of the cluster manager switch and then select an **Index** hyperlink from the list of members to go to that cluster member switch's web configurator home page. This cluster member web configurator home page and the home page that you'd see if you accessed it directly are different.

Figure 163 Cluster Management: Cluster Member Web Configurator Screen



36.5.1.1 Uploading Firmware to a Cluster Member Switch

You can use FTP to upload firmware to a cluster member switch through the cluster manager switch as shown in the following example.

Figure 164 Example: Uploading Firmware to a Cluster Member Switch

```
C:\>ftp 192.168.1.1
Connected to 192.168.1.1.
220 Switch FTP version 1.0 ready at Thu Jan  1 00:58:46 1970
User (192.168.0.1:(none)): admin
331 Enter PASS command
Password:
230 Logged in
ftp> ls
200 Port command okay
150 Opening data connection for LIST
--w--w--w-   1 owner    group         3042210 Jul 01 12:00 ras
-rw-rw-rw-   1 owner    group          393216 Jul 01 12:00 config
--w--w--w-   1 owner    group               0 Jul 01 12:00 fw-00-a0-c5-01-23-46
-rw-rw-rw-   1 owner    group               0 Jul 01 12:00 config-00-a0-c5-01-23-46
226 File sent OK
ftp: 297 bytes received in 0.00Seconds 297000.00Kbytes/sec.
ftp> bin
200 Type I OK
ftp> put 390BBA0.bin fw-00-a0-c5-01-23-46
200 Port command okay
150 Opening data connection for STOR fw-00-a0-c5-01-23-46
226 File received OK
ftp: 262144 bytes sent in 0.63Seconds 415.44Kbytes/sec.
ftp>
```

The following table explains some of the FTP parameters.

Table 108 FTP Upload to Cluster Member Example

FTP PARAMETER	DESCRIPTION
`User`	Enter “admin”.
`Password`	The web configurator password default is 1234.
`ls`	Enter this command to list the name of cluster member switch’s firmware and configuration file.
`390BBA0.bin`	This is the name of the firmware file you want to upload to the cluster member switch.
`fw-00-a0-c5-01-23-46`	This is the cluster member switch’s firmware name as seen in the cluster manager switch.
`config-00-a0-c5-01-23-46`	This is the cluster member switch’s configuration file name as seen in the cluster manager switch.

37

MAC Table

37.1 Overview

This chapter introduces the **MAC Table** screen.

The **MAC Table** screen (a MAC table is also known as a filtering database) shows how frames are forwarded or filtered across the Switch's ports. It shows what device MAC address, belonging to what VLAN group (if any) is forwarded to which port(s) and whether the MAC address is dynamic (learned by the Switch) or static (manually entered in the **Static MAC Forwarding** screen).

37.2 What You Can Do

Use the **MAC Table** screen (Section 37.4 on page 316) to check whether the MAC address is dynamic or static.

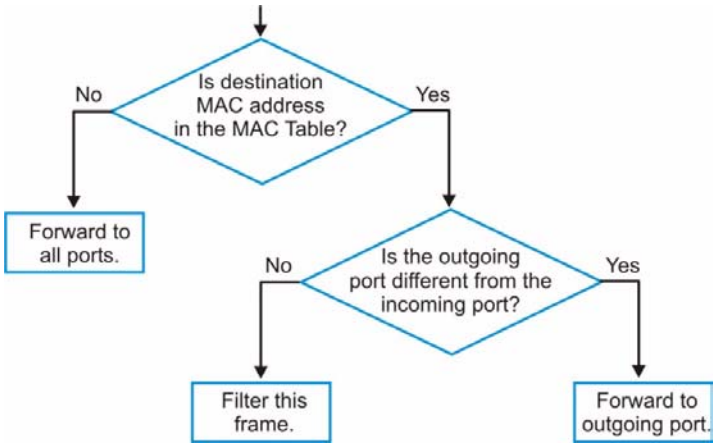
37.3 What You Need to Know

The Switch uses the MAC table to determine how to forward frames. See the following figure.

1. The Switch examines a received frame and learns the port on which this source MAC address came.
2. The Switch checks to see if the frame's destination MAC address matches a source MAC address already learned in the MAC table.
   - If the Switch has already learned the port for this MAC address, then it forwards the frame to that port.
   - If the Switch has not already learned the port for this MAC address, then the frame is flooded to all ports. Too much port flooding leads to network congestion.

- If the Switch has already learned the port for this MAC address, but the destination port is the same as the port it came in on, then it filters the frame.

Figure 165 MAC Table Flowchart

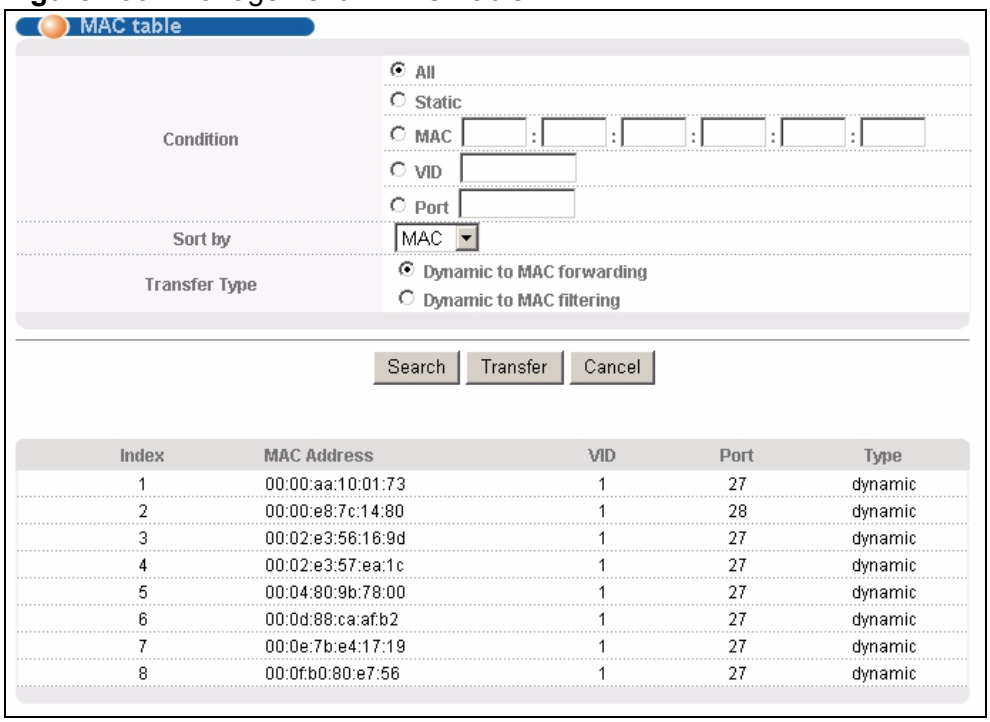


37.4 Viewing the MAC Table

Use this screen to check whether the MAC address is dynamic or static.

Click **Management** > **MAC Table** in the navigation panel to display the following screen.

Figure 166 Management > MAC Table



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 109 Management > MAC Table

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Condition	Select one of the buttons and click **Search** to only display the data which matches the criteria you specified. Select **All** to display any entry in the MAC table of the Switch. Select **Static** to display the MAC entries manually configured on the Switch. Select **MAC** and enter a MAC address in the field provided to display a specified MAC entry. Select **VID** and enter a VLAN ID in the field provided to display the MAC entries belonging to the specified VLAN. Select **Port** and enter a port number in the field provided to display the MAC addresses which are forwarded on the specified port.
Sort by	Define how the Switch displays and arranges the data in the summary table below. Select **MAC** to display and arrange the data according to MAC address. Select **VID** to display and arrange the data according to VLAN group. Select **PORT** to display and arrange the data according to port number.
Transfer Type	Select **Dynamic to MAC forwarding** and click the **Transfer** button to change all dynamically learned MAC address entries in the summary table below into static entries. They also display in the **Static MAC Forwarding** screen. Select **Dynamic to MAC filtering** and click the **Transfer** button to change all dynamically learned MAC address entries in the summary table below into MAC filtering entries. These entries will then display only in the **Filtering** screen and the default filtering action is **Discard source**.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to change the fields back to their last saved values.
Index	This is the incoming frame index number.
MAC Address	This is the MAC address of the device from which this incoming frame came.
VID	This is the VLAN group to which this frame belongs.
Port	This is the port where the above MAC address is forwarded.
Type	This shows whether the MAC address is **dynamic** (learned by the Switch) or **static** (manually entered in the **Static MAC Forwarding** screen).

38

ARP Table

38.1 Overview

This chapter introduces ARP Table.

Address Resolution Protocol (ARP) is a protocol for mapping an Internet Protocol address (IP address) to a physical machine address, also known as a Media Access Control or MAC address, on the local area network.

An IP (version 4) address is 32 bits long. In an Ethernet LAN, MAC addresses are 48 bits long. The ARP Table maintains an association between each MAC address and its corresponding IP address.

38.2 What You Can Do

Use the **ARP Table** screen (Section 38.3 on page 320) to view IP-to-MAC address mapping(s).

38.2.1 How ARP Works

When an incoming packet destined for a host device on a local area network arrives at the Switch, the Switch's ARP program looks in the ARP Table and, if it finds the address, sends it to the device.

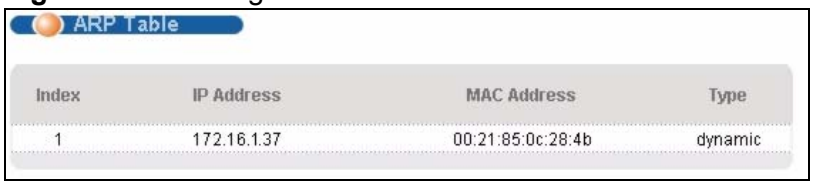
If no entry is found for the IP address, ARP broadcasts the request to all the devices on the LAN. The Switch fills in its own MAC and IP address in the sender address fields, and puts the known IP address of the target in the target IP address field. In addition, the Switch puts all ones in the target MAC field (FF.FF.FF.FF.FF.FF is the Ethernet broadcast address). The replying device (which is either the IP address of the device being sought or the router that knows the way) replaces the broadcast address with the target's MAC address, swaps the sender and target pairs, and unicasts the answer directly back to the requesting machine. ARP updates the ARP Table for future reference and then sends the packet to the MAC address that replied.

38.3 Viewing the ARP Table

Use the ARP table to view IP-to-MAC address mapping(s).

Click **Management** > **ARP Table** in the navigation panel to open the following screen.

Figure 167 Management > ARP Table



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 110 Management > ARP Table

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Index	This is the ARP Table entry number.
IP Address	This is the learned IP address of a device connected to a Switch port with corresponding MAC address below.
MAC Address	This is the MAC address of the device with corresponding IP address above.
Type	This shows whether the MAC address is dynamic (learned by the Switch) or static.

39

Configure Clone

39.1 Overview

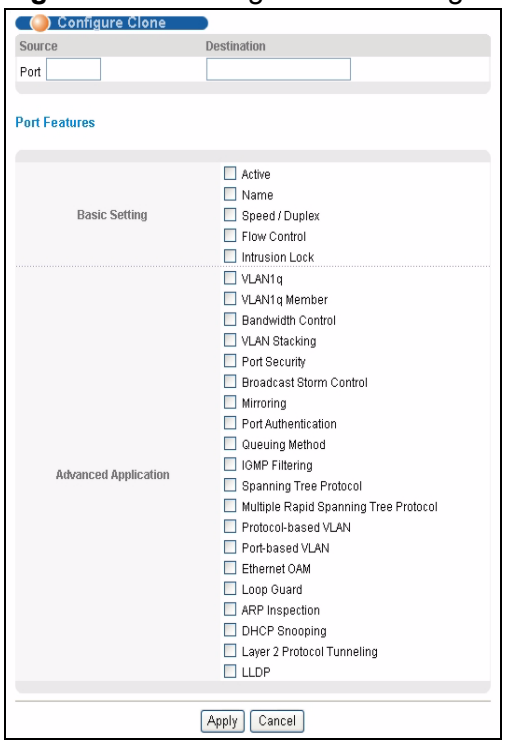
This chapter shows you how you can copy the settings of one port onto other ports.

Use the **Configure Clone** screen (Section 39.2 on page 321) to copy the basic and advanced settings from a source port to a destination port or ports.

39.2 Configure Clone

Cloning allows you to copy the basic and advanced settings from a source port to a destination port or ports. Click **Management** > **Configure Clone** to open the following screen.

Figure 168 Management > Configure Clone



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

Table 111 Management > Configure Clone

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Source/ Destination Port	Enter the source port under the **Source** label. This port's attributes are copied. Enter the destination port or ports under the **Destination** label. These are the ports which are going to have the same attributes as the source port. You can enter individual ports separated by a comma or a range of ports by using a dash. Example: • **2, 4, 6** indicates that ports 2, 4 and 6 are the destination ports. • **2-6** indicates that ports 2 through 6 are the destination ports.
Basic Setting	Select which port settings (you configured in the **Basic Setting** menus) should be copied to the destination port(s).
Advanced Application	Select which port settings (you configured in the **Advanced Application** menus) should be copied to the destination ports.
Apply	Click **Apply** to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the **Save** link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click **Cancel** to begin configuring this screen afresh.

PART VI
Troubleshooting & Product Specifications

Troubleshooting (325)

Product Specifications (329)

40

Troubleshooting

This chapter offers some suggestions to solve problems you might encounter. The potential problems are divided into the following categories.

- Power, Hardware Connections, and LEDs
- Switch Access and Login
- Switch Configuration

40.1 Power, Hardware Connections, and LEDs

The Switch does not turn on. None of the LEDs turn on.

1. Make sure you are using the power adaptor or cord included with the Switch.
2. Make sure the power adaptor or cord is connected to the Switch and plugged in to an appropriate power source. Make sure the power source is turned on.
3. Disconnect and re-connect the power adaptor or cord to the Switch.
4. If the problem continues, contact the vendor.

The **ALM** LED is on.

1. Disconnect and re-connect the power adaptor or cord to the Switch.
2. If the problem continues, contact the vendor.

One of the LEDs does not behave as expected.

1. Make sure you understand the normal behavior of the LED. See Section 3.3 on page 40.
2. Check the hardware connections. See Section 40.1 on page 325.
3. Inspect your cables for damage. Contact the vendor to replace any damaged cables.
4. Disconnect and re-connect the power adaptor or cord to the Switch.
5. If the problem continues, contact the vendor.

40.2 Switch Access and Login

I forgot the IP address for the Switch.

1. The default IP address is **192.168.1.1**.
2. Use the console port to log in to the Switch.
3. If this does not work, you have to reset the device to its factory defaults. See Section 4.6 on page 49.

I forgot the username and/or password.

1. The default username is **admin** and the default password is **1234**.
2. If this does not work, you have to reset the device to its factory defaults. See Section 4.6 on page 49.

I cannot see or access the **Login** screen in the web configurator.

1. Make sure you are using the correct IP address.
   - The default IP address is 192.168.1.1.
   - If you changed the IP address, use the new IP address.

- If you changed the IP address and have forgotten it, see the troubleshooting suggestions for I forgot the IP address for the Switch.

2 Check the hardware connections, and make sure the LEDs are behaving as expected. See Section 3.3 on page 40.

3 Make sure your Internet browser does not block pop-up windows and has JavaScripts and Java enabled.

4 Make sure your computer is in the same subnet as the Switch. (If you know that there are routers between your computer and the Switch, skip this step.)

5 Reset the device to its factory defaults, and try to access the Switch with the default IP address. See Section 4.6 on page 49.

6 If the problem continues, contact the vendor, or try one of the advanced suggestions.

Advanced Suggestions

- Try to access the Switch using another service, such as Telnet. If you can access the Switch, check the remote management settings to find out why the Switch does not respond to HTTP.

I can see the **Login** screen, but I cannot log in to the Switch.

1 Make sure you have entered the user name and password correctly. The default user name is **admin**, and the default password is **1234**. These fields are case-sensitive, so make sure [Caps Lock] is not on.

2 You may have exceeded the maximum number of concurrent Telnet sessions. Close other Telnet session(s) or try connecting again later.

Check that you have enabled logins for HTTP or Telnet. If you have configured a secured client IP address, your computer's IP address must match it. Refer to the chapter on access control for details.

3 Disconnect and re-connect the cord to the Switch.

4 If this does not work, you have to reset the device to its factory defaults. See Section 4.6 on page 49.

Pop-up Windows, JavaScripts and Java Permissions

In order to use the web configurator you need to allow:

- Web browser pop-up windows from your device.
- JavaScripts (enabled by default).
- Java permissions (enabled by default).

I cannot see some of **Advanced Application** submenus at the bottom of the navigation panel.

The recommended screen resolution is 1024 by 768 pixels. Adjust the value in your computer and then you should see the rest of **Advanced Application** submenus at the bottom of the navigation panel.

There is unauthorized access to my Switch via telnet, HTTP and SSH.

Click the **Display** button in the **System Log** field in the **Management** > **Diagnostic** screen to check for unauthorized access to your Switch. To avoid unauthorized access, configure the secured client setting in the **Management** > **Access Control** > **Remote Management** screen for telnet, HTTP and SSH (see Section 33.8 on page 286). Computers not belonging to the secured client set cannot get permission to access the Switch.

40.3 Switch Configuration

I lost my configuration settings after I restart the Switch.

Make sure you save your configuration into the Switch's nonvolatile memory each time you make changes. Click **Save** at the top right corner of the web configurator to save the configuration permanently. See also Section 32.6 on page 275 for more information about how to save your configuration.

41

Product Specifications

The following tables summarize the Switch's hardware and firmware features.

Table 112 Hardware Specifications

SPECIFICATION	DESCRIPTION
Dimensions	Standard 19" rack mountable 440 mm (W) x 173 mm (D) x 43 mm (H)
Weight	2.5 kg
Power Specification	100-240 VAC, 50/60HZ 0.6 A Max.
Power Consumption	31 W (maximum)
Interfaces	24 10/100/1000 Base-Tx ports 4 GbE Dual Personality interfaces (Each interface has one 1000Base-T RJ-45 port and one Small Form-Factor Pluggable (SFP) slot, with one port active at a time.) Auto-negotiation Auto-MDIX One console port Compliant with IEEE 802.3/3u/3ab Back pressure flow control for half duplex Flow control for full duplex (IEEE 802.3x)
LEDs	Per switch: PWR, SYS, ALM Per GE Ethernet RJ-45 10/100/1000 port: LNK/ACT, FDX Per mini-GBIC slot: LNK, ACT Per 1000BASE-T RJ-45 port (in dual personality interface): LNK/ ACT, FDX
Operating Environment	Temperature: 0º C ~ 50º C (32º F ~ 122º F) Humidity: 10 ~ 95% (non-condensing)
Storage Environment	Temperature: -40º C ~ 70º C (-40º F ~ 158º F) Humidity: 10 ~ 95% (non-condensing)
Ground Wire Gauge	18 AWG or larger
Power Wire Gauge	18 AWG or larger

Table 112 Hardware Specifications

Fan Design	Fanless
Fuse Specification	250 VAC, T2A

Table 113 Firmware Specifications

FEATURE	DESCRIPTION
Default IP Address	192.168.1.1
Default Subnet Mask	255.255.255.0 (24 bits)
Administrator User Name	admin
Default Password	1234
Number of Login Accounts Configurable on the Switch	4 management accounts configured on the Switch. Authentication via RADIUS and TACACS+ also available.
Maximum Frame Size	9 K (9216 bytes)
VLAN	A VLAN (Virtual Local Area Network) allows a physical network to be partitioned into multiple logical networks. Devices on a logical network belong to one group. A device can belong to more than one group. With VLAN, a device cannot directly talk to or hear from devices that are not in the same group(s); the traffic must first go through a router.
VLAN Stacking	Use VLAN stacking to add an outer VLAN tag to the inner IEEE 802.1Q tagged frames that enter the network. By tagging the tagged frames ("double-tagged" frames), the service provider can manage up to 4,094 VLAN groups with each group containing up to 4,094 customer VLANs. This allows a service provider to provide different service, based on specific VLANs, for many different customers.
MAC Address Filter	Filter traffic based on the source and/or destination MAC address and VLAN group (ID).
DHCP (Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol) Relay	Use this feature to have the Switch forward DHCP requests to DHCP servers on your network.
IGMP Snooping	The Switch supports IGMP snooping, enabling group multicast traffic to be only forwarded to ports that are members of that group; thus allowing you to significantly reduce multicast traffic passing through your Switch.
Differentiated Services (DiffServ)	With DiffServ, the Switch marks packets so that they receive specific per-hop treatment at DiffServ-compliant network devices along the route based on the application types and traffic flow.
Classifier and Policy	You can create a policy to define actions to be performed on a traffic flow grouped by a classifier according to specific criteria such as the IP address, port number or protocol type, etc.

Table 113 Firmware Specifications

FEATURE	DESCRIPTION
Queuing	Queuing is used to help solve performance degradation when there is network congestion. The following scheduling services are supported: Strict Priority Queuing (SPQ) Weighted Round Robin (WRR), and Weighted Fair Queuing (WFQ). This allows the Switch to maintain separate queues for packets from each individual source or flow and prevent a source from monopolizing the bandwidth.
Bandwidth Control	Bandwidth control means defining a maximum allowable bandwidth for incoming and/or out-going traffic flows on a port.
Broadcast Storm Control	Broadcast storm control limits the number of broadcast, multicast and destination lookup failure (DLF) packets the Switch receives per second on the ports.
Port Mirroring	Port mirroring allows you to copy traffic going from one or all ports to another or all ports in order that you can examine the traffic from the mirror port (the port you copy the traffic to) without interference.
Static Route	Static routes allow the Switch to communicate with management stations not reachable via the default gateway.
STP (Spanning Tree Protocol) / RSTP (Rapid STP)/MSTP (Multiple Spanning Tree Protocol)	(M)(R)STP detects and breaks network loops and provides backup links between switches, bridges or routers. It allows a Switch to interact with other (M)(R)STP-compliant switches in your network to ensure that only one path exists between any two stations on the network.
Loop Guard	Use the loop guard feature to protect against network loops on the edge of your network.
IP Source Guard	Use IP source guard to filter unauthorized DHCP and ARP packets in your network.
Link Aggregation	Link aggregation (trunking) is the grouping of physical ports into one logical higher-capacity link. You may want to trunk ports if for example, it is cheaper to use multiple lower-speed links than to under-utilize a high-speed, but more costly, single-port link.
Port Authentication and Security	For security, the Switch allows authentication using IEEE 802.1x with an external RADIUS server and port security that allows only packets with dynamically learned MAC addresses and/or configured static MAC addresses to pass through a port on the Switch.
Authenticatio and Authorization	The Switch supports authentication and authorization services via RADIUS and TACACS+ AAA servers.
Device Management	Use the web configurator or commands to easily configure the rich range of features on the Switch.
Port Cloning	Use the port cloning feature to copy the settings you configure on one port to another port or ports.
Syslog	The Switch can generate syslog messages and send it to a syslog server.

Table 113 Firmware Specifications

FEATURE	DESCRIPTION
Firmware Upgrade	Download new firmware (when available) from the ZyXEL web site and use the web configurator, CLI or an FTP/TFTP tool to put it on the Switch. Note: Only upload firmware for your specific model!
Configuration Backup & Restoration	Make a copy of the Switch's configuration and put it back on the Switch later if you decide you want to revert back to an earlier configuration.
Cluster Management	Cluster management (also known as iStacking) allows you to manage switches through one switch, called the cluster manager. The switches must be directly connected and be in the same VLAN group so as to be able to communicate with one another.

Table 114 Feature Specifications

Layer 2 Features	L2 Bridging	16K MAC addresses (4-waynassociative hashed) Static MAC address filtering by source/destination Broadcast storm control in 1 second interval, 1 pps entering Static MAC address forwarding (port lock)
	Switching	Switching fabric: 56 Gbps, non-blocking Max. Frame size: 9 K bytes Forwarding frame: IEEE 802.3, IEEE 802.1q, Ethernet II, PPPoE Prevent the forwarding of corrupted packets 14880 pps at 10 Mbps/ 148809 pps at 100 Mbps / 1488095 pps at 1 Gbps with 64 bytes packets
	Jumbo Frame	Up to 9K
	STP	IEEE 802.1w Rapid Spanning Tree Protocol (RSTP) Multiple Rapid Spanning Tree capability (2 configurable trees) IEEE 802.1s Multiple Spanning Tree Protocol
	QoS	IEEE 802.1p with 8 CoS per port 802.3x flow control SPQ,WFQ, or SPQ/WFQ combination capable Rule-based bandwidth control (ingress traffic metering/dropping 64Kb stepping) Rule-based traffic mirroring IGMP snooping (IGMP v1/v2/v3, 16 VLAN maximum - user configurable)

Table 114 Feature Specifications (continued)

	VLAN	Port-based VLAN 802.1Q tag-based VLAN number of VLAN: 4K, 1000 static maximum GVRP for dynamic registration Double tagging for VLAN stacking, 64-entry maximum Private VLAN for port isolation Protocol-Based VLAN. IP subnet based VLAN
	Link Aggregation	IEEE 802.3ad static and dynamic by LACP Six groups (up to eight ports/group randomly selected)
	Port mirroring	Rule-based port mirrorring Port-based mirroring Support port mirroring per IP/TCP/UDP
	Bandwidth control	Supports rate limiting at 64 Kb increments
	Broadcast Storm Control	Broadcast, Multicast, Unknown Uicast Storm Control 1 pps stepping
	Rate Limiting	Support rate limiting per IP/TCP/UDP port
Layer 3 Features	IP Capability	IPV4 support 64 Management IPs
	Routing protocols	Static Routing
	IP services	DHCP client DHCP relay VLAN-based DHCP relay DHCP snooping
Filtering	Support L2 MAC filtering, L3 IP filtering, Layer 4 TCP/UDP socket	
Multicast	IGMP snooping (IGMP v1/v2/v3, 16 VLAN maximum-user configurable)	

Table 114 Feature Specifications (continued)

AAA	Support RADIUS and TACACS+
Security	Static MAC address filtering Static MAC address forwarding MAC Freeze IEEE 802.1x port-based authentication Limiting number of dynamic MAC addresses per port SSH v1/v2 SSL Multiple RADIUS servers Multiple TACACS+ servers 802.1X VLAN and bandwidth assignment. IP source guard Static IP/MAC binding DHCP snooping ARP Inspection

The following list, which is not exhaustive, illustrates the standards supported in the Switch.

Table 115 Standards Supported

STANDARD	DESCRIPTION
RFC 826	Address Resolution Protocol (ARP)
RFC 867	Daytime Protocol
RFC 868	Time Protocol
RFC 894	Ethernet II Encapsulation
RFC 1112	IGMP v1
RFC 1155	SMI
RFC 1157	SNMPv1: Simple Network Management Protocol version 1
RFC 1213	SNMP MIB II
RFC 1305	Network Time Protocol (NTP version 3)
RFC 1441	SNMPv2 Simple Network Management Protocol version 2
RFC 1493	Bridge MIBs
RFC 1643	Ethernet MIBs
RFC 1757	RMON
RFC 1901	SNMPv2c Simple Network Management Protocol version 2c
RFC 2138	RADIUS (Remote Authentication Dial In User Service)
RFC 2236	Internet Group Management Protocol, Version 2.
RFC 2865	RADIUS - Vendor Specific Attribute
RFC 2674	P-BRIDGE-MIB, Q-BRIDGE-MIB

Table 115 Standards Supported (continued)

STANDARD	DESCRIPTION
RFC 3046	DHCP Relay
RFC 3164	Syslog
RFC 3376	Internet Group Management Protocol, Version 3
RFC 3414	User-based Security Model (USM) for version 3 of the Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP v3)
RFC 3580	RADIUS - Tunnel Protocol Attribute
IEEE 802.1ab	Link Layer Discovery Protocol (LLDP)
IEEE 802.1ag	Connectivity Fault Management (CFM)
IEEE 802.1x	Port Based Network Access Control
IEEE 802.1D	MAC Bridges
IEEE 802.1p	Traffic Types - Packet Priority
IEEE 802.1Q	Tagged VLAN
IEEE 802.1w	Rapid Spanning Tree Protocol (RSTP)
IEEE 802.1s	Multiple Spanning Tree Protocol (MSTP)
IEEE 802.3	Packet Format
IEEE 802.3ad	Link Aggregation
IEEE 802.3x	Flow Control
Safety	UL 60950-1 CSA 60950-1 EN 60950-1 IEC 60950-1
EMC	FCC Part 15 (Class A) CE EMC (Class A)

PART VII
Appendices and Index

Changing a Fuse (339)

Common Services (341)

Legal Information (345)

Index (349)

A

Changing a Fuse

This appendix shows you how to remove and install fuses for the Switch.

If you use a fuse other than an included fuse, make sure it matches the fuse specifications in the chapter on product specifications.

Removing a Fuse

Disconnect all power from the Switch before you begin this procedure.

1. Remove the power cord from the Switch.
2. See the product specifications for the location of the fuse. Use a small flat-head screwdriver to carefully pry out the fuse housing.
3. A burnt-out fuse is blackened, darkened or cloudy inside its glass casing. A working fuse has a completely clear glass casing. Pull gently, but firmly, to remove the burnt out fuse from the fuse housing. Dispose of the burnt-out fuse properly.

Installing a Fuse

1. The Switch is shipped from the factory with one spare fuse included in a box-like section of the fuse housing. Push the middle part of the box-like section to access the spare fuse. Put another spare fuse in its place in order to always have one on hand.
2. Push the replacement fuse into the fuse housing until you hear a click.
3. Push the fuse housing back into the Switch until you hear a click.
4. Plug the power cord back into the unit.

B

Common Services

The following table lists some commonly-used services and their associated protocols and port numbers. For a comprehensive list of port numbers, ICMP type/code numbers and services, visit the IANA (Internet Assigned Number Authority) web site.

- **Name**: This is a short, descriptive name for the service. You can use this one or create a different one, if you like.
- **Protocol**: This is the type of IP protocol used by the service. If this is **TCP/UDP**, then the service uses the same port number with TCP and UDP. If this is **User-Defined**, the **Port(s**) is the IP protocol number, not the port number.
- **Port(s)**: This value depends on the **Protocol**. Please refer to RFC 1700 for further information about port numbers.
  - If the **Protocol** is **TCP**, **UDP**, or **TCP/UDP**, this is the IP port number.
  - If the **Protocol** is **USER**, this is the IP protocol number.
- **Description**: This is a brief explanation of the applications that use this service or the situations in which this service is used.

Table 116 Commonly Used Services

NAME	PROTOCOL	PORT(S)	DESCRIPTION
AH (IPSEC_TUNNEL)	User-Defined	51	The IPSEC AH (Authentication Header) tunneling protocol uses this service.
AIM/New-ICQ	TCP	5190	AOL's Internet Messenger service. It is also used as a listening port by ICQ.
AUTH	TCP	113	Authentication protocol used by some servers.
BGP	TCP	179	Border Gateway Protocol.
BOOTP_CLIENT	UDP	68	DHCP Client.
BOOTP_SERVER	UDP	67	DHCP Server.
CU-SEEME	TCP UDP	7648 24032	A popular videoconferencing solution from White Pines Software.
DNS	TCP/UDP	53	Domain Name Server, a service that matches web names (for example www.zyxel.com) to IP numbers.

Table 116 Commonly Used Services (continued)

NAME	PROTOCOL	PORT(S)	DESCRIPTION
ESP (IPSEC_TUNNEL)	User-Defined	50	The IPSEC ESP (Encapsulation Security Protocol) tunneling protocol uses this service.
FINGER	TCP	79	Finger is a UNIX or Internet related command that can be used to find out if a user is logged on.
FTP	TCP TCP	20 21	File Transfer Program, a program to enable fast transfer of files, including large files that may not be possible by e-mail.
H.323	TCP	1720	NetMeeting uses this protocol.
HTTP	TCP	80	Hyper Text Transfer Protocol - a client/server protocol for the world wide web.
HTTPS	TCP	443	HTTPS is a secured http session often used in e-commerce.
ICMP	User-Defined	1	Internet Control Message Protocol is often used for diagnostic or routing purposes.
ICQ	UDP	4000	This is a popular Internet chat program.
IGMP (MULTICAST)	User-Defined	2	Internet Group Multicast Protocol is used when sending packets to a specific group of hosts.
IKE	UDP	500	The Internet Key Exchange algorithm is used for key distribution and management.
IRC	TCP/UDP	6667	This is another popular Internet chat program.
MSN Messenger	TCP	1863	Microsoft Networks' messenger service uses this protocol.
NEW-ICQ	TCP	5190	An Internet chat program.
NEWS	TCP	144	A protocol for news groups.
NFS	UDP	2049	Network File System - NFS is a client/ server distributed file service that provides transparent file sharing for network environments.
NNTP	TCP	119	Network News Transport Protocol is the delivery mechanism for the USENET newsgroup service.
PING	User-Defined	1	Packet INternet Groper is a protocol that sends out ICMP echo requests to test whether or not a remote host is reachable.

Table 116 Commonly Used Services (continued)

NAME	PROTOCOL	PORT(S)	DESCRIPTION
POP3	TCP	110	Post Office Protocol version 3 lets a client computer get e-mail from a POP3 server through a temporary connection (TCP/IP or other).
PPTP	TCP	1723	Point-to-Point Tunneling Protocol enables secure transfer of data over public networks. This is the control channel.
PPTP_TUNNEL (GRE)	User-Defined	47	PPTP (Point-to-Point Tunneling Protocol) enables secure transfer of data over public networks. This is the data channel.
RCMD	TCP	512	Remote Command Service.
REAL_AUDIO	TCP	7070	A streaming audio service that enables real time sound over the web.
REXEC	TCP	514	Remote Execution Daemon.
RLOGIN	TCP	513	Remote Login.
RTELNET	TCP	107	Remote Telnet.
RTSP	TCP/UDP	554	The Real Time Streaming (media control) Protocol (RTSP) is a remote control for multimedia on the Internet.
SFTP	TCP	115	Simple File Transfer Protocol.
SMTP	TCP	25	Simple Mail Transfer Protocol is the message-exchange standard for the Internet. SMTP enables you to move messages from one e-mail server to another.
SNMP	TCP/UDP	161	Simple Network Management Program.
SNMP-TRAPS	TCP/UDP	162	Traps for use with the SNMP (RFC:1215).
SQL-NET	TCP	1521	Structured Query Language is an interface to access data on many different types of database systems, including mainframes, midrange systems, UNIX systems and network servers.
SSH	TCP/UDP	22	Secure Shell Remote Login Program.
STRM WORKS	UDP	1558	Stream Works Protocol.
SYSLOG	UDP	514	Syslog allows you to send system logs to a UNIX server.
TACACS	UDP	49	Login Host Protocol used for (Terminal Access Controller Access Control System).

Table 116 Commonly Used Services (continued)

NAME	PROTOCOL	PORT(S)	DESCRIPTION
TELNET	TCP	23	Telnet is the login and terminal emulation protocol common on the Internet and in UNIX environments. It operates over TCP/IP networks. Its primary function is to allow users to log into remote host systems.
TFTP	UDP	69	Trivial File Transfer Protocol is an Internet file transfer protocol similar to FTP, but uses the UDP (User Datagram Protocol) rather than TCP (Transmission Control Protocol).
VDOLIVE	TCP	7000	Another videoconferencing solution.

C

Legal Information

Copyright

Copyright © 2009 by ZyXEL Communications Corporation.

The contents of this publication may not be reproduced in any part or as a whole, transcribed, stored in a retrieval system, translated into any language, or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, magnetic, optical, chemical, photocopying, manual, or otherwise, without the prior written permission of ZyXEL Communications Corporation.

Published by ZyXEL Communications Corporation. All rights reserved.

Disclaimer

ZyXEL does not assume any liability arising out of the application or use of any products, or software described herein. Neither does it convey any license under its patent rights nor the patent rights of others. ZyXEL further reserves the right to make changes in any products described herein without notice. This publication is subject to change without notice.

Trademarks

ZyNOS (ZyXEL Network Operating System) is a registered trademark of ZyXEL Communications, Inc. Other trademarks mentioned in this publication are used for identification purposes only and may be properties of their respective owners.

Certifications

Federal Communications Commission (FCC) Interference Statement

This device complies with Part 15 of FCC rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

- This device may not cause harmful interference.

- This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operations.

FCC Warning

This device has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class A digital switch, pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a commercial environment. This device generates, uses, and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instruction manual, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. Operation of this device in a residential area is likely to cause harmful interference in which case the user will be required to correct the interference at his own expense.

CE Mark Warning:

This is a class A product. In a domestic environment this product may cause radio interference in which case the user may be required to take adequate measures.

Taiwanese BSMI (Bureau of Standards, Metrology and Inspection) A Warning:

警告使用者
這是甲類的資訊產品，在居住的環境使用時，
可能造成射頻干擾，在這種情況下，
使用者會被要求採取某些適當的對策.

Notices

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

This Class A digital apparatus complies with Canadian ICES-003.

Cet appareil numérique de la classe A est conforme à la norme NMB-003 du Canada.

CLASS 1 LASER PRODUCT

APPAREIL A LASER DE CLASS 1

PRODUCT COMPLIES WITH 21 CFR 1040.10 AND 1040.11.

PRODUIT CONFORME SELON 21 CFR 1040.10 ET 1040.11.

Viewing Certifications

1 Go to http://www.zyxel.com.

2 Select your product on the ZyXEL home page to go to that product's page.

3 Select the certification you wish to view from this page.

ZyXEL Limited Warranty

ZyXEL warrants to the original end user (purchaser) that this product is free from any defects in materials or workmanship for a period of up to two years from the date of purchase. During the warranty period, and upon proof of purchase, should the product have indications of failure due to faulty workmanship and/or materials, ZyXEL will, at its discretion, repair or replace the defective products or components without charge for either parts or labor, and to whatever extent it shall deem necessary to restore the product or components to proper operating condition. Any replacement will consist of a new or re-manufactured functionally equivalent product of equal or higher value, and will be solely at the discretion of ZyXEL. This warranty shall not apply if the product has been modified, misused, tampered with, damaged by an act of God, or subjected to abnormal working conditions.

Note

Repair or replacement, as provided under this warranty, is the exclusive remedy of the purchaser. This warranty is in lieu of all other warranties, express or implied, including any implied warranty of merchantability or fitness for a particular use or purpose. ZyXEL shall in no event be held liable for indirect or consequential damages of any kind to the purchaser.

To obtain the services of this warranty, contact your vendor. You may also refer to the warranty policy for the region in which you bought the device at http://www.zyxel.com/web/support_warranty_info.php.

Registration

Register your product online to receive e-mail notices of firmware upgrades and information at www.zyxel.com for global products, or at www.us.zyxel.com for North American products.

Index

Numerics

802.1P priority 83

A

AAA 201
AAA (Authentication and Authorization) 202
access control
  limitations 279
  login account 284
  remote management 286
  service port 285
  SNMP 288
address learning, MAC 97, 100
Address Resolution Protocol (ARP) 319, 321, 322
administrator password 285
age 131
aggregator ID 155, 157
airflow 39
applications
  backbone 25
  bridging 26
  IEEE 802.1Q VLAN 27
  switched workgroup 27
ARP
  how it works 319
  viewing 320
ARP (Address Resolution Protocol) 319
ARP inspection 216, 238
  and MAC filter 238
  configuring 239
  syslog messages 239
  trusted ports 239
authentication 202
  setup 208
Authentication and Authorization, see AAA 202
authorization 202
  privilege levels 209
  setup 208
auto-crossover 37
automatic VLAN registration 88

B

back up, configuration file 275
bandwidth control 139, 332
  egress rate 140
  ingress rate 140
  setup 140
basic settings 71
basic setup tutorial 55
binding 215
binding table 215
  building 216
BPDUs (Bridge Protocol Data Units) 119
Bridge Protocol Data Units (BPDUs) 119
bridging 332
broadcast storm control 143

C

CDP 248
certifications 345
  notices 346
  viewing 347
CFI (Canonical Format Indicator) 88
changing the password 48
Cisco Discovery Protocol, see CDP
CIST 137
Class of Service (CoS) 257
classifier 169, 171
  and QoS 169
  editing 172
  example 174
  overview 169
  setup 170, 171, 172
  viewing 172

cloning a port See port cloning
cluster management 307
and switch passwords 311
cluster manager 307, 310
cluster member 307, 311
cluster member firmware upgrade 313
network example 308
setup 310
specification 307
status 308
switch models 307
VID 311
web configurator 312
cluster manager 307
cluster member 307
Common and Internal Spanning Tree, See CIST 137
configuration 255
change running config 273
configuration file 49
backup 275
restore 49, 274
saving 273
configuration, saving 48
console port 36
copying port settings, See port cloning
copyright 345
CPU management port 102
current date 75
current time 75

D

daylight saving time 75
default Ethernet settings 37
DHCP 261
configuration options 262
modes 261
Option 82 262
overview 261
relay agent 261
relay agent information 262
relay example 267
setup 265
VLAN setting 265
DHCP relay 262
configuration 264
example 265
DHCP relay option 82 237
DHCP snooping 55, 216, 235
configuring 237
DHCP relay option 82 237
trusted ports 236
untrusted ports 236
DHCP snooping database 236
diagnostics 301
Ethernet port test 302
ping 302
system log 302
Differentiated Service (DiffServ) 257
DiffServ 257
activate 259
DS field 258
DSCP 257
network example 258
PHB 258
dimensions 329
disclaimer 345
DS (Differentiated Services) 258
DSCP
service level 258
what it does 258
DSCP (DiffServ Code Point) 257
Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol, see DHCP
dynamic link aggregation 152

E

egress port 105
egress rate, and bandwidth control 140
Ethernet broadcast address 319
Ethernet port test 302
external authentication server 202

F

fan speed 73
FCC interference statement 345
file transfer using FTP

command example 276
filename convention, configuration
configuration
file names 276
filtering 115
rules 115
filtering database, MAC table 315
firmware 72
upgrade 274, 313
flow control 82
back pressure 82
IEEE802.3x 82
forwarding
delay 131
frames
tagged 96
untagged 96
front panel 35
FTP 276
file transfer procedure 277
restrictions over WAN 278
fuse 339
replacement 339

G

GARP 88
GARP (Generic Attribute Registration Protocol) 88
GARP terminology 89
GARP timer 77, 89
general features 332
general setup 74
getting help 50
Gigabit ports 36
GMT (Greenwich Mean Time) 75
GVRP 89, 95, 96
and port assignment 96
GVRP (GARP VLAN Registration Protocol) 89

H

hardware installation 31
hardware monitor 72
hardware overview 35
hello time 131
hops 131
HTTPS 295
certificates 295
implementation 295
public keys, private keys 295
HTTPS example 296
humidity 329

I

IEEE 802.1p, priority 78
IEEE 802.1x
activate 163, 206
port authentication 161
reauthentication 164
IGMP
version 193
IGMP (Internet Group Management Protocol) 193
IGMP filtering
profiles 196
IGMP leave timeout
fast 197
mormal 197
IGMP snooping 194
and VLANs 194
setup 198
IGMP throttling 198
ingress port 105
ingress rate, and bandwidth control 140
install
fuse 339
installation
desktop 31
precautions 32
rack-mounting 31
transceivers 38
installation scenarios 31
IP address 80
IP capability 333
IP interface 79
IP services 333

IP setup 78
IP source guard 215, 216
ARP inspection 216, 238
DHCP snooping 216, 235
static bindings 216
IP subnet mask 80

L

L2PT 245
access port 246
CDP 245
configuration 247
encapsulation 245
LACP 246
MAC address 245
mode 246
overview 245
PAgP 246
point to point 246
STP 245
tunnel port 246
UDLD 246
VTP 245
LACP 152, 248
system priority 158
timeout 158
layer 2 features 332
Layer 2 protocol tunneling, see L2PT
layer 3 features 333
LEDs 40
limit MAC address learning 167
link aggregation 151
dynamic 152
ID information 152
setup 155, 157
status 153
traffic distribution algorithm 154
traffic distribution type 156
trunk group 151
Link Aggregation Control Protocol (LACP) 152
Link Aggregation Control Protocol, see LACP 152
lockout 49
log 302
login 43
password 48
login account
Administrator 284
non-administrator 284
login accounts 284
configuring via web configurator 284
multiple 284
number of 284
login password 285
loop guard 241
examples 242
port shut down 243
setup 243
vs. STP 241

M

MAC (Media Access Control) 72
MAC address 72, 319
maximum number per port 167
MAC address learning 97, 100, 107, 167
specify limit 167
MAC filter
and ARP inspection 238
MAC freeze 166
MAC table 315
display criteria 317
how it works 315
sorting criteria 317
transfer type 317
viewing 316
maintanence
configuration backup 275
firmware 274
restoring configuration 274
maintenance 271
current configuration 272
main screen 272
Management Information Base (MIB) 288
management port 105
managing the device
good habits 28
using FTP. See FTP. 28
using Telnet. See command interface. 28
using the command interface. See command interface. 28
man-in-the-middle attacks 238

max
age 131
hops 131
MDIX (Media Dependent Interface Crossover) 37
MIB
and SNMP 288
supported MIBs 289
MIB (Management Information Base) 288
mirroring ports 147
monitor port 148
mounting brackets 32
MRSTP status 128
MST ID 136
MST Instance, See MSTI 136
MST region 136
MSTI 136
MSTP 117, 120
bridge ID 134
configuration 130
configuration digest 134
forwarding delay 131
Hello Time 134
hello time 131
Max Age 134
max age 131
max hops 131
path cost 132
port priority 132
revision level 131
status 133
MTU (Multi-Tenant Unit) 76
multicast 193
802.1 priority 196
and IGMP 193
IGMP throttling 198
IP addresses 194
overview 193
setup 196
Multiple Rapid Spanning Tree Protocol 119
Multiple RSTP 119
Multiple Spanning Tree Protocol, See MSTP 117, 120
Multiple STP 120

N

network applications 25
network management system (NMS) 288
NTP (RFC-1305) 75

P

PAGP 248
password 48
administrator 285
PHB (Per-Hop Behavior) 258
ping, test connection 302
policy 176, 178
and classifier 176
and DiffServ 175
configuration 176
example 179
overview 175
rules 175
viewing 178
policy configuration 178
Port Aggregation Protocol, see PAgP
port authentication 161
and RADIUS 202, 203
IEEE802.1x 163, 206
port based VLAN type 77
port cloning 321, 322
advanced settings 321, 322
basic settings 321, 322
port details 67
port isolation 105
port mirroring 147, 148, 332
direction 149
egress 149
ingress 149
port redundancy 152
port security 165
limit MAC address learning 167
MAC address learning 165
overview 165
setup 166, 243, 247
port setup 81
port status 66
port VLAN ID, see PVID 96

port VLAN trunking 90
port-based VLAN 102
  all connected 105
  port isolation 105
  settings wizard 105
ports
  diagnostics 302
  mirroring 147
  speed/duplex 82
  standby 152
power
  voltage 73
power connector 39
power consumption 329
power specification 329
power status 73
priority level 78
priority, queue assignment 78
product registration 347
protocol based VLAN 99
  and IEEE 802.1Q tagging 99
  application example 99
  configuration example 105
  isolate traffic 99
  priority 101
  un-tagged packets 99
PVID 88
PVID (Priority Frame) 88

Q

Q-in-Q, see VLAN stacking 185
QoS 332
  and classifier 169
queue weight 182
queuing 181
  SPQ 182
  WRR 182
queuing method 181, 184

R

rack-mounting 31
RADIUS 201, 202
  advantages 202
  and port authentication 202
  and tunnel protocol attribute 211
  Network example 201
  server 202
  settings 203
  setup 203
Rapid Spanning Tree Protocol, See RSTP. 117
rear panel connections 39
reboot
  load configuration 273
reboot system 273
registration
  product 347
related documentation 3
remote management 286
  service 287
  trusted computers 287
removing fuses 339
resetting 49, 272
  to factory default settings 272
restoring configuration 49, 274
RFC 3164 303
Round Robin Scheduling 182
routing protocols 333
RSTP 117

S

safety certifications 335
safety warnings 7
save configuration 48, 273
Secure Shell See SSH
security 333
service access control 285
  service port 286
Simple Network Management Protocol, see SNMP
Small Form-factor Pluggable (SFP) 37
SNMP 288
  agent 288
  and MIB 288
  and security 289
  authentication 282

communities 281
management model 288
manager 288
MIB 289
network components 288
object variables 288
protocol operations 289
security 282
setup 280, 283
version 3 289
versions supported 288
SNMP traps 289, 290, 291, 293
setup 283
supported 291
Spanning Tree Protocol, See STP. 117
SPQ (Strict Priority Queuing) 182
SSH
encryption methods 295
how it works 294
implementation 295
SSH (Secure Shell) 293
SSL (Secure Socket Layer) 295
standby ports 152
static bindings 216
static link aggregation example 158
static MAC address 107
static MAC forwarding 97, 100, 107
static multicast address 111
static multicast forwarding 111
static routes 255
static trunking example 158
Static VLAN 93
static VLAN
control 94
tagging 94
status 44, 66
link aggregation 153
MSTP 133
port 66
port details 67
power 73
STP 124, 128
VLAN 91
STP 117, 248, 332
bridge ID 125, 128
bridge priority 123, 127
configuration 122, 126
designated bridge 119
forwarding delay 123, 127
Hello BPDU 119
Hello Time 123, 125, 127, 129
how it works 119
Max Age 123, 125, 127, 129
path cost 118, 124, 127
port priority 124, 127
port state 119
root port 118
status 124, 128
terminology 118
vs. loop guard 241
subnet based VLAN 98
and DHCP VLAN 98
priority 98
setup 97
subnet based VLANs 96
switch lockout 49
switch reset 49
switch setup 77
switching 332
syntax conventions 5
syslog 239, 303
protocol 303
server setup 305
settings 304
setup 304
severity levels 303
system information 72
system log 302
system reboot 273

T

TACACS+ 201, 202
setup 206
TACACS+ (Terminal Access Controller Access-Control System Plus) 201
Tag Protocol Identifier, see TPID
tagged VLAN 87
temperature 329
temperature indicator 72
terminal emulation 36
time

current 75
time zone 75
Time (RFC-868) 75
time server 75
time service protocol 75
format 75
TPID 190
trademarks 345
transceiver MultiSource Agreement (MSA) 37
transceivers 37
installation 38
removal 38
traps
destination 281
trunk group 151
trunking 151, 332
example 158
trusted ports
ARP inspection 239
DHCP snooping 236
tunnel protocol attribute, and RADIUS 211
tutorials 55
DHCP snooping 55
Type of Service (ToS) 258

U

UDLD 248
UniDirectional Link Detection, see UDLD
untrusted ports
ARP inspection 239
DHCP snooping 236
user profiles 202

V

Vendor Specific Attribute, See VSA 210
ventilation 31
VID 91, 92, 190
number of possible VIDs 88
priority frame 88
VID (VLAN Identifier) 88
VLAN 76, 332
acceptable frame type 96
automatic registration 88
ID 87
IGMP snooping 194
ingress filtering 95
introduction 76, 87
number of VLANs 91
port number 92
port settings 95
port-based VLAN 102
port-based, all connected 105
port-based, isolation 105
port-based, wizard 105
PVID 96
static VLAN 93
status 91, 92
subnet based 96
tagged 87
trunking 90, 96
type 77, 90
VLAN (Virtual Local Area Network) 76
VLAN ID 80
VLAN stacking 185
configuration 186
double-tagged 185
example 188
frame format 190
outer tag 185
port roles 187, 189
priority 190
SP TPID 190
SP VID 190
SVLAN 187
TPID 190
VLAN tag 190
VLAN tag format 190
VLAN tag 190
VLAN tag format 190
VLAN Trunking Protocol, see VTP
VLAN, protocol based, See protocol based VLAN 99
VSA 210
VT100 36
VTP 248

W

warranty 347
note 347
web configurator 43
getting help 50
home 44
login 43
logout 50
navigation panel 45
weight, queuing 182
Weighted Round Robin Scheduling (WRR) 182
WRR (Weighted Round Robin Scheduling) 182

Z

ZyNOS (ZyXEL Network Operating System) 276